Politics, Poetry, and Sufism in Medieval Iran
Studies in
Persian Cultural History

Editors
Charles Melville
Cambridge University
Gabrielle van den Berg
Leiden University
Sunil Sharma
Boston University

VOLUME 5

The titles published in this series are listed at brill.com/spch
Such is the custom of rulers,
You will have heard this if you remember
The paladins stand on their left hand
Because the heart is bound to the left side
The chancellor and the men of the pen are on the right side
Because the science of writing and book-keeping is fixed to the right hand.
They situate the Sufis in front of their face,
For they are the mirror of the soul, and they are better than a mirror,
Since they have polished their breasts in remembrance and contemplation of God
In order to receive the pure image in the mirror of the heart.

## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>xi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note on Transliteration and Style</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Approaching Jāmī’s <em>Salāmān va Absāl</em> as a Perso-Islamic Book of Advice for Rulers</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Narrative Context of <em>Salāmān va Absāl</em></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Provenance of the Salāmān and Absāl Allegory</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Sinā’s Version of the Allegory</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salāmān and Absāl in Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coded Speech: The Overall Power of Allegory</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salāmān va Absāl</em>, an Esoteric Mirror for Princes</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salāmān va Absāl</em> and the <em>Maṣnavī</em> of Rūmī</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Historical Significance of <em>Salāmān va Absāl</em></td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overview of the Primary Sources</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Salāmān va Absāl</em> by Jāmī</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Persian Poetry Addressed to Ya’qūb</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Official Court Chronicles and General Histories</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hagiographies and Biographical Works</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literary Anthologies</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Letters of Personal Correspondence</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statement of Purpose</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Political Advice for Rulers and Mystical Guidance for Sufis in <em>Salāmān Va Absāl</em></td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Perso-Islamic Tradition of Advice and Advice Literature</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Political Advice for Muslim Rulers in <em>Salāmān va Absāl</em></td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Being the Shadow of God on Earth</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On Heeding the Prayers of the Sufis</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implicit Spiritual Advice for Rulers and Sufi Mystics</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advice on Illuminating the Intellect</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Role of Repentance in Attaining Mystical Enlightenment</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advice on Subduing the Carnal Soul</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. The Religious and Political Influences of Sufis at the Āq Qoyūnlū Courts of Üzūn Ḥasan and Yaʿqūb ........................................ 81
   Dervishes, Sufi Mystics, and the Political Legitimacy of Üzūn Ḥasan ................................................................. 82
   The Role of the Akhlāq-i Jalālī ......................................................... 86
   Khalvātī Influence on Āq Qoyūnlū Affairs ..................................... 90
   Shaikh Ibrāhīm Gulshānī at the Court of Yaʿqūb .......................... 93
   Naqshbandis at the Āq Qoyūnlū Court, Tabriz, and Its Environs ................................................................. 95
   The Murder of Darvīsh Qāsim .................................................... 100
   The Spiritual Relationship between Jāmī and Yaʿqūb .................. 107

4. Poetry at the Court of Yaʿqūb and its Background in Establishing an Historical Context for Salāmān va Absāl ........................................ 111
   Literary Activities in Āq Qoyūnlū Tabriz ...................................... 112
   Jāmī, the “Āq Qoyūnlū Poet” .......................................................... 116
   The Hasht Bihisht and Its Roster of “Lesser-known” Āq Qoyūnlū Poets ................................................................. 119
   Qāżī ʿĪsā Sāvajī: Reform-Minded Vāzīr, Poet, and Ill-fated Lover 120
   Qāżī ʿĪsā’s Banishment from Court and His Tell-tale Poetry ....... 125
   Glimpses of Yaʿqūb and His Troubles .............................................. 127
   Brotherly Discord in the Āq Qoyūnlū Household ....................... 129
   Salāmān va Absāl as Art Imitating Life ........................................ 131

5. A Theosophical Interpretation of Salāmān va Absāl and Its Relevance to its Historical Setting ........................................ 133
   Salāmān va Absāl and the Magnāvī of Rūmī ................................. 135
   Love and the Imprint of the Theosophy of Ibn al-ʿArabī .......... 138
   Aspects of the Visionary Experience in Salāmān va Absāl ...... 141
   Salāmān va Absāl as an Historical Allegory ................................. 144
   Symbols of Yaʿqūb and His Court in Salāmān va Absāl .......... 146
   Allusions to Naqshbandī Spiritual Techniques in Salāmān va Absāl ................................................................. 152
   The Date of Completion of Salāmān va Absāl ......................... 155
   Conclusion ................................................................................. 159

Conclusion .................................................................................. 161

Appendix One. Jāmī’s Epistolary Reply to Yaʿqūb ....................... 165
   Translation ................................................................................. 165
CONTENTS

Appendix Two. Salāmān va Absāl ................................................................. 167
  Translation .............................................................................................. 167

Bibliography ................................................................................................ 235
Index ........................................................................................................... 255
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The writing and completion of this book would have been impossible without the assistance and advice of a number of individuals, organizations, and institutions. First and foremost, I would like to express my gratitude to my teacher and Ph.D. dissertation supervisor, Maria Subtelny, whose guidance and encouragement, together with her knowledge of the medieval Persian and Islamic sources, and her careful attention to detail, were critical to my understanding Jāmī’s *Salāmān va Aḥsāl*. I would also like to thank the members of my dissertation committee, especially Todd Lawson and Jo-Ann Gross, for their thoughtful comments. Over the years, I have benefited from the generosity of scholars who shared with me their wisdom and unpublished research, or who read sections of the current book. Of these generous souls, I would particularly like to mention: Colin Mitchel, Paul Losensky, Jürgen Paul, Devin DeWeese, Linda Darling, Shahzad Bashir, Lloyd Ridgeon, Alexandre Papas, Dina Le Gall, Louise Marlow, Carl Ernst, Fatemeh Keshavarz, Ahmet Karamustafa, Julia Rubanovich, Marta Simidchieva, Mahdi Tourage, Maryam Moazzen, Jim Lindsay, and Jim Goode.

I am especially grateful for the financial support I received during my doctoral studies from the Roshan Cultural Heritage Institute and the Houtan Scholarship Foundation. I would therefore like to indicate my gratitude to Elahé Mir-Djalali Omidyar and Mina Houtan. I would also like to thank the American Institute for Iranian Studies, under whose auspices I was awarded a travel fellowship allowing me to conduct research in Iran. More recently, I was able to complete research and writing projects related to the book due to the generous support of the Center for Scholarly and Creative Excellence at Grand Valley State University. Finally, I would like to thank the anonymous, external readers of the book manuscript for their insightful comments and express my gratitude to the editors of the series, Charles Melville, Gabrielle van den Berg, and Sunil Sharma, for including my book in Brill’s Studies in Persian Cultural History.

Above all else, I am indebted to my family, especially Ingrid, whose understanding and encouragement have been immeasurable.
NOTE ON TRANSLITERATION AND STYLE

In the transliteration of Arabic and Persian words, I have adopted the system of the *International Journal of Middle East Studies*, with the exception of the Arabic letters *th* and *dh*, which I have rendered by means of *s* and *ţ* in transliterating Persian. In cases where Arabic phrases appear in a Persian text, or where works written in Persian have Arabic titles, I have transliterated these according to the Persian system (see below). Qur’ānic and *hadith* citations have been transliterated using their original Arabic vocalizations. Arabic, Persian, and Turkic terms that have entered the English language, such as dervish, madrasa, shaikh, Sufi, sultan, etc. have not been italicized, with the exception of such terms as *shāh* and *vazīr*, the particular connotations of which are not conveyed by the Anglicized forms shah and vizier. Geographic regions and other common toponyms are given in English and without diacritics (e.g., Azerbaijan, Tabriz). In the notes, bibliography, and text, I have followed the 15th edition of *The Chicago Manual of Style*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ar</th>
<th>En</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>Tr</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>١</td>
<td>’</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>-r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٢</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>-z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٣</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>zh</td>
<td>-zh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٤</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٥</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>sh</td>
<td>-sh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٦</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>š</td>
<td>-š</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٧</td>
<td>ch</td>
<td>ž</td>
<td>-ʒ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٨</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>ţ</td>
<td>-ť</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>٩</td>
<td>kh</td>
<td>ṣ</td>
<td>-ṣ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>۱۰</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>‘</td>
<td>-‘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>۱۱</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>gh</td>
<td>-gh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- final ُ-a
- alif (long a)-ā
- wāw (long u)-ū
- yāʾ (long i)-ī
- fathah–a
- kasra–i
- žamma–u
- dipthong with ی–ai
- dipthong with ِ–au
INTRODUCTION

This study is concerned with the allegorical romance *Salāmān va Absāl*, composed by the medieval Persian poet-mystic ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Jāmī, which has been somewhat maligned by modern scholarship that has tended to regard it simply as a trite and even grotesque tale about the amorous affair between a prince and his wet-nurse. This study seeks to counter this view by demonstrating that *Salāmān va Absāl* contains valuable historical information about the political, religious, cultural, and ethical dynamics of the court of the Āq Qoyūnlū dynasty during the reign of sultan Yaʿqūb b. Ězūn Hasan, and that it is in fact a complex allegory that functions as an esoteric “mirror for princes,” that is, a medieval Perso-Islamic work of advice for rulers. On account of its rich symbolism, it operates on three distinct yet interrelated levels of meaning—the ethico-political, the mystical, and the historical. The third historical level is of particular interest as it relates to the personal struggle of the ruler Yaʿqūb. To be specific, it allegorically depicts the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler’s addiction to wine and his subsequent public repentance from drinking.

The first level of meaning of *Salāmān va Absāl* concerns the ethical and political advice it proffers on the art of good governance. In many instances, this advice accords with the counsels and aphorisms contained in such classic medieval Perso-Islamic manuals of advice as *Qābūs-nāma*, *Siyar al-mulūk*, *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk*, *Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī*, and *Akhlāq-i Jalālī*. These works emphasized the importance of justice (*ʿadl* or *ʿadālat*) in the administration of the state, arguing that consistent maintenance of justice results in stable rule. Jāmī echoes this idea in *Salāmān va Absāl* and marshals a well-known though non-canonical *ḥadīth* that credits Muḥammad with declaring that an infidel ruler who is just is preferable to a Muslim ruler who is a tyrant (*ẓālim*). Likewise, the ancient Iranian conception, expressed in the medieval manuals of advice, that religion (*dīn*) and kingship (*daulat*) are like “twin-brothers,” in other words functionally co-dependent, underlies the ethico-political level of meaning of the *Salāmān va Absāl* narrative.

Most medieval Islamic dynasties applied this traditional Sasanian notion in terms of state support for religious scholars (*ʿulamāʾ*) and normative Islam, but it appears that in the case of Yaʿqūb and the Āq Qoyūnlū, the fraternity of “turban and crown” also involved court patronage of Suﬁs,
or Muslim mystics. The ethico-political advice of Jāmī to the ruler Ya’qūb is that he should recognize that “true kingship” consists in his becoming a Sufi-ruler. The true vicegerent of God (khalīfat Allāh), according to Jāmī, is the Sufi-ruler whose inner being is supported by the twin-pillars of din and dawlat, and who attains that degree of perfection, or “inner justice,” by seeking the blessings of Sufi mystics and by following strictly their advice. For this reason, the present study seeks to demonstrate that the first plane of meaning of Salāmān va Absāl represents Jāmī’s appeal to Ya’qūb to intensify his interest in and political, and perhaps financial, support of individual Sufis and mystical brotherhoods by striving to become a spiritual person himself.

The second plane of meaning on which the tale of Salāmān va Absāl is to be understood is the mystical. Throughout his tale, Jāmī presents Ya’qūb with advice on two fundamental requirements of the mystical path, namely, repentance (tauba) and subjugation of the carnal soul (nafs). Repentance is a concept that was routinely discussed in the classic Sufi manuals, such as Kashf al-maḥjūb and al-Risāla al-Qushairīyya, since it represents the first station on the path to spiritual enlightenment. The theme of repentance permeates the entire Salāmān va Absāl narrative, which culminates in the repentance of Salāmān and his abandonment of his beloved wet-nurse, Absāl, so that he may inherit his father’s throne as the King of ancient Greece. In making repentance the dominant theme of Salāmān va Absāl, Jāmī intended his Āq Qoyûnlū audience to recognize that the narrative depicts symbolically the initial stages of the spiritual transformation of the soul. Moreover, just as the classic Sufi manuals maintain that the repentance of an adept must be accompanied by the annihilation of his carnal soul, or ego-self, Salāmān va Absāl states that Salāmān’s renunciation of the pleasures he derived from Absāl represents symbolically the eradication of base instincts and expression of contrition for past sins. It is therefore our contention that the character of Salāmān represents the three conditions of the soul mentioned in the Qurʾān and cited by Sufis as the path to spiritual perfection, that is, the “soul that incites to evil” (al-nafs al-ammāra bi-al-sūʾ), the “soul that blames itself” (al-nafs al-lawwāma), and the “soul at peace” (al-nafs al-muṭmaʾinna).

Also reflected in the three aspects of the soul, and thus the three stages of the spiritual transformation of Salāmān, are the three modes of being that were articulated in the writings of the great thirteenth-century theosophist, Ibn al-ʿArabī. Jāmī was a proponent of the theosophical system of Ibn al-ʿArabī, whose ideas, including the concept eventually known as the “Oneness of Being” (waḥdat al-wujūd), are reflected in Salāmān va Absāl.
For this reason, *Salāmān va Absāl* should be included in scholarly discussions about the influence on Jāmī of the metaphysics of Ibn al-ʿArabī.

Finally, the conclusion to *Salāmān va Absāl* depicts the visionary mystical experience of the heart. According to Sufi tradition, the visionary experience represents the culmination of the mystical quest and is a sign of God’s wish to reveal Himself to Himself in the purified heart of the Sufi saint. This event is vividly portrayed at the end of *Salāmān va Absāl* when, having realized that his dream-vision of Venus was a sign of the reality of the oneness of God, Salāmān experiences gnosis, that is, true knowledge of God through knowledge of the self, thereby becoming one of His saints (*valī*).

Scholarship thus far has not adequately situated the tale of *Salāmān va Absāl* in its historical context. Consequently, specialists have never recognized that, in addition to its mystical meaning, the tale is historically significant and communicates important information about Yaʿqūb. This inattention to the historical merits of *Salāmān va Absāl* has led historians of the reign of Yaʿqūb to rely almost exclusively on the official (and in some cases, flawed) court chronicle of Yaʿqūb, the *Tārīkh-i ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī*. *Salāmān va Absāl* is by no means a substitute for the historical chronicle. Rather, its historical value rests with the information it conveys symbolically—details which this study seeks to corroborate by employing several contemporary Āq Qoyūnlū sources, including court commissioned histories, royal edicts, personal letters, literary anthologies, hagiographies, and poetry addressed to Yaʿqūb. By cross-checking these sources with an historical reading of *Salāmān va Absāl*, this study seeks to demonstrate that *Salāmān va Absāl* operates as an historical allegory that refers symbolically to Yaʿqūb’s personal addiction to wine and his subsequent repentance from it beginning in 893/1488. Contrary to the received wisdom, which maintains that Jāmī wrote *Salāmān va Absāl* in 885/1480 as a coronation gift for Yaʿqūb, this study endeavors to prove that the work was actually written to commemorate Yaʿqūb’s public abstinence, and hence, was composed between the years 893/1488 and 895/1490.

In order to demonstrate that *Salāmān va Absāl* is an historical allegory, the study argues that each character in the tale represents a key member of the Āq Qoyūnlū court and that the lust of Salāmān for Absāl represents Yaʿqūb’s addiction to alcohol. Salāmān thus represents Yaʿqūb, Absāl symbolizes wine, the King of ancient Greece represents the ideal of kingship, and the Sage represents Yaʿqūb’s mentor and *vazīr*, Qāżī Ḥusayn ʿĪsā Sāvajī. Textual support for this interpretation is to be found in *Salāmān va Absāl* itself, specifically a line in which Jāmī quotes from the *Maṣnavī-yi maʿnavī*.
by Rūmī. This pivotal line, which is taken from the allegory by Rūmī about a king who fell in love with his handmaiden, states that the true identities of “lovers” should be hidden from the uninitiated and that their tale should be told in the “garments” of others. This statement, which occurs early on in the poem, signals that *Salāmān va Absāl* contains a deeper, hidden meaning and that its characters—referred to as “lovers”—actually represent other individuals, in this case the historical figures Yaʿqūb and Qāżī ʿĪsā Sāvajī. According to the logic of this historical interpretation, the killing of Absāl and the penitent return of Salāmān to his father symbolizes the renunciation of wine by Yaʿqūb and his rededication to the throne he inherited from his father, Üzūn Ḥasan.

Finally, it is the contention here that, despite its ancient Greek provenance, Jāmī’s version of the story of Salāmān and Absāl was patterned after the above-mentioned allegory by Rūmī about the king who fell in love with his handmaiden. In addition to the fact that *Salāmān va Absāl* is written in the same metre as the *Masnavī*, the characters in Jāmī’s tale—Salāmān, Absāl, the King, and the Sage—may be said to correspond respectively to the handmaiden, the goldsmith, the king, and the divine physician-sage in Rūmī’s allegorical tale.

Another historical aspect of *Salāmān va Absāl* explored in this study is the frequency with which spiritual techniques traditionally associated with the Naqshbandī Sufi order are referred to in the text. For example, we find numerous allusions to the silent remembrance of God (ṣikr-i khafī), to the initiatory practice of fixing the image of the shaikh in one’s heart (rābiṭa), and to the ability of the shaikh to concentrate and deploy his spiritual energy (himmat). One explanation for the prevalence of Naqshbandī terminology could be Jāmī’s well-known membership in the order and his reputation for having initiated several prominent members of the Timurid court into it. Taking this and Jāmī’s enduring rapport with Yaʿqūb into consideration, the present study speculates that the poet-mystic may have intended to introduce Yaʿqūb to the rudiments of Naqshbandī Sufism, albeit from a distance, since Jāmī resided in the Timurid capital, Herat. Jāmī may thus have been acting as a shaikh to Yaʿqūb. Such a claim is not entirely unfounded, especially if we consider that the Naqshbandīs were unique among medieval Sufi orders in their belief that a shaikh could transmit spiritual guidance to disciples through his *himmat*, without being physically present. In order to further buttress this claim, the present study demonstrates that, although the Khalvatī order was the main presence at the Āq Qoyũnlū court in Tabriz, local or transplanted Naqshbandīs, such as Darvīsh Qāsim, Shahīdī Qumī, and
Ṣun‘ Allāh Kūzakunānī, also exerted considerable influence over Üzūn Ḥasan and Ya‘qūb. Therefore, the terminology and ideas expressed in Salāmān va Absāl would not have been alien to an Āq Qoyūnlū audience, and might even have augmented the efforts of local Naqshbandis to ingratiate the order with the royal court. It appears that the conventional view that the Naqshbandī order was not involved in Āq Qoyūnlū affairs is no longer tenable, and the overall impact of Sufi mysticism on the politics and personalities of the Āq Qoyūnlū court of Ya‘qūb needs to be understood more broadly.
CHAPTER ONE

APPROACHING JĀMĪ’S SALĀMĀN VA ABSĀL AS A PERSO-ISLAMIC BOOK OF ADVICE FOR RULERS

Over four centuries after its composition, the poem Salāmān va Absāl by Nūr al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Jāmī (d. 898/1492) and its evocative narrative involving an illicit romance between a pubescent prince and his wet-nurse still appears to discomfort modern literary historians of classical Persian belles-lettres. Largely dismissed by its critics, including Edward G. Browne, A. J. Arberry, and Jan Rypka, as “curious,” “silly,” “crude,” and even “grotesque,” the tale of Salāmān va Absāl has come to be regarded as one of Jāmī’s lesser achievements, a bizarre aberration in his corpus of otherwise straightforwardly mystical and didactic poems.1 Another reason for its relative obscurity is that it was dedicated to a Türkmen ruler, Abū al-Muẓaffar Yaʿqūb b. Üzun Ḥasan (hereafter Yaʿqūb; d. 896/1490), leader of the Āq Qoyūnlū tribal confederation, whose reign has received little attention in comparison to his Timurid and Ottoman contemporaries.2


To be sure, the scandalous romance, one that is incestuous and thus religiously proscribed, might at first glance distract casual readers from apprehending the mystical significance of the tale and the esoteric didacticism of its anecdotes. However, it is precisely through the indelicate, if not shocking, theme of the narrative that the subtleties of mystical transformation and esoteric allusion find their veiled expression.\textsuperscript{3} With this in mind, an abbreviated overview of the narrative itself is in order.

\textit{The Narrative Context of Salāmān va Absāl}

The tale opens with the description of a King (\textit{shahryār, shāh}) of ancient Greece who succeeds in making a Sage (\textit{ḥakīm}) his companion in both “solitude” (\textit{khalvat}) and “society” (\textit{ṣuḥbat}). Adhering to the direction (\textit{tadbīr}) and instruction (\textit{talqīn}) of the Sage, the King conquers the entire world, its inhabitants prospering under the foundation of his justice (\textit{ʿadl}) and munificence (\textit{jūd}).

Contemplating his condition (\textit{ḥāl}), the King realizes that, although he has acquired the good fortune of rulership (\textit{daulat}), he remains without a son to succeed (\textit{khalaf}) him. Speaking with the Sage, the King relates his desire for a worthy heir, declaring that there is no greater blessing (\textit{nīmat}) than a son. The response of the Sage is a withering condemnation of carnal lust (\textit{shahvat}) which, in his opinion, only serves to sever wisdom (\textit{khirad}) from the heart (\textit{dil}) and light (\textit{nūr}) from the eyes. Women, much like wine, are the locus of this lust and must therefore be avoided. To produce an heir, the Sage draws semen from the King’s spine and deposits it in a place other than a female womb.\textsuperscript{4} Jāmī is careful to note that the seminal

\textsuperscript{3} For a study addressing the mystical teachings symbolically embedded within the bawdy tales of the \textit{Masnavī-yi maʿnavī} by Jalāl al-Dīn Rūmī, see Mahdi Tourage, “Phallic Esotericism in a Tale from Jalal al-Din Rumi’s \textit{Masnavi-yi Ma'navi},” \textit{Iranian Studies} 39, no. 1 (2006): 47–60.

\textsuperscript{4} According to Galenic physiology and medieval Islamic theories on medicine, sperm was created in the brain and stored in the spine. For a discussion of the transmission of ancient Greek medical knowledge into Islam, see Edward G. Browne, \textit{Arabian Medicine} (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1921). In the translation of an earlier Arabic version of the tale of Salāmān and Absāl by Ḥunain b. Ishāq, the king’s sperm was deposited inside a mandrake/\textit{mandragora} tree. See Henry Corbin, \textit{Avicenna and the Visionary Recital}, trans. Willard R. Trask (London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1960), 211. On the cross-cultural beliefs in the magical powers of the mandrake and the myth that it grows from human sperm, see Thierry Zarcone, “The Myth of the Mandrake, the ‘Plant-Human’,”
emission occurred without carnal lust (bī shahvat). Nine months later, a flawless child emerges who, on account of his perfection (salāmat), is given the name Salāmān.

The motherless Salāmān is then assigned a ravishing beauty named Absāl as his wet-nurse (dāya). Absāl immediately becomes infatuated with her suckling, whose beauty reaches perfection when he becomes fourteen years of age. Absāl’s attraction to Salāmān is made manifest when she uses her irresistible coquetry to seduce him. Her stratagem works and soon Salāmān yearns after her and they consummate their union (vaṣl) in a love affair that sees Salāmān abandon both King and Sage in favor of his beloved Absāl.

Distressed by these events, the King and the Sage summon Salāmān to the palace. His salvation, they determine, is contingent on imparting good counsel (naṣīḥat) to him. Salāmān is urged to realize his noble origin and abandon his libertine ways. Apologetic in his rejoinder, Salāmān nevertheless suggests that it is fate that has inscrutably determined this romance to be his destiny. Vexed by so much reproach, he flees with Absāl by night and arrives at a shoreless sea. Finding a skiff, the two travel until they reach an emerald isle where they enjoy each other’s companionship (ṣuḥbat) unmolested.

Stung by the departure of his son, the King gazes into his magical world-displaying mirror (āyīna-i gītī numāy) and sees Salāmān and Absāl who are happily unconcerned with anything except each other.5 Initially compassionate, the mercy of the King subsides as he grows more sorrowful. He decides to apply the power of his spiritual concentration (himmat) towards Salāmān in order to detach him from Absāl.6

---

5 This is normally taken to be the mythic world-displaying cup, the so-called jām-i Jamshīd or jām-i Kai Khusraw, which is also associated with Solomon (Sulaimān) in the Qur’ān and the Alexander legend. For details on how the ancient literary motif of a world-displaying cup traveled from Iran to India, see Mary Boyce, A History of Zoroastrianism, 3 vols. (Leiden: Brill, 1975–82), 1340.

6 According to the Sufi mystical tradition, himmat denotes the concentrated spiritual energy a perfect mystic projects from his heart (dil or qalb) towards a desired objective. It is therefore considered a miracle-producing power and is usually associated with prophets and saints. Descriptions of the creative potential of himmat appear most often in the theosophy of Muḥyī al-Dīn Ibn al-ʿArabī (d. 637/1240). For examples, see Ibn al-ʿArabī, Fuṣūṣ al-ḥikām, ed. Abū al-ʿAlā’ ʿAfīfī, 2 vols. (Beirut: Dār al-Kitāb al-ʿArabī, 1966), 1127–30;
Deprived of Absāl and consumed by grief, Salāmān recognizes the intervention of his father. In an act of repentance (tauba), he returns to the King, who enjoins him to abandon Absāl and pursue his true destiny—kingship (mulk). Unconvinced by the entreaty of his father, Salāmān goes into the wilderness (ṣaḥrā), kindles a fire, and plunges into the inferno together with Absāl. The King, secretly aware of the situation, intervenes and uses his power of concentration (himmat) to ensure that Absāl is in turn engulfed while Salāmān emerges unscathed from the flames.

Salāmān is distraught at the death of Absāl, which prompts the King to seek a remedy from the Sage. Salāmān submits to the intervention of the Sage, who promises to bring Absāl back and make her his eternal companion. Whenever Absāl enters the mind of Salāmān, the Sage creates an image (ṣūrat) of her, holds it before Salāmān’s eyes, and describes the beauty of Venus (zuhra) instead. Salāmān eventually becomes absorbed in the adoration of Venus’ face, thereby effacing the image (naqsh) of Absāl forever from his mind.

Freed from his grief over the death of Absāl, Salāmān gives his heart to the One [true] beloved (maʾshūq), i.e., the Divine, and thus becomes worthy of the crown of kingship (afsar-i shāhī) and the throne of the sultanate (takht-i salṭanat). Before an assembly of notables of the state (arkān-i daulat), the King invests Salāmān with crown and throne, commanding obeisance to his son from all those present. The tale culminates with the King delivering his “testament” (vaṣiyyat-nāma) to Salāmān, in which he advises him to be guided by religion-acquiring reason (ʿaql-i dīn-andūz), to rule with justice (ʿadl), and to appoint a wise (dānā) and trustworthy (amīn) vazīr to counsel him.

---


7 A parallel event to the Qur’anic story of the creation of Adam (Q 15:28–29) where God commands his angels “fall you down, bowing before him!”

The Provenance of the Salāmān and Absāl Allegory

The characters Salāmān and Absāl, and the allegorical symbolism they represent, do not originate with the tale of Jāmī. In fact, Salāmān and Absāl figure prominently in a series of medieval Arabic and Persian philosophical and mystical allegories, most of which predate Jāmī’s adoption of the characters by many centuries. The characters Salāmān and Absāl first appear in the ninth chapter of the *Kitāb al-ṭifārīt wa al-tanbihāt* by Ibn Sīnā (d. 428/1037) in which he discusses the “stages of the gnostics” (*fī maqāmāt al-‘ārifīn*):

Gnostics have stages and degrees by which they are favored over others while in their earthly life. It is as if their bodies were garments that they had removed and stripped away (to move) toward the Realm of Sanctity (*‘ālam al-quds*). They have things hidden and manifest that are denied by whoever would deny them but are deemed momentous by whoever has come to know them. We will tell you about these things. And when your ear has been struck by what it hears, and what you will hear has been narrated to you, it will be the story of Salāmān and Absāl. Know that Salāmān is a similitude coined for you and that Absāl is a similitude coined for your degree of gnosis, if you be one of the people. So decipher the allegory (*al-ramz*), if you are able.

It has widely been suggested that what followed was the narrative depiction by Ibn Sīnā of the psychological struggle occasioned by a spiritual reorientation. Unfortunately, the original text is lost. The only sources for the possible contents of the lost narrative are commentaries on the *Ishārāt wa al-tanbihāt* by the Qurʾān commentator-exegete, Fakhr al-Dīn Muhammad b. Umar Rāzī (d. 606/1209), and the Shiʿite polymath Naṣīr al-Dīn Ṭūsī (d. 672/1274). Describing the tale as an insoluble enigma, Rāzī nevertheless unraveled enough meaning to conclude that Ibn Sīnā invented the names “Salāmān” and “Absāl” to signify Adam and Paradise (*janna*), respectively. Considered this way, the story represents the exile of the soul from Paradise and its progressive return to the original state of

---

9 The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v. “Salāmān and Absāl” (by P. Heath).
11 Dehghan, “Jāmī’s Salāmān and Absāl,” 118.
bliss and perfection, a journey that Henry Corbin described in his excur- sus on the tales of Salāmān and Absāl as representing “the whole myth of the Anthrōpos.”

Ṭūsī, on the other hand, provides two versions of the tale in his commentary. The first, purportedly of ancient Greek provenance, was translated into Arabic from the Syriac by Ḥunain b. Ishāq (d. 260/873). It shares many points in common with the narrative by Jāmī, starting with the forbidden romance between a young prince and his wet-nurse. In the neo-Platonic interpretation of Ṭūsī, the prince Salāmān corresponds to the rational soul (nafs-i nāṭiqa), Absāl to the corporeal faculty (quvvā-yi jismī), the King to the Active Intellect (‘aql-i fa“āl), and the Sage to divine emanation (fa‘iz-i ilāhī). By implication, this version of the Greek tale recounts the infatuation of the soul with material pleasures, which it overcomes only when divine will acts through its angelic agent, freeing soul from body so that it assumes its rightful place at the divine Throne.

Before we accept the ancient Greek origin of this version in toto, its invocation of ancient Iranian motifs and imagery needs to be acknowledged. For example, the ascension and return of the soul to its luminous origins, coupled with the widespread use of light terminology, a theme later manifested in the Illuminationist (Ishrāqī) philosophy of Shihāb

---

12 Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 207.
13 Though mostly in accord with one another, a short list of “minor” differences between the Hellenistic version by Ṭūsī and the poetic version by Jāmī is provided by Dehghan, “Jāmī’s Salāmān and Absāl,” 21–22. For a recent study on the rich legacy of the ancient Greek version, see Sayyid Hasan Amin, Salāmān va Absāl: Uṣūrā-i yūnānī dar farhang-i īrānī va falsafa-i islāmī dar chahārdah rivāyat (Tehran: Dāʾirat al-Maʿārif-i Īrān-shināsī, 1383/2004).
14 The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v. “Salāmān and Absāl” (P. Heath); and Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 218–19.
15 The commentary by Ṭūsī briefly mentions the appearance of Salāmān and Absāl or “Ibsāl” (imprisonment) in the al-Nawādir by Ibn al-ʿArabī, where Salāmān, a man famous for his goodness is held captive with Absāl, a man known for his wickedness. In the story, Salāmān is freed while Absāl languishes and eventually dies. Writing in the eleventh/seventeenth century, the philosopher of the Illuminationist school in Isfahan, Ṣadr al-Dīn Shirāzī (d. 1050/1640–41), more widely referred to as Mullā Ṣadrā, cites Salāmān wa Absāl in his Kitāb al-asfār al-arba‘a in support of the doctrine concerning the pre-existence of the soul. For references to Ibn al-ʿArabī’s use of the character’s name, see Dehghan, “Jāmī’s Salāmān and Absāl,” 19. For Mulla Ṣadrā, see Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 207 n. 4. Other appearances of the Salāmān and Absāl characters in Arabic and Persian literature (at least fourteen in all) are discussed throughout in Amin, Salāmān va Absāl: Uṣūrā-i yūnānī.
16 On the prevalence of ancient Iranian motifs in such Hellenized Persian romances as Vāmiq va ʿAḏrā, Vīs va Rāmīn, and Varqa va Gulshāh, see Dick Davis, Panthea’s Children: Hellenistic Novels and Medieval Persian Romances (New York: Bibliotheca Persica, 2002).
al-Dīn Yahyā Suhravardī (d. 587/1191), are just several indications the tale could also have been of an Iranian provenance. Likewise, the incestuous relationship might be a reflection of the ancient Zoroastrian tradition of consanguineous marriage. Finally, another indication arises when comparing the birth of Salāmān from a tree with Zoroastrian and Manichaean traditions concerning the generation of humans from a plant.

Ibn Sīnā’s Version of the Allegory

In the second version, which Ğūsī ascribes to Ibn Sinā and which bears little resemblance to the ancient Greek version of the tale, Salāmān and Absāl are royal siblings. This rendition casts Salāmān as a king and Absāl as his courageous and loyal younger brother. Based on the commentary by Ğūsī, the narrative concerns the infatuation of the wife of Salāmān for Absāl, and the extraordinary lengths the latter goes to resist her sexual advances. Seeking a respite from her constant ruses, Absāl departs to conquer “east and west” on behalf of his brother and returns to the royal palace only to be poisoned by his jilted lover. Overcome by grief at the death of his beloved brother, Salāmān executes his wife, renounces kingship, and retires to solitary contemplation of God.

---

21 Heath, Allegory and Philosophy, 94. This version of Salāmān and Absāl is very similar to and may in fact have its basis in the Tale of the Two Brothers, an ancient Egyptian folk tale dated around 185 BC and which is contained in the Papyrus D’Orbiney. For a detailed study of the Egyptian tale, see Wolfgang Wettengel, Die Erzählung von den beiden Brüdern: Der Papyrus d’Orbiney und die Königsideolege der Ramessiden (Freiburg, Schweiz: Universitätsverlag, 2003).
As in the Greek version, Ṭūsī interprets Salāmān to be a representation of the rational, or speaking, soul (al-nafs al-nāṭiqa or nafs-i gūyā). The wife of Salāmān, meanwhile, comes to embody concupiscence (shahva) and the faculties (quvvā) of the animal soul (al-nafs al-ḥayawānī). East and west, that is to say, the intelligible (maʿqūl) and sensible (maḥsūs) worlds, are subdued by the acquired intellect (Absāl), bringing to the rational soul (Salāmān) the fruits of its victories. Hermeneutically, the climactic act of Salāmān, according to Ṭūsī, symbolizes the quelling of corporeal passions so that the rational soul (Salāmān) can devote itself entirely to contemplation of the divine realm. The (brotherly) relationship of Salāmān and Absāl, coupled with the use of a “world-displaying mirror” by king Salāmān, have led to suggestions that Ibn Sinā borrowed the two characters (or their names) from the biblical brothers Absalom and Solomon.

Salāmān and Absāl in Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān

The characters Salāmān and Absāl also appear—significantly—in the Risāla Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān of the Andalusian philosopher Abū Bakr b. Ṭufail (d. 581/1185–86) as a clarification of the meaning of Ibn Sinā’s phrase “Oriental Wisdom” (al-ḥikmat al-mashriqiyya). The use of the characters

---

22 Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 227.
23 Heath, Allegory and Philosophy, 95; and Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 228.
24 Heath, Allegory and Philosophy, 95.
25 Heath, Allegory and Philosophy, 95.
27 Dehghan, “Jāmī’s Salāmān and Absāl,” 121.
28 The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v. “Salāmān and Absāl” (by P. Heath). In fact, the full title is Risāla Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān fi ʿasrār al-ḥikmat al-mashriqiyya and is distinct from the Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān by Ibn Sinā (the first of his three récits visionnaires in the Ishārat wa al-tanbihāt; the others being the Risālat al-ṭair and Salāmān wa Absāl). For a discussion of the noetic and experiential dimensions of the Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān cycle, see Aaron W. Hughes, The Texture of the Divine: Imagination in Medieval Islamic and Jewish Thought (Bloomington, IN: University of Indiana Press, 2004), esp. 133–43. See also Paul E. Walker, “Philosophy of Religion in al-Fārābī, Ibn Sinā and Ibn Ṭufayl,” in Reason and Inspiration in Islam: Theology, Philosophy and Mysticism in Muslim Thought: Essays in Honour of Hermann Landolt, ed. Todd Lawson (London: I. B. Tauris in association with The Institute of Ismaili Studies, 2005), esp. 95–96.
by Ibn Ṭufail is original, for he casts Absāl as a gnostic who lives on an island whose habitants, epitomized by their king, Salāmān, stubbornly adhere to the external tenets and rituals of religion. Not satisfied with literalism and visible displays of piety, Absāl, representing the inner dimension of religious spirituality, arrives at Ḥayy’s island in search of a place to engage in solitary contemplation. Absāl subsequently becomes a disciple of Ḥayy, though the two are unsuccessful in their attempts to convey the hidden truths of revelation to the other islanders.

*Coded Speech: The Overall Power of Allegory*

Despite the differences between them, the ancient Greek version and the versions of Ibn Sīnā and Ibn Ṭufail share a common feature: each is an allegorical expression of the mystical path. More precisely, each depicts the quest for the Divine presence by the individual soul, an inward journey in which tribulation and painful purification alchemically transform the soul until it is capable of reflecting the reality of the unity of God.

Allegory, or the mode expressing thoughts in coded speech by saying one thing and meaning another, naturally lent itself to describing mystical experience, which ultimately is impossible to describe. A literal or outer (ẓāhir) level of meaning, usually in the form of a tale that makes sense in and of itself, could therefore be used to mask a deeper, esoteric (bāṭin) meaning impenetrable but to those capable of recognizing the images and deciphering the esoteric significance of certain words. Prose allegories like *Salāmān wa Absāl* and *Ḥayy ibn Yaẓān* were thus ideal vehicles for the explanation of spiritual progression toward the Divine mysteries to Sufi initiates; this was accomplished through the concealment offered by the exoteric narrative.

The ideal vehicle, however, for expressions of the Islamic mystical experience was not prose but poetry, particularly poetry written in the Persian language, which on account of its capacity to be both vague and

---

30 Absāl first appeared to Ḥayy at the very moment the latter, having retired to a cave for forty days of spiritual contemplation, reached *unio mystica*.
precise, was unparalleled in its potential for creating word plays (tajnīs), double meaning, and amphibology (īhām). Jāmī’s version of Salāmān and Absāl, which was written in rhyming couplets of Persian verse, is unique in that it describes this experience within the framework of a poetic form (masnāvī). Stated differently, Persian poetry served as the ideal medium for Jāmī to create an unusually esoteric composition: a work of political and ethical advice set within an allegorical romance that actually describes the spiritual journey of the soul.

Another unique aspect of Jāmī’s version of the Salāmān and Absāl narrative is that it is addressed directly to a royal patron, Yaʿqūb, a prince from the Bāyandur clan of Oghuz Turks, whose twelve-year reign (883–96/1478–90) as ruler of the Āq Qoyūnlū (White Sheep) confederation of Türkmen tribes in northern Iraq, eastern Anatolia, and Azerbaijan, was marked both by literary-cultural achievements and his own struggles with alcohol addiction. It appears that as a consequence, Jāmī infused his version of Salāmān and Absāl with enough practical advice on governing according to Perso-Islamic principles to allow us to view his versified rendition of the tale as a mirror for princes.

Salāmān va Absāl, an Esoteric Mirror for Princes

As the first poetic treatment of the tale in Persian, Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl contained the potential to convey secrets of esoteric knowledge concerning the mystical transformation of the soul. But, as this study endeavors to prove, it also contains disguised information regarding historical figures at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Thus, the primary aim of this study is to demonstrate that the mystico-historical esotericism present throughout Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl had a larger didactic motive: to provide political and ethical advice for the ruler.

Mystically-inclined Persian mirrors for princes, written by Sufis, were not unknown in medieval Iran. For example, Sāz va pīrāya-yi shāhān-i pūrmāya


34 That Yaʿqūb was a drunkard is mentioned in several sources, including the Ṣaḥāʾif al-akhbār, an Ottoman chronicle written by Darvish Ahmad (also known as Munajjim-bāshī) and based on an eleventh/seventeenth century Arabic source of the same title. In it, Yaʿqūb’s reputation is as a ruler “disposed to drink and a merry life, and very fond of poetry.” For a reference, see Browne, Literary History of Persia 3:415.
by Afżāl al-Dīn Muhammad b. Ḥasan Kāshānī (d. 610/1213–14),35 Mişrād al-ʿibād mīn al-mabdāʾ ilā al-maʿāḍ by Najm al-Dīn Rāzī (d. 652/1256–57),36 and Zakhīrat al-mulūk by ʿAlī b. Shihāb al-Dīn Hamadānī (786/1385)37 each explicated the idea of perfect kingship by correlating it with the Sufi mystical concept of the Perfect Man (al-ḥāsīn al-kāmil) as the true vicegerent of God (khalīfat Allāh).38

Contrary to most appraisals of Salāmān va Absāl, which treat it simply as a romantic allegory,39 this thesis seeks to argue that the tale by Jāmī is in fact a multi-layered work of practical ethical wisdom incorporating major elements of the Perso-Islamic tradition of advice literature, variously referred to as andarz, pand, naṣīḥat, vaṣīyat, siyar, and akhlāq.40

---

39 ʿAlī Asghar Ḥikmat, Jāmī: Mutāzammin-i taḥqīqāt dar tārīkh-i āsār va nushūr-i khātīm al-shuʿarāʾ, (Tehran: Chāpkhāna-i Bank-i Millī Īrān, 1321/1942), 189; Browne, Literary History of Persia 3:523; A. J. Arberry, FitzGerald’s Salaman and Absal, 42; Rypka, History of Iranian Literature, 297; J. T. P. de Bruijn, Persian Sufi Poetry: An Introduction to the Mystical Use of Classical Poems (Richmond: Curzon, 1997), 123; and Alā-Ḥān Afsahzād, Naqd va bar rasi-yi āsār va sharh-i ahvāl-i Jāmī (Tehran: Mirāq-i Maktūb, 1999), 311. Arberry hints at the historicity of the poem when he addresses Jāmī’s potential motive: “The myth of the philosopher who had the ear of the king had haunted eastern imagination ever since Aristotle was supposed to have instructed the Emperor of Greece…Jāmī…must have felt peculiarly well qualified to play the traditional role of rhyming counselor,” Arberry, FitzGerald’s Salaman and Absal, 42.
Demonstrating that Salāmān va Absāl operates as a mystical mirror for princes will be carried out by interrogating those concepts and statements on statecraft it contains which correspond to and repeat ideas expressed in several classic medieval Persian works of advice. That is to say, key aspects of Salāmān va Absāl will be compared and integrated with similar aspects found in such Perso-Islamic manuals of advice as: Qābūs-nāma by Kay Kāʿūs b. Iskandar;¹⁴ Siyar al-mulūk by Niẓām al-Mulk;¹⁵ Naṣīḥat al-mulūk by Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad al-Ghazālī;¹⁶ Akhlāq-i Nāṣīrī by Naṣīr al-Dīn Ṭūsī,⁴⁴ and finally, Akhlāq-i Jalālī by Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī.⁴⁵

First in terms of chronology is the Qābūs-nāma of Kay Kāʿūs b. Iskandar (d. ca. 477/1084–85), a Ziyarid princeling from the Caspian provinces of Tabaristan (Mazandaran) and Gurgan in northern Iran. Noted for its brisk practicality, this manual, which emphasizes the Zoroastrian principle of moderation (paimān; mīyāna or andāza) and manly virtue (javānmardī), was completed in 474/1082–83 for Kay Kāʿūs’ son and successor Gīlānshāh (d. 483/1090).⁴⁶ Encyclopedic in its outlook, the forty-four chapters of the

---


Qābūs-nāma tackle a range of spiritual and mundane matters, including: knowing God, the creation of the prophets and their mission, the etiquette of eating, purchasing a horse, rearing children, the art of controlling an armed force, and the conduct of kingship.

Written about four years after the Qābūs-nāma (i.e., 478/1087) is the Siyar al-mulūk, an administrative handbook on medieval realpolitik by the doyen of medieval Persian vazīrs, Niẓām al-Mulk al-Ṭūsī (d. 485/1092). Supposedly commissioned at the urging of the Saljuq ruler Malikshāh (d. 485/1092) as an internal review of his realm, the Siyar al-mulūk served as a candid and expedient appraisal of the Great Saljuq empire. Its preoccupation with safeguarding the hierarchical status quo by maintaining the ruler’s monopoly on coercive force (siyāsat), though justified by Niẓām al-Mulk with reference to old Sasanian precedents, reflects the perturbations of its author over contemporary threats posed by insurrectionist and heretical religious groups of fifth/eleventh century Iran, notably the Ismā‘īlī Shi‘ites (referred to in the text as Bāṭinīs).47

Another manual written for a Saljuq patron and useful for the present study is the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk ascribed to the Muslim theologian Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad Ghazālī (d. 505/1111). Completed twenty-three years after the Siyar al-mulūk and dedicated to the Saljuq ruler Muḥammad b. Malikshāh (d. 511/1118) on behalf of his younger brother Sanjar (d. 552/1157), the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk is in fact an amalgam of two very dissimilar sections; the first serving as a homiletic exposition of the Islamic faith, the second as a theoretical and practical guide to kingship. It is this latter exposition and the forthright Islamization of ancient Iranian traditions concerning the relationship between religion (dīn) and kingship (mulk) that is of special interest for this study.48

The first major post-Mongol work of Perso-Islamic ethico-political advice, the Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī by Naṣīr al-Dīn Ṭūsī, is particularly useful in correlating Salāmān va Absāl to the body of works on political advice.49

The most influential medieval Persian advice manual, the Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī

---

49 Ṭūsī, Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī; and Nasirean Ethics, passim.
synthesized Aristotelian philosophy with ancient Indo-Iranian ideals of hierarchy by augmenting earlier Islamic works on political philosophy by Abū Naṣr Fārābī (d. 339/950) and Abū ʿAlī b. Miskawaih (d. 421/1030).50 The Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī, which was ultimately dedicated to the Ilkhanid ruler of Iran, Hülegü (d. 663/1265), conceptualizes society as a cooperative effort to achieve a degree of “perfection” that can only be realized in the communal unit of the city (madīna). Borrowing the Aristotelian concept of man as a “civic animal” (al-insān al-madaniyy bi-al-ṭabʿ), Ṭūsī states that humans are inclined by nature to congregate in cities and engage in social interaction (ijtimāʿ) while occupying themselves with a diversity of crafts and professions.51 According to Ṭūsī, the role of the ruler is to regulate a cooperative ethic of mutual aid (muʿāvanat) amongst these diverse groups by keeping each within its proper hierarchical rank or vocational place and in a condition of interdependency.52 The resulting societal equilibrium (iʿtidāl) is equated with justice (ʿadl), the highest of virtues.53 This arranging of a polity according to the fundamental order of the universe, that is the external macrocosm, is implicitly mirrored by the necessity for the individual (i.e., the ruler) to properly order the inner microcosm of himself.

This study will explore how the idea of “man as the microcosm” is reflected in Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl. The need of the ruler to realize his place as the shadow of God (ẓill Allāh) by keeping his bodily humors in balance and passions in check will be compared with the perfect ruler or the need of the Sufi mystic to perfect his spiritual self by disciplining (tadbīr) his carnal soul, or nafs. The concept of acting as the vicegerent of God (khalīfat Allāh) or shadow of God on earth will therefore be discussed in connection with the Sufi conception of the Perfect Man.54 Special attention will be paid to the Akhlāq-i Jalālī by Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī (d. 908/1502–3), which was dedicated to both Üzūn Ḥasan (d. 882/1478/1502).
and his eldest son Sulṭān-Khalīl (i.e., the older uterine brother of Yaʿqūb) sometime between 871–81/1467–77. It represents an Āq Qoyūnlū mirror for princes, which was based in part on ideas contained in the Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī by Naṣīr al-Dīn Ṭūsī. It is, however, unique among mirrors in its insistence that the ruler associate with Sufi mystics and support dervishes who, by way of their spiritual energy (himmat), can act as kingmakers.55 In addition to its admonitions to Üzūn Ḥasan and Sulṭān-Khalīl regarding the political importance of Sufi mystics, the Akhlāq-i Jalālī contains esoteric elements which buttress the claim put forward in this study that the Āq Qoyūnlū court of Yaʿqūb was fertile ground for the reception of such mystical works as Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl. That is to say, the prevalence of Sufi mystical ideas at the Āq Qoyūnlū court was such that not only was a “traditional” mirror for princes (i.e., the Akhlāq-i Jalālī) pervaded with Sufi ethics, but a mystical allegory—in poetic form no less—could also be a vehicle by which concepts of statecraft were communicated.

In order to establish that Salāmān va Absāl and the Akhlāq-i Jalālī fit within the literary genre of Persian mirrors for princes, we shall examine the defining characteristics of several classic works. By highlighting their shared statements concerning such concepts as kingship, religion, justice, the punitive capacity of the ruler, and the vizierate, these manuals of practical advice will, each in its own way, be treated as antecedent expressions of some of the ideas contained in the Salāmān va Absāl by Jāmī.

For example, passages reflecting such perennial Iranian themes as the necessity for the king to exercise justice (ʿadl or ʿadālat); the idea that religion and kingship are twin-brothers (encapsulated in the expression: dīn va daulat du barādarand) and thus interdependent; and the indispensability of a good vazīr, will be offered as evidence to suggest that Jāmī’s intention was, among other things, to impart wisdom about kingship and statecraft to his Āq Qoyūnlū addressee. In so doing, this study will argue that besides being a mystical Persian romance, Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl also belongs to the genre of Persian mirrors for princes.

Finally, by comparing Salāmān va Absāl with the abovementioned corpus of Persian manuals spanning some five centuries, the durability of ancient Iranian ideals relating to proper governance will be evinced.

55 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 135.
In addition to arguing that *Salāmān va Absāl* is a mystical mirror for princes, a series of secondary hypotheses will be put forward. Chief among these is that the work by Jāmī is partly based on the first tale in the *Maṣnavī-yi maʿnavī* by Jalāl al-Dīn Rūmī (d. 672/1273), namely “The story of the king's falling in love with a handmaiden and buying her,” which Rūmī takes as an allegorical description of the purification of the soul through love. By comparing the symbolic significance of the characters in Rūmī's tale—namely the king, the divine physician, the handmaiden, and the goldsmith—with those in Jāmī's tale, it will be demonstrated that *Salāmān va Absāl* was, in addition to its ancient Graeco-Iranian heritage, modeled in part after Rūmī's famous homiletic tale. To substantiate this claim, we will point to Jāmī's inclusion of key passages from the tale by Rūmī, his use of the metre of the *Maṣnavī*, and the fact that both narratives share a degree of shocking grotesqueness.

**The Historical Significance of Salāmān va Absāl**

Jāmī's tale has another purpose beyond its primary functions as a mirror for princes and an experiential tale, or récit visionnaire, explicating the path of gnostic self-realization—it is also an historical allegory in which the principal characters symbolically represent discrete historical figures at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Salāmān appears to represent the addressee of the poem, Yaʿqūb; the King of ancient Greece represents the ideal of kingship; the Sage represents Yaʿqūb's advisor and vazīr, Qāżī Şafi al-Dīn b. Shukr Allāh ʿIsā Sāvajī (d. 896/1491); and Absāl symbolizes wine and the life of libertinage. The initial infatuation of Salāmān with and subsequent renunciation of Absāl will therefore be contextualized within the historical reality of the public repentance (*tauba*) by Yaʿqūb and his prohibition of the consumption of wine in Tabriz in 893/1488. Jāmī, it will be argued,

---


57 For the record, the tale was not Rūmī’s invention, but may be traced back to the *Kitāb al-Qānūn fī al-ṭibb* of Ibn Sīnā. For a reference, see the commentary by Nicholson in Rūmī, *Mathnawi* 7:34.

58 Although the *farmān* (edict) banning wine-drinking apparently has been lost, a description of its contents and the ceremony marking Yaʿqūb's repentance are found in Khunjī-İṣfahānī, *ʿĀlam-ārāy-i amini*, 73.
composed and dedicated his *Salāmān va Absāl* to Yaʿqūb not only for its high-minded mystical didacticism, but also on account of the narrative's depiction of actual personalities and events that would have been familiar to Yaʿqūb. That is to say, using a mystical tale, Jāmī took the occasion of the renunciation of drinking by Yaʿqūb to encourage him to embark upon, or at least recognize, the pious austerities involved in the Sufi mystical path, which he regarded as a prerequisite of kingship.  

This contradicts the received view that Jāmī composed and dedicated his *Salāmān va Absāl* as a coronation gift to celebrate the commencement of the independent rule of Yaʿqūb in 885/1480. Internal evidence in the text itself provides support to make a case for a later date of completion. By reviewing this and other evidence in contemporary sources of the late ninth/fifteenth and tenth/sixteenth centuries, including the official history of the reign of Yaʿqūb, the *Tārīkh-i ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī* by Fazl Allāh b. Rǔzbihān Khunjī-Iṣfahānī (d. 927/1521), and the personal correspondence of Jāmī and Yaʿqūb, this study will argue that the dedication by Jāmī of his *Salāmān va Absāl* to Yaʿqūb occurred after the latter's public repentance from drinking and was the culminating act of his sustained dialogue with the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler. This rapport, expressed in letters and poetry replete with terms associated with the doctrines and practices of the Naqshbandī Sufi order (*ṭarīqa*), suggests that their relationship resembled that of a Sufi master and his disciple.

**Overview of the Primary Sources**

As John E. Woods has observed, there is no shortage of primary historical sources available for the study of the Āq Qoyūnlū period. The problem, however, lies in the fact that many of these materials are fragmentary, making Āq Qoyūnlū historiography an exercise in synthesis. As a result, a variety of documentary, epigraphical, numismatic, bureaucratic, narrative,

---

59 Commemorating the renunciation of wine-drinking by a prince by dedicating a mirror for princes to him was apparently not uncommon in late ninth/fifteenth and early tenth/sixteenth century Iran. As Subtelny has shown, the late medieval Timurid preacher and polymath Ḩusain Vāʿiẓ Kāshīfī (d. 910/1504–5), dedicated his advice manual, the *Akhlāq-i Muḥsinī*, to Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā and his son Abū al-Muḥsin Mīrzā (d. 913/1507) after the latter made a public repentance (*tauba*) and renunciation of wine-drinking at his father's court in Herat. For a discussion of the contents of the *Akhlāq-i Muḥsinī* and its historical context, see Subtelny, “A Late Medieval Persian *Summa on Ethics*,” 604.

60 Ḣikmat, *Jāmī*, 190.

and literary sources must be exploited in order to undertake an effective inquiry into any aspect of Āq Qoyūnlū history.

Bearing this in mind, the notion that Salāmān va Absāl is a mystical and historically relevant mirror for princes, will be supported by a variety of Persian literary sources, most of which are contemporary or near-contemporary with the poem itself, which is to say they were completed during Jāmī’s lifetime or shortly thereafter during the tenth/sixteenth century. The first such “primary source” is the Salāmān va Absāl itself. Other poems addressed to the Āq Qoyūnlū court, especially those that corroborate historical information contained in Salāmān va Absāl, will be cited. This study will investigate the official histories of the reigns of Ya‘qūb and his father, Ūzūn Ḥasan, namely the ‘Ālam-ārā-yi āmīnī, by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī and the Kitāb-i Diyar-Bakrīyya by Abū Bakr Ṭihrānī-Iṣfahānī (d. 882/1478). Additional information will be gleaned from Safavid-era chronicles, such as the Tāriḵh-i Ḥabīb al-siyār fi akhbār-i afrād-i bashar by Ghiyās al-Dīn Khvāndamīr and the Lubb al-tavārīkh by Mīr Yaḥyā b. ‘Abd al-Latīf (Ḥusainī Saifi) Qazvīnī. This study also makes use of hagiographical literature, specifically, the Maqāmāt-i Jāmī by ‘Abd al-Vāṣi’ Niẓāmī Bākharzī, the Raużāt al-jinān wa jannāt al-janān by Ḥāfiz Ḥusain Karbalāʾi-Tabrizi Bābā-Farajī, the Rashāḥāt-i ‘ain al-ḥayāt by Fakhir al-Dīn ‘Alī b. Ḥusain Vā’iz Kāshfī, the Menākīb-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülṣenī by Muḥyī Gulshānī, and the Majālis al-ʿushshāq by Amīr Sayyid Kamāl al-Dīn Ḥusain Gāzurgāhī. The following literary anthologies will be consulted, the Hasht bihisht by Ḥakīm Shāh-Muḥammad b. Mubārak Qazvīnī, the Tuhfā-i Sāmī by Sām Mīrzā Ṣafavī, the Taḏkirat al-shuʿarāʾ by Daulatshāh b. ‘Alāʾ al-Daula Bakhṭīshāh al-Ghāzī Samarqandi, and the Raużāt al-salāṭīn by Sulṭān Muḥammad Fakhri Haravī. Finally, the personal correspondence between Jāmī and Ya‘qūb will also be analyzed and discussed.

**Salāmān va Absāl by Jāmī**

Our inquiry necessarily begins with Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl itself. A relatively short masnavī of 1,131 verses, it is traditionally grouped in Jāmī’s heptad of masnavīs, called Haft aurang (Seven Thrones),62 five of which are in imitation of the quintet of romantic and didactic masnavīs by

---

62 The term “Haft aurang” is from the Younger Avesta haptōiringa (literally, “having seven marks”) and the Middle Persian (Pahlavi) haftōiring; it refers to the constellation Ursa Major or the “Great Bear.” See Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. “Constellations” (by D. N. MacKenzie).
Niẓāmī Ganjvī (d. 605/1209) known simply as the Khamsa. The edition used in this study is the critical edition of the Haft aurang by Aʿlā-Khān Afṣahzād (1999), which is based on eight manuscripts, including the oldest known copy of the Haft aurang, which is dated 895/1490 in Herat and held in the Oriental Institute of the Academy of Sciences of Uzbekistan in Tashkent. In the opinion of Afṣahzād, the 895/1490 manuscript is the most complete Haft aurang manuscript. With this assessment in mind, the present study includes a new, revised translation of Salāmān va Absāl (see Appendix 2)—one which takes into greater account the political and spiritual contexts within which Jāmī composed the poem. While relying on the critical edition by Afṣahzād, an attempt has also been made to corroborate key passages and ambiguous terms or images in the poem by comparing his edition with that of Zahrah Muhājirī, whose own critical edition of the Salāmān va Absāl (1998) was based on six manuscripts of the Haft aurang, the oldest of which is purported to be an autograph copy held in St. Petersburg which she erroneously dates to 890/1485 (i.e., two years before Yaʿqūb’s repentance in 893/1488). The autograph appears at the end of the second section (daftar) of the Silsilat al-ẕahab and reads: “The one who is copying this book is its versifier, and he is ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Jāmī” (rāqim al-kitāb nāẓimuhu wa huwa al-faqīr ‘Abd al-Raḥmān al-Jāmī).
It is followed by the inscription: “on the eleventh of Ḍhū al-Ḥijja in the year 890.” Even if the autograph were authentic, its appearance at the end of the second of the three daftars of the Silsīlat al-ẕahab does not mean, as Muhājirī presumes, that the other six maṣnavīs, including Salāmān va Absāl, were transcribed on this date. It should be noted that W. Ivanov, E. È. Bertel’s, and Najib Māyil Haravī doubted the authenticity of this and other manuscripts purporting to contain the autograph of Jāmī.  

*Other Persian Poetry Addressed to Yaʿqūb*

In addition to Salāmān va Absāl, Jāmī’s Silsīlat al-ẕahab includes a eulogy of Yaʿqūb in the third daftar. The importance of the eulogy rests in its subtle criticism of Yaʿqūb’s immoral behavior. Jāmī also addressed several qaṣīdas to Yaʿqūb. These works will be examined later on for information they reveal about the nature of the relationship between the two men. Besides the poetry of Jāmī, this study is also concerned with other works of poetry addressed to Āq Qoyūnlū rulers or generated at the Āq Qoyūnlū courts in Tabriz and Shiraz. This literature has hardly been exploited but it indicates that the Āq Qoyūnlū were patrons of Persian belles-lettres. For example, the literary productions of poets affiliated with the Āq Qoyūnlū, such as Ahlī Shirāzī (d. 942/1535), Kamāl al-Dīn Banā’ī Haravī (d. 918/1512), Bābā Fīghānī (d. 925/1519), and Shahīdī Qumī (d. 935/1528–29), which often contain valuable historical information embedded (or encrypted) within them, will be mentioned in connection with members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Ahlī Shirāzī, for example, dedicated his allegorical maṣnavī on

---

71 Jāmī, Silsīlat al-ẕahab, which is contained in the Maṣnāvī-yi haft aurang, 1:364, lines 6015–33.
74 Ahlī’s works must have enjoyed some degree of renown, for an illuminated copy of his *Kulliyāt* was included, along with the poetry of Firdausī, Nizāmī, ʿUmar Khayyām, ʿA’dī,
love, *Sham’ va parvāna*, to Ya’qūb. Banā‘ī, for his part, addressed his 5,000 verse narrative poem *Bahrām va Bihrūz* (or *Bāgh-i Iram*) to Ya’qūb as well. Neither work has been the object of any detailed study in English. Contributing to this lacuna is a tendency to regard panegyrics and allegorical or mystical poetry as having no historiographical value.

**Official Court Chronicles and General Histories**

Despite its implicit bias in favour of the ruler, the official court history of Ya’qūb, *ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī*, by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī remains the single most important source for Āq Qoyūnlū history. Commissioned by Ya’qūb but completed in the reign of his son and successor Abū al-Fatḥ Bāysunghur (d. 898/1493), the chronicle by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī covers the first four years of the reign of Ya’qūb (882–86/1478–81); omits the years 886–90/1481–85; resumes with the years 890–91/1485–86; and covers events of the years 891–96/1486–91, the final four years of his patron’s rule. This last part and Ḥāfiẓ), in a collection of diplomatic offerings accompanying a Safavid embassy to Istanbul in 998/1590. For a reference, see Fariba Zarinebaf-Shahr, “Cross-Cultural Contacts in Eurasia,” in *History and Historiography of Post-Mongol Central Asia and the Middle East: Studies in Honor of John E. Woods*, ed. Judith Pfeiffer and Sholeh A. Quinn, in collaboration with Ernest Tucker (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2006), 539. For discussions of the poet’s life and works, see Inamul Haq Kausar, “Ahlī Shīrāzī,” *Journal of the Pakistan Historical Society* 18 (1970): 115–39; Losensky, *Welcoming Fighānī*, 160–64, 260–65, 267–74; and *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, s.v. “Ahlī Šīrāzī, Mowlānā Moḥammad” (by W. Thackston).


78 Woods, *Aqquyunlu*, 220. On several occasions, its author (Khunjī-Iṣfahānī) insists on his impartiality only to announce his intention to suppress news of events he regards as counter to the Islamic religious law (*sharīʿa*), with the murder of the Naqshbandi shaikh, Darvish Sirāj al-Dīn Qāsim in 891/1486, by Ya’qūb being the most egregious example. For the “haphazard” chronology of Khunjī-Iṣfahānī and his clear antipathy toward the Imāmī (Twelver) Shi‘ism espoused by the Safavids, see the comments of Vladimir Minorsky in Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, *Persia in A.D. 1478–1490, 13.*

79 Storey, *Persian Literature* 1:300; and Woods, *Aqquyunlu*, 220. For the subsequent influence of Khunjī-Iṣfahānī on Islamic political philosophy, see Lambton, *State and Government in Medieval Islam*, 178–200. An overview of his theological works and his relations with Mamluk, Āq Qoyūnlū, and Uzbek rulers is provided by Ulrich W. Haarmann,
is written from the perspective of an eyewitness. An important entry concerning the efforts by Yaʿqūb to secure the advice of Jāmī and benefit from his spiritual energy (ḥimmat), appears in a section describing events in the year 892/1487, a period presumably better documented since Khunjī-Iṣfahānī would have been physically present. As the official chronicler, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī is an important figure in Āq Qoyūnlū history. A staunch Sunnī, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī studied theology in Shiraz under Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī and was introduced to Sufī mysticism by Pīr Jamāl al-Dīn Ardistānī (d. 879/1474–75), leader of the Jamāliyya, a sub-branch of the Suhravardī order. He later joined the Jahrī brotherhood, an affiliate of the Naqshbandī order, composed eulogies on Khvāja Bahāʾ al-Dīn Naqshband (d. 791/1389), the eponymous founder of the ṭarīqa, and sought the friendship of disciples of the influential Naqshbandī leader from Samarqand, Khvāja Naṣīr al-Dīn ʿUbaid Allāh Aḥrār (d. 895/1490).

The official chronicle of the reign of Ūzūn Ḥasan, the Kitāb-i Diyar-Bakriyya by Ṭihrānī-Iṣfahānī will be referred to only sporadically, since it does not provide much information immediately relevant to this study. But as the earliest major internal Āq Qoyūnlū historical source, it does nonetheless include details about the close association of Yaʿqūb’s father with ṭarīqa-affiliated Sufis and “rogue” dervishes such as the shaman-like shaikh “Tāj al-Mujāẕīb” Bābā ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī (date of death unknown). As this study will argue, information about such relation-


For lively descriptions of the sometimes crass prognostications ‘Abd al-Rahmān Shāmī delivered at formal Āq Qoyūnlū gatherings, see Ṭihrānī-Iṣfahānī, Kitāb-i Diyar-Bakriyya, 253; and Woods, Aqquyunlu, 82–83. For references to the indebtedness of Üzün Hasan to Sufis, see Ṭihrānī-Iṣfahānī, Kitāb-i Diyar-Bakriyya, 476 and 485.
ships suggests that, as successor to Üzün Hasan, Yaʿqūb continued the Āq Qoyūnlū tradition of soliciting the advice of Sufi mystics.

More useful for biographical information and accounts of events at the court of Yaʿqūb is the Habīb al-siyar by Khvāndamīr (d. ca. 942/1536), a universal history composed in 930/1524 and dedicated to the Safavids. With its strongly biographical focus, the Habīb al-siyar is helpful in determining the influence of Qāżī Īsā Sāvajī and of the extended Sāvajī family of bureaucrats on the administration of Yaʿqūb. It also affirms the interest of Āq Qoyūnlū rulers in Jāmī’s poetry. For example, the Habīb al-siyar contains a description of the reception given to a Timurid diplomatic mission when it presented (or at least intended to present) Jāmī’s Kulliyāt to Yaʿqūb and Qāżī Īsā.85

Finally, another Safavid-era chronicle, the Lubb al-tavārīkh by Mīr Yahyā b. ʿAbd al-Laṭīf (Ḥusainī Saifi) Qazvīnī (d. 962/1555), which was completed in 948/1541, recounts several details of the reign of Yaʿqūb in an unexpectedly sympathetic tenor. Much of the account by Yahyā Qazvīnī deals with the incapacitating sorrow that gripped Yaʿqūb after the death of his younger uterine brother, Yamīn al-Dīn Abū al-ʿIzz Yūsuf Bahādur (d. 895/1490). A quatrain (rubāʿī) ascribed to Jāmī, and included in the Lubb al-tavārīkh, not only illustrates Yaʿqūb’s despair, but suggests that Jāmī and the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler enjoyed a close rapport, one which appears to have lasted a lifetime.87

Hagiographies and Biographical Works

Islamic hagiographic literature, broadly speaking, is a genre devoted to individuals or groups, usually Sufi mystics, whose recognized status as “saints” or “holy men” made them ideal subjects of devotional accounts.88

87 Qazvīnī, Lubb al-tavārīkh, 365.
88 For a survey of such works from the early and medieval periods, see J. A. Mojaddedi, The Biographical Tradition in Sufism: The Tabaqāt Genre from al-Sulamī to Jāmī (Richmond: Curzon, 2001).
As a consequence of their tendency to emphasize the extraordinary feats of their subjects, historians have traditionally dismissed hagiographies as unreliable sources for medieval Islamic history. Recently however, a reappraisal of the historical value of such works, by scholars like Jo-Ann Gross, Devin DeWeese, and Jürgen Paul, has occasioned renewed interest in a literary genre that was variously designated as taṣkirāt, maqāmāt, manāqib, and ṭabaqāt. As a revered poet and Naqshbandī mystic, Jāmī was the subject of the Maqāmāt-i Jāmī by ‘Abd al-Vāṣi‘ Niẓāmī Bākharzī (d. 909/1503), a hagiological account of the life of Jāmī that contains information pertinent to this study. Its preoccupation with events in Timurid Herat is reflected in the fact that Ya‘qūb goes entirely unmentioned. The Maqāmāt-i Jāmī does, however, contain a description of Jāmī’s encounter with Üzūn Ḥasan at Tabriz during his sojourn in Āq Qoyūnlū territory on his way home to Herat after performing the hajj in 878/1473.

The presence and influence of Sufi mystics at the Āq Qoyūnlū court in Tabriz, particularly the activities involving members of the Naqshbandī order, will be explored through several other tenth/sixteenth century Persian hagiographical anthologies. Foremost among these is the Rauẓāt al-jinān wa jannāt al-janān of Ḥāfiẓ Ḥusain Karbalā’ī-Tabrīzī Bābā-Faraji (d. 997/1589), more widely referred to as Ibn Karbalā’ī. As a guide for pilgrims to the burial places of famous religious figures in Tabriz and its environs, the Rauẓāt al-jinān functions as both a local history (tārīkh) and a hagiographic anthology (taṣkira). Filled with detailed biographical information on deceased Sufis, poets, scholars, and other notables, the Rauẓāt

89 For an overview of studies based on Islamic hagiographies and arguments in favor of their use as historical sources, see Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. “Hagiographic Literature” (by Jürgen Paul). For a different perspective, see Ann K. S. Lambton, “Persian Biographical Literature,” in Historians of the Middle East, ed. Bernard Lewis and P. M. Holt (London: Oxford University Press, 1962), 143; and R. Stephen Humphreys, Islamic History: A Framework for Inquiry (Minneapolis: Bibliotheca Islamica, 1988), 174–79 and 257.
92 Niẓāmī Bākharzī, Maqāmāt-i Jāmī, 184.
al-jīnān is a valuable source for gauging the degree to which the court of Yaʿqūb patronized local mystics and Sufi brotherhoods. Special attention will be paid to material concerning the chief exponent of the Naqshbandī order in Tabriz, Ṣunʿ Allāh Kūzakunānī (d. 929/1522–23), whose prior association with Jāmī and alleged interlocutions with the “ruler of the time” (i.e., Yaʿqūb) suggest that the Naqshbandī intellecctions or advice of Jāmī might also have been conveyed to Āq Qoyūnlū notables through such individuals.

Another compendium of biographies of prominent Naqshbandī saints is the Rashahāt-i ʿain al-hayāt by Fakhr al-Dīn Āli b. Ḥusain Vāʿīz Kāshifī (d. 939/1532–33). Completed in 909/1503–4, the bulk of the Rashahāt-i ʿain al-hayāt concerns the predecessors, life, teachings, miracles, and disciples of Khvāja ʿUbaid Allāh Ahrār, whose political, financial, and missionary activities have been the subject of several studies. The Rashahāt-i ʿain al-hayāt is a useful source for reconstructing the inauspicious visit by Jāmī to Āq Qoyūnlū-administered Baghdad in 878/1473, where a flaring sectarian dispute forced him to return to the relative calm provided by the court of Üzūn Hasan in Tabriz. Jāmī’s relief upon meeting the father of Yaʿqūb appears to be alluded to in a section of his Salāmān va Absāl in which he expects Yaʿqūb to fulfill his noble legacy by, among other things, adopting the laudable character of his father.

The Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī by Muḥyī Gulshanī (d.1026/1617), a hagiography written in Ottoman Turkish honoring Shaikh Ibrāhīm Gulshanī (d. 940/1534), eponymous founder of the Gulshanī branch of the Khalvatī Sufi order and close advisor to Yaʿqūb, is an especially rich source for

---

96 Fakhr al-Dīn Āli, Rashahāt-i ʿain al-hayāt 2:263.
97 Jāmī, SA, 395, line 88; See also the description by Jāmī of a dream he had in which he encountered Üzūn Hasan, Jāmī, SA, 404, line 253.
Āq Qoyūnlū history. As this study will demonstrate, the Persian poetry cited in it contains unique insights into a contentious power matrix at the court of Yaʿqūb involving Ibrāhīm Gulshānī, Qāżī ʿĪsā, and Qāżī ʿĪsā’s cousin, Shaikh Najm al-Dīn Maṣʿūd (d. ca. 898/1493), an intriguing figure who served as head of the chancery (parvanchī) and was an intimate (muqarrab) of Yaʿqūb’s royal household.

Finally, several biographical details concerning Yaʿqūb, including allusions to a sense of despair that appears to have permeated his court, will be cited from the notice on Yaʿqūb in the Majālis al-ʿushshāq, the biographical dictionary of Sufi mystics written by Gāzurgāhī (d. ca. 909/1503–4), a Sufi and official responsible for religious affairs and pious endowments under the Timurid ruler Sultān-Ḥusain Bāyqara (r. 875–911/1469–1506).

**Literary Anthologies**

Besides shedding light on the literary tastes and ambiance of the Āq Qoyūnlū court, poetic anthologies (pl. taẕkirāt) such as the Persian translation and expansion of the Chaghatay Turkish Majālis al-nafrā’s of ‘Alī Shir Na[vāʾi (d. 906/1501) by Ḥakīm Shāh-Muḥammad b. Mubārak Qazvīnī (d. 966/1559) and the Tuḥfa-i Sāmī by Sām Mīrzā Ṣafavī (d. 984/1576), yield remarkable information about the nature of the relationship between

---


99 For a description of the duties of the parvanchī within the medieval Iranian bureaucratic hierarchy, see The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v. “parwānaḡī” (by G. Herrmann). On the privileges conferred upon the muqarrab (often referred to as ʾichki [insider] in the Timurid household), including the right of unfettered access to the ruler, see Maria E. Subtelny, Timurids in Transition: Turko-Persian Politics and Acculturation in Medieval Iran (Leiden: Brill, 2007), 34, 68, 84, and 95.


Ya’qūb and Qāżī ʿĪsā not found in other normative historical sources. Qazvīnī completed his translation of the Majālis al-nafāʾīs, entitled as Hasht bīhisht, in 929/1522–23 for the Ottoman sultan Selīm “the Grim” (d. 926/1520). What is particularly significant is that he appended forty notices on poets associated with Ya’qūb and his court, thus making this an indispensable source for the history of the literary life of Āq Qoyūnlū Tabriz.

Another contemporary taẕkira is the Taẕkirat al-shuʿarāʾ by Daulatshāh b. ʿAlā’ al-Daula Bakhtīshāh al-Ghāzī Samarqandi (d. 900/1494–95), a selection of entries on ancient Arab and Persian poets up to the reign of Sultān Muḥammad Bāyqarā. Completed in 892/1487, the Raużāt al-salāṭīn by Sultān Muḥammad Fakhrū Haravī (d. ca. 962/1555) is a collection of biographical entries on rulers who composed poetry. It is useful for helping to establish the date of composition of Salāmān va Absāl, and includes poems of Ya’qūb’s own composition.

**Letters of Personal Correspondence**

Another important source, in terms of primary sources written in prose, is the personal correspondence (tarassul; inshāʾ; or ikhwaniyyat) between Jāmī and a range of contemporary rulers, including Üzūn Ḥasan and his son Ya’qūb. Particularly relevant to this study are four letters addressed by Ya’qūb to Jāmī, as well as one reply by Jāmī to Ya’qūb (see Appendix 1), which is particularly revealing. These provide a glimpse into the nature of their relationship, which appears to be that of a master and disciple—a dynamic evinced in the constant requests by Ya’qūb for the counsels (naṣāʾīḥ) of Jāmī. One of the letters sent to Jāmī by Ya’qūb is especially telling, for it indirectly refers to the poem Salāmān va Absāl by way of

---

103 For a discussion of the utility and limitations of biographical dictionaries as historical sources, see Humphreys, Islamic History, 174–79.

104 Navāʾī, Taẕkira-i Majālis al-nafāʾīs, 300–12, henceforth cited as Qazvīnī, Hasht bīhisht.


108 For a collection of about 433 letters by Jāmī, including those he exchanged with Ya’qūb, see ‘Asam al-Dīn Urumbaev and Asrar Rahmanov, eds., Nāmahā va munshaʿāt-i Jāmī (Tehran: Mirāq-i Maktūb, 1378/1999), 302–7, esp. 281 (Jāmī’s reply).
an allusion to Ibn Sinā’s version of the tale. Most significant is the fact that, in this letter, Ya’qūb considers the poem to be a work of advice and not, as is generally assumed, merely a romantic tale. This correspondence, despite its dense, almost cryptographic, idiom, supports the contention that Jāmī’s poem was understood by the Āq Qoyūnlū rulers themselves to be a mirror for princes.

Statement of Purpose

*Salāmān va Absāl* was written at the end of Jāmī’s prolific literary career during an era that was dominated by the cultural achievements of the Timurids. It was dedicated however to an Āq Qoyūnlū patron. Serious studies by modern scholars of the religious, political, and literary dynamics of the Āq Qoyūnlū court—especially that of Ya’qūb—have failed to give it the attention it deserves.

The aim of the present study is to contextualize *Salāmān va Absāl* historically and to examine it as a mirror of advice for the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler to whom it is dedicated. This will be achieved by exploiting the above-mentioned historical sources and by a textual analysis of the poem.

In conclusion, a hypothesis will be presented to explain the multi-layered esotericism of *Salāmān va Absāl* by examining how it at once operated as traditional guide to governance, a heuristic vehicle for mystical contemplation, and a veiled account of the *dramatis personae* at the court of Ya’qūb.

---


110 Namely, the analyses of V. Minorsky, Hans R. Roemer, Jean Aubin, and John Woods, whose contributions are cited throughout this study.
CHAPTER TWO

POLITICAL ADVICE FOR RULERS AND MYSTICAL GUIDANCE
FOR SUFIS IN SALĀMĀN VA ABSĀL

Religion is good advice.
Religion is good advice.
Religion is good advice.
—Ibn Taimiyya, Kitāb al-siyāsa al-sharīʿya

The Perso-Islamic Tradition of Advice and Advice Literature

The tradition of giving advice to rulers, statesmen, and other officials on how to comport themselves according to religious and ethical ideals while expediently achieving their political, military, or administrative aims is rooted in Late Antiquity. It was not until the fourth/tenth century however, during the early ʿAbbasid caliphate, that the genre of advice literature crystallized around Arabic translations of prose works in Pahlavi (e.g., Advices of Ardashīr, Anūshīrvān, and Buzurjmihr; the Letter of Tansar), ancient Greek (e.g., the Secretum Secretorum), and Sanskrit (e.g., Arthashastra; Panchatantra) concerning ethics and statecraft. The literature of advice (andarz or pand)—particularly that ascribed to the Sasanians—had the most significant bearing on the subsequent development of Perso-Islamic mirrors for princes.

The Sasanian model of kingship, and the didactic literature it spawned in medieval Islam, is reflected in the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk of al-Ghazālī, in which he recommends that the ruler “follow the precepts (barnahād) and methods (ravish) of the kings who preceded him (i.e., the Sasanians), and govern like them. He must also read their books of counsel (pand-nāma),

---

1 In Arabic: al-dīn naṣīḥa, al-dīn naṣīḥa, al-dīn naṣīḥa. A prophetic ḥadith mentioned by Hasan al-Ḏaṣrī (d. 110/728) and quoted by Ibn Taimiyya (d. 728/1328) in his Kitāb al-siyāsa al-sharīʿya. For references, see Henri Laoust, Le traité de droit public d’Ibn Taimīya, Traduction annotée de la Siyāsa šarʿīya (Beirut: Institut Français de Damas, 1948), 173; and A. J. Wensinck, A Handbook of Early Muhammadan Tradition, Alphabetically Arranged (Leiden: E.J. Brill, 1927), 204.

for these predecessors lived long lives, went through many experiences, and learned by experience to distinguish good from bad.”

For his part, Niẓām al-Mulk devotes chapter 18 of the Siyar al-mulūk to the importance of “Consulting with wise (dāniyān) and experienced men (pīrān).” But instead of harkening back to Sasanian models, Niẓām al-Mulk justifies the need for the ruler to seek advice in Islamic terms by quoting a Qurʾanic verse (3:159) in which God commands the Prophet to “consult (shāwir) them in affairs!”

It should be noted that the association of the Prophet Muhammad with ethical advice was not novel. According to a canonical hadith, the Prophet stated, “Religion is counsel (naṣīḥat).” An interlocutor asked for whom, to which Muhammad purportedly answered, “For God, His Book, and His Messenger; for the leaders of the Muslims and their community.” Another tradition suggests that giving good advice (or pious admonition) is a religious duty for Muslims, alongside prayer (ṣalāt) and giving alms (zakāt).

Added to these Perso-Islamic justifications for counseling rulers is the fact that the ‘ulamā’ and leaders of Sufi mystical orders, despite their occasional ambivalence to involving themselves in temporal affairs of the state were, alongside vazīrs, important transmitters of moralizing advice. By the second-half of the ninth/fifteenth century, this meant Sufi mystics, notably members of the Naqshbandī order like ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār, exerted considerable influence over Timurid rulers in Transoxiana and eastern Iran. With their doctrine of “solitude within society” (khalvat dar anjuman), an ethic asserting that inward (spiritual) devotion was best achieved through outward activity (that is, within society), the Naqshbandis justified their

---

3 al-Ghazālī, Nasīḥat al-mulūk, 112 (trans. 63). The injunction is followed by anecdotes about Anūshirvan’s own interest in moralizing stories about earlier rulers.


5 In Arabic: wa shāwirhum fī al-amri.


7 Wensinck, Handbook of Early Muhammadan Tradition, 173.

8 Wensinck, Handbook of Early Muhammadan Tradition, 173.

service to rulers in religious terms.¹⁰ ‘Ubayd Allah Ahrār for example, is credited with inspiring Sulṭān-Abū Saʿīd’s (873/1469) defeat of ‘Abd Allāh Khan and facilitating Sulṭān-Abū Saʿīd’s accession to the Timurid throne in 855/1451 after the prince had assured Ahrār that he would personally uphold the shariʿa.¹¹ Later, ‘Ubayd Allah Ahrār intervened with Sulṭān-Abū Saʿīd on behalf of the sedentary Muslim populations of Samarqand and Bukhara and secured the abolition of the tamghā (an old Mongol tax levied on all commercial transactions)¹² by arguing that such a toll was a heretical innovation (bidʿa) and not in accordance with Islamic law.¹³

It has been argued that, because of their rigorous adherence to the shariʿa and their staunchly Sunnī identity, the Naqshbandis were disposed to serving the Timurid and Ottoman administrations.¹⁴ For example, they trace their spiritual genealogy or silsila back to the first caliph, Abū Bakr (d. 13/634). It has been speculated that their reputedly anti-Shīʿite polemics and hostility to antinomian dervish groups would have won them support from the traditional ‘ulamā.¹⁵ As Hamid Algar, Paul, and Dina Le Gall

¹⁰ For a discussion of the strictly spiritual aspects of this doctrine, see Jürgen Paul, Doctrine and Organization. The Khwājagān/Naqshbandiya in the First Generation after Bahāʿuddīn (Berlin: Das Arabische Buch, 1998), 30–34.
¹⁴ For a discussion of how traditional scholarship overemphasizes the political characteristics of the Naqshbandi order, see Algar, “Political Aspects,” 123–24 and 152. On what Jürgen Paul describes as the relative quietism of pre-Ahrār Khwājaganīs (later Naqshbandis), see his “Solitude within Society,” 137–63, esp. 144. For exceptions to this quietism, especially while at Herat, see Jürgen Paul, “The Khwājaganī at Herat during Shāhrukh’s Reign,” in Horizons of the World: Festschrift for İsenbike Togan, ed. İlíker Evrim Binbaş and Nurten Kılıç-Schubel (Istambul: İthaki, 2011), 217–50.
have demonstrated, however, royal patrons directed their attention to individual Naqshbandis for several reasons, including their reputations as purveyors of Persian literary culture and as interpreters of the theosophical ideas of Ibn al-ʿArabi.16 Perhaps more importantly, their observation of the principle of *khalvat dar anjuman* indicates that the Naqshbandis attached their own spiritual progress to engaging in public activities and vocations that would theoretically benefit all Muslims.

This last explanation is at the heart of an aphorism attributed to ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār which encapsulates the order’s ethos of community service: “A good *khvāja* (i.e., Naqshbandī),” he is reported to have said, “must benefit Muslims and he must also mingle with *amīrs* and sultans so that his pious being encourages them to occupy themselves with the good of the people and avoid injustice and oppression.”17 Elsewhere in the same source, ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār points to the activism that distinguished Naqshbandis from other Sufi groups, saying: “We have been assigned a different task, which is to guard the Muslims from oppression, and to this end one must mingle with kings and conquer their souls.”18 In other words, being a Naqshbandī required one to engage to some degree in politics, and this political activity—at least within the framework of royal patronage of a Sufi shaikh—amounted to giving a ruler good advice.

This idea was apparently not uncommon in late ninth/fifteenth century Iran. For example, a similar if not more explicit opinion relating mystical progress to court service is expressed in the *Akhlāq-i Jalālī*. According to Davānī, whose interest in Sufism prompted him to associate with the Murshidiyya, a circle of dervishes in Kazarun centered around a pupil of Amin al-Dīn al-Balyānī (d. 745/1344–45), “the masters of the mystical path (*mashāʾikh-i ṭarīqat*) have said that [the custom of] following the Sufi shaikh—amounted to giving a ruler good advice.

---

16 This was particularly the case with the Ottoman sultan Meḥmed II. For a discussion of the Naqshbandis as transmitters of Persian *belles-lettres* and Akbarian metaphysics to the early Ottomans, see Le Gall, *Culture of Sufism*, 35 and 123–57.

17 This saying is attributed to ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār by Burhān al-Dīn Samarqandi (also referred to as Maulānā Muhammad Qāżī), *Silsilat al-ārifin wa tażkīrat al-ṣiddiqīn* (Tashkent: Institut Vostokovedeniia, no. 4452/1, fol. 101a–101b), quoted in Gross, “Multiple Roles,” 109.

path (sulūk-i ṭarīqat) will not attach (taʿalluq) [itself] to a person who is not in the service of rulers.” He goes on to explain that, because the ruler is the shadow of God (ẓill Allāh), observing proper etiquette at the royal assembly breaks the ego (nafs) and leads one to adhere to the customs of the Sufi way (rusūm-i ṭarīqat). Although he attributes this to unnamed shaikhs (in order to both legitimize and distance himself from such a position), Davānī endorses the notion that associating with rulers was a prerequisite for the spiritual advancement of Sufi mystics. The fact that he expressed such sentiments in a manual of advice addressed to the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler, suggests that the dynasty’s court was already populated by Sufis who traditionally cultivated a taste for mystico-didactic literature.

The concept of advice, especially the idea that the good counsel of a father or sage ultimately determines the success of a prince, is a central theme in Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl. As already noted, the story includes the repeated admonitions given by the King and the Sage to convince Salāmān to renounce his beloved Absāl and devote himself entirely to inheriting his father’s throne. For example, “a year and a month” into the affair, the King and Sage resolve to summon Salāmān and give him “good counsel” (naṣīḥat) since, in an obvious allusion to the ḥadīth mentioned earlier, “No deed is better than dispensing good advice.” It is through good advice that the deficient become perfect, and those who have retreated become those who now advance. Jāmī goes on to explain that the original proponents of good counsel (nāṣiḥān) were the prophets and that, through their advice, the affairs of reason and religion (ʿaql va dīn) were made right. In fact, for anyone who “drew the breath of prophecy” (har ki az paighambarī dam zad), he concludes, nothing but good advice (naṣīḥat) descended on him from heaven. Two vignettes follow, one in which the King gives counsel (pand) to Salāmān, and another where the Sage provides naṣīḥat.

---

19 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 149–50. On the extent of Davānī’s association with the Murshidiyya, a ṭarīqa linked to Abū al-Najīb ’Abd al-Qāhir Suhravardī (d. 563/1168), and thus the Suhravardī order, but whose origins trace back to Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm al-Kāzarūnī (d. 426/1035), hence the group’s variant name, Kāzarūniyya (also Isḥāqiyya), see Reza Pourjavady, Philosophy in Early Safavid Iran: Najm al-Dīn Maḥmūd al-Nayrīzī and His Writings (Leiden: Brill, 2011), 6–7.
20 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 149–50. The statements appear in a chapter on the proper etiquette (ādāb) of royal attendants, intimates of the ruler’s household (muqarrabān), and grandees of the state (arbāb-i daulat).
22 Jāmī, SA, 426, line 684.
Salāmān reflects on their admonitions but again abandons them in favor of Absāl. Besides illustrating Salāmān’s defiance, these episodes can be interpreted as representing an attempt by Jāmī to address Yaʿqūb by presenting him with vivid justifications for the prince/ruler’s need to be guided by good advice, that is, the kind of wise counsel which, it is clearly implied, is contained in his Salāmān va Absāl. In doing so, Jāmī upholds the Naqshbandī tradition articulated by ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār and represents the advice-giving Sufi who, by way of his didactic tale, fulfills the abovementioned requirement to “mingle” with rulers so that tyranny can be avoided.

It is important to mention that Yaʿqūb was not the only ruler to whom Jāmī addressed his didactic poetry. The Naqshbandī poet is more generally known for his long association with Timurid rulers, a rapport that appears to have started with Abū al-Qāsim al-Bābur (d. 861/1457), the great-grandson of Temūr (d. 807/1405). However no single ruler (Timurid or otherwise) is more justifiably associated with Jāmī than Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā, whom the poet-mystic initiated into the Naqshbandī tariqa. In addition to dedicating numerous panegyrical qaṣīdas and ghazals to Sulṭān-Ḥusain, Jāmī mentions the Timurid ruler in the introduction to his Bahāristān, a moralizing work in mixed prose and verse patterned after the Gulistān of Saʿdī (d. 691/1292). Also, three of the seven maṣnavīs comprising Jāmī’s Haft aurang, namely Lailī va Majnūn, Subḥat al-abrār, and Khirad-nāma-i Iskandari, were dedicated to Sulṭān-Ḥusain. Another maṣnavī, the Sīsilat al-ẓahab, which bears multiple dedications and is divided into three distinct books (daftars), praises Sulṭān-Ḥusain in between prescriptions directed at Naqshbandī adepts (murīds).

---

25 The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v. “Mir ‘Ali Shīr Nawā‘ī” (by M. E. Subtelny). This would be in addition to what Algar counts as Jāmī’s only three disciples: Rażī al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Ghafūr Lāri (d. 912/1506), author of Takmīla-i Nafaḥat al-uns, a biography of Jāmī appended to his Nafaḥat al-uns min ḥazārat āl-ḥuds; his own son, Khvāja Ziyā’ al-Dīn Yūsuf (d. 919/1513); and the poet Maulānā Shahīdī Qumī. Algar, “Naqshbandis and Safavids,” 42 n. 95. On the likelihood that Jāmī initiated others, see Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. "Jāmī iii. Jāmī and Sufism" (by Hamid Algar).
28 Although holding himself aloof from court life, Jāmī nevertheless dominated the literary scene and the galaxy of poets attracted to the court of Sulṭān-Ḥusain in Herat.
Other non-Timurid rulers either had didactic compositions dedicated to them by Ja’imi or were objects of his panegyrics. For example, around 869/1465, he dedicated his Lavā’īh, a short philosophical tract mixing poetry and prose on the nature of existence (vujūd), to Jahānshāh (d. 872/1467), the leader of the Qarā Qoyūnlū (Black Sheep) tribal confederation. Ja’imi also arranged for his Kulliyāt to be delivered to Farrukh Yasār Shīrvān-shāh (d. 906/1501), ruler of the Shīrvān vassal state in eastern Transcaucasia whose destiny, on account of a double marriage alliance with the Āq Qoyūnlū, became entwined with the shifting fortunes of Ya’qūb and his descendants.

It was the Ottoman sultans however, who would prove to be the most tenacious in trying to associate themselves with the famed poet of Herat. Between 875/1470 and 890/1485, the Ottomans made a series of unsuccessful attempts to lure Ja’imi away from his Timurid patrons in Herat to the Ottoman court at Istanbul. One of the more ambitious attempts, which is described in the Rashaḥāt-i ‘ain al-ḥayāt and the Maqāmāt-i Ja’imi,
occurred during Jāmī’s return trip from the hajj in 878/1473.\(^\text{31}\) Upon hearing that the poet-mystic was transmitting hadīth with the renowned traditionist, Qāẓī Muḥammad Haişari (date of death unknown), in Damascus, the Ottoman sultan Meḥmed II (d. 886/1481) dispatched a certain Khvāja ‘Aṭā’ Allāh Kirmānī with instructions to offer Jāmī 5,000 gold ashrafī coins and the promise that 100,000 more awaited him if he diverted his travel to Istanbul.\(^\text{32}\) Suggesting that Jāmī had no interest in the proposal, the Rashaḥāt-i ‘ain al-ḥayāt recounts how he left Aleppo for Āq Qoyūnlū-administered Tabriz “without delay” after learning that Ottoman messengers were pursuing him.\(^\text{33}\)

Although unsuccessful, Meḥmed II did nevertheless win a book dedication from Jāmī. In response to the Ottoman ruler’s request that he compose a treatise adjudicating the positions of theologians, Sufis, and philosophers on eleven fundamental questions, Jāmī dedicated his al-Durra al-fākhira to him.\(^\text{34}\) Completed in 886/1481, the al-Durra al-fākhira presents the Sufi approach to knowledge as a rational and clearly superior alternative to the sciences of scholastic/speculative theology (‘ilm al-kalām) and philosophy (falsafa).\(^\text{35}\)

Moreover, when Meḥmed II’s son and successor, sultan Bāyazīd II (d. 918/1512), ascended the throne, Jāmī dedicated a mirror for princes to him.\(^\text{36}\) Comprising the third book (daftar) of Jāmī’s Silsilat al-ẕahab, this mirror was written sometime after 896/1490. Based partly on the Chahār maqāla of Niẓāmī ‘Arūżī (d. ca. 552/1157), this work addresses such perennial concerns as civic politics (siyāsat-i madanī), justice (‘adl), Islamic law (sharīʿa), and the need to obtain naṣīḥat from religious scholars and vazīrs.\(^\text{37}\)

---


\(^\text{35}\) Jāmī, Precious Pearl, 7.

\(^\text{36}\) On the reasons for the increase, see Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, 35.

\(^\text{37}\) Afṣaḥzād, Naqd va bar rasi-yi āsār va sharḥ-i ahvāl-i Jāmī, 210; and Nizāmī ‘Arūżī, Chahār maqāla, ed. Muḥammad Qazvīnī and Muḥammad Muʿīn (Tehran: Kitābfurūshī-yi
Like the classic mirrors for princes, this book of the *Silsilat al-zahab* contains aphorisms attributed to, or anecdotes about, rulers from previous dynasties who were idealized as model sovereigns. For example, references to such Sasanian, Ghaznavid, Saljuq, and Ilkhanid rulers as Khusrau Anūshirvān (d. 579), Mahmūd of Ghazna (d. 421/1030), Sultan Sanjar, and Ghāzān Khān (d. 703/1304), are cited throughout the text. Jāmī also addresses the importance of *vazīrs* to the prosperity of the realm through references to statesmen like the Saljuq *vazīr* Niẓām al-Mulk and the Barmakid family of ‘Abbasid-era bureaucrats. It is interesting to note that this *daftar* also contains a eulogy of Ya’qūb in an anecdote that at once praises his justice and makes subtle reference to his moral laxity. Like *Salāmān va Absāl*, it can be classified as a Perso-Islamic manual of ethico-political advice in the *magnavi* poetic form. Granted, it does not share the allegorical narrative or esoteric intricacies of *Salāmān va Absāl*. Nevertheless, when considered alongside Jāmī’s other ethical works, such as the *Bahāristān*, *Khirad-nāma-i Iskandari*, and *Salāmān va Absāl*, it is significant, for it establishes Jāmī as a dominant purveyor of Persian wisdom to rulers in the late ninth/fifteenth century Islamic world.

**Political Advice for Muslim Rulers in Salāmān va Absāl**

As already indicated, the tradition of writing works of ethical and political advice—collectively referred to as “mirrors for princes” by modern scholars, who translated the Latin phrase *specula regis* from a medieval European context—dates back to antiquity. According to most historians, 

---


40 Jāmī, *Silsilat al-zahab*, 364, lines 6015–33. Ya’qūb is referred to in the past tense, which helps date the text after 896/1490.

the medieval Persian incarnation of this literary genre, which integrated ancient Greek, Iranian, and Indian conceptions of statecraft into Islamic notions of ethics and morality, can be traced back to the Sasanian andarznāma or āyīna-nāma tradition in which kings and Zoroastrian priests gave moral advice and injunctions on proper court etiquette to their sons and courtiers. This idea of refining one’s character, and the body of advice literature that accompanied it, was eventually incorporated into the Islamic tradition under the banner of adab (literary refinement) and akhlāq (practical ethics).

In terms of content, the central concept in Perso-Islamic manuals dealing with political ethics was justice (ʿadl or ʿadālat). The mirrors-literature uniformly tells us that justice was not a legal abstraction but the maintenance of an equilibrium, or balance (the Aristotelian mesotés [golden mean] or ancient Iranian paimān), between the various socioeconomically structured society depended on and benefited the other. This commonwealth, or “circle

---


45 On the problem of determining whether this concept was originally Greek or Zoroastrian, see Aziz Al-Azmeh, Muslim Kingship: Power and the Sacred in Muslim, Christian, and Pagan Polities (London: I. B. Tauris, 1997), 87. For a discussion of social hierarchy in medieval Perso-Islamic manuals of advice, see Louise Marlow, Hierarchy and Egalitarianism in Islamic Thought (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1997), 128–39.
of justice” as it came to be known in the secondary literature, was presented as the basis for the stability of the medieval Islamic state.\(^{46}\) It envisaged the realm as an organic yet rigidly stratified whole in which, to quote the Qābūs-nāma: “Kingship (jahān-dārī) is made possible by means of the army, the army is maintained by means of gold, gold is derived from [agriculturally] developing the land (ʿimārat), and developing the land occurs through justice and equity (dād va ʿadl va inṣāf).”\(^{47}\) A slightly modified version of this circular formula appears in the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, but instead of kingship, al-Ghazālī begins the schema with religion (dīn), that is to say, “Religion depends on kingship (pādshāhī), kingship on the army, the army on provisions (khvāsta), riches on cultivating the land (abādānī), and cultivating the land on justice (ʿadl).”\(^{48}\) Reflecting Ṭūsī’s concept of the ideal city, Davānī inserts an expanded circle, thought to have been devised by Fakhr al-Dīn Rāzī, which incorporates eight elements, and which situates the sharīʿa and the punitive capacity (siyāsat) of the ruler as its catalysts:49

---


47 Kay Kāʾūs, Qābūs Nāma, 125 (trans. 213).
49 Fakhr al-Dīn Rāzī, Jāmiʿ al-ʿulūm, ed. Muḥammad Khān Malik al-Kuttāb (Bombay: Matbaʿa-i Muẓaffarī, 1905), 207; and Subtelny, Le monde est un jardin, 62. For discussions of siyāsat as it relates to punishment in accordance with the sharīʿa, see Bernard Lewis, “Siyasa,” in In Quest of an Islamic Humanism: Arabic and Islamic Studies in Memory of Mohamed al-Nowaihi, ed. A. H. Green (Cairo: American University of Cairo Press, 1984), 3–14. As early as the fourth century BCE, Indian elaborations of statecraft included the ruler’s prerogative to punish (Sanskrit: danda) as an essential principle of governance. The idea that this principle influenced or was integrated into later Persian manuals of advice is corroborated by a sixth/seventh century Persian translation of Bīdpāi’s Indian fables, the Kalīla wa dimna, which attributes to Ardashīr the following: “There is no kingdom except through men, and no men except through wealth and no wealth except through cultivation (ʿimāra) and no cultivation except through justice and punishment (sīyāsat).” On the similarities between danda and sīyāsat, see Arjomand, “Perso-Indian Statecraft,” 457 and 462. Mirrors such as the Bahr-i favāʿīd and Akhlāq-i Muhsīnī go so far as to warn that without sīyāsat, men would “devour each other.” For references, see Julie Scott Meisami, trans. and ed., The Sea of Precious Virtues (Bahr-i favāʿīd): A Medieval Islamic Mirror for Princes (Salt Lake City, UT: University of Utah Press, 1991), 96; and Subtelny, “A Late Medieval Summa on Ethics,” 607. It should be noted that this idea is traced back to ʿAmr al-Jāḥiẓ (d. 255/868). For a reference, see Helmut Ritter, The Ocean of the Soul: Man, the World, and God in the Stories of Farid al-Dīn ʿAttar, trans. John O’Kane and ed. Bernd Ratke (Leiden: Brill, 2003), 127.
The world is a garden whose irrigator is the state; the state is a sultan whose chamberlain is the *shari’a*; the *shari’a* is coercive power whose maintainer is kingship; kingship is a city whose existence is brought about by the army; the army is maintained by state revenues; state revenues are produced by the subjects; the subjects are made slaves of justice; justice is the pivot of the well-being of the world.\(^{50}\)

Though the circle of justice does not appear in Jāmī’s *Salāmān va Absāl*, the concept of justice forms an integral part of the explicit advice Jāmī gives concerning temporal rule. In fact, the ancient Persian idea relating justice to order and material prosperity appears conspicuously in a section of *Salāmān va Absāl* entitled, “Commencing with the discourse by explaining the facts of the case (ṣūrat-i ḥāl) of Salāmān and Absāl.”\(^{51}\) It is important to note that the phrase *ṣūrat-i ḥāl* has a double meaning, one of which alerts the reader to the fact that Jāmī intended his *Salāmān va Absāl* to be read allegorically. Specifically, it can be read as Jāmī’s indication that his poem is also an “image” (*ṣūrat*) or representation of the spiritual state (*ḥāl*) of the Sufi whose transformation is symbolized in the tale *Salāmān va Absāl*. As if to announce that the tale can be read as a traditional mirror of advice, Jāmī’s opening description of the “*ṣūrat-i ḥāl*” of Salāmān and Absāl is capped with an axiomatic expression contained in nearly all Perso-Islamic manuals of statecraft: “It is justice (*ʿadl*) not religion (*dīn*) [that] keeps kingship (*mulk*) stable.\(^{52}\) An infidel (*kufr*) [ruler] who proceeds with justice (*ʿadl*),” he states, “is better for kingship (*mulk*) than a tyrant who is pious.”\(^{53}\) The ruler who maintains equipoise between societal groups, regardless of his personal piety or religious confession, will enjoy a prosperous realm and long reign. In the case of medieval Iran, such a notion privileged a centralized regime based on the Sasanian model of a patrimonial monarchy.\(^{54}\) This system was based on keeping


\(^{52}\) Jāmī, *SA*, 405, line 290. In Persian: *ʿadl dārad mulk rā qāyim na dīn*.

\(^{53}\) Jāmī, *SA*, 406, line 291. In Persian: *kufr kīshī kū bih ʿadl āyad farih mulk rā az ẓālim-i dīndār bīh*. Later, in the King’s testament to Salāmān regarding the appointment of a *vāzīr* (p. 445), the opposite view is taken: “In the distinguished eyes of the intelligent, it is not recommended that an infidel (*kāfir*) exercise authority (*ḥukm*) over Muslims.” As for the practical history of the former expression, it reportedly appeared in a *fatwa* exacted from the *ʿulamā* of Baghdad by the Mongols shortly after they took the city in 656/1258 and may have helped mitigate the city’s completed destruction. For a reference, see *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, 2nd ed., s.v. “Baghdād” (by A. A. Duri).

\(^{54}\) Subtelny, *Le monde est un jardin*, 73.
the peasantry occupied with cultivating the land so that the bureaucratic state could levy agricultural land and produce in order to outfit and salary the military.55

It was understood that the maintenance of equipoise also applied to the ruler’s own constitution. In the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, al-Ghazālī states that inner equilibrium is a precondition for societal justice and that no ruler can achieve harmony among his subjects unless he first observes justice within himself.56 He goes on to explain that justice is the restraining of tyranny (ẓulm), lust (shahvat), and anger (khashm) in order to make them the prisoners of reason and religion (‘aql va dīn). Otherwise, it is the ruler’s reason that becomes imprisoned by tyranny, lust, and anger.57 In the Akhlāq-i Jalālī, Davānī warns that anyone who is unable to harmonize (iṣlāḥ) his own condition and [who] is powerless to effect justice (ʿadālat) in his own body, will not be able to make justice (ʿadālat) prevail among his people.58 Davānī adds that only after the ruler observes justice over the body and its powers by abstaining from excess or deficiency, will he become the true caliph of God (khalīfa-i khudā).59 Achieving what might be termed “true justice,” therefore, had macrocosmic and microcosmic implications. This is something that esoteric (or mystical) mirrors for princes, like Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl, were apt at addressing.60

57 al-Ghazālī, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, 37 (trans. 24). He goes on to say: “Oh sultan of this world, you should know that justice (ʿadl) springs from the perfection of the intellect (ʿaql) and that perfection of the intellect means that you see affairs as they [really] are and perceive their verities (ḥaqīqat) and inner reality (bāṭin) without being deceived by their outward appearance (ẓāhir).”
58 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 56.
59 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 56.
60 But see the Qābūs-nāma where Kay Kāʾūs writes: “God, then, created human beings (tan-i mardum) from all manner of different constituents, so that you are equally correct whether you call man the macrocosm (ʿālam-i kullī) or the microcosm (ʿālam-i juzvī). The reason is that each constituent body (tan-i ādamī), whether deriving from the natures (ṭabāʾiʿ), the heavens (aflāk), the stars (anjum), essence (ʿunṣūr), matter (haiyūlā), form (ṣūrat), spirit (nafs) or mind (ʿaql), is itself an independent world (ālā-ḥida ʿālamī).” Kay Kāʾūs, Qābūs Nāma, 140 (trans. 240). For a discussion of the Indo-Iranian origins of macro-microcosmic speculation, see Geo Widengren, “Macrocosmos-Microcosmos Speculation in the Rasāʾil Ikhwan al-Safā and some Hurufi Texts,” Archivio di Filosofia 1 (1980): 297–312.
As for the statement concerning a just infidel, it is also contained in the Siyar al-mulūk, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, and the Akhlāq-i Jalālī where it appears in Arabic as: al-mulk yabqā maʿa al-kufr wa lā yabqā maʿa al-ẓulm ("kingship endures with unbelief [but] does not endure with tyranny").

Nizām al-Mulk attributes the maxim to unnamed sages, but al-Ghazālī classifies it as a prophetic ḥadīth. Regardless of origin, the statement became an essential aphorism in Persian manuals of statecraft, appearing in mirrors for princes written as late as the thirteenth/nineteenth century.

Jāmī cites a similar version of the maxim in a chapter of his Bahāristān devoted to the subject of equity (nīṣfat) and justice (ʿadālat), in which he writes that "Justice (ʿadl) and equity (inṣāf), not unbelief (kufr) or religion (dīn), are those things that are effective in the preservation of the kingdom. For the ordering of this world, justice without religion (ʿadl bī dīn) is better than the tyranny of a pious (dīndār) king." In terms of Salāmān va Absāl, Jāmī indirectly acknowledges the aphorism’s Iranian origin by following it with a homily in which God commands the Prophet David and his community (ummat) to respect the ancient kings of Iran (ʿAjam). God informs David that although their religion was fire-worship (ātishparastī, i.e., Zoroastrianism), their custom (āyīn) was [based on] justice (ʿadl) and rectitude (rāstī): "For centuries the world flourished because of them; the darkness of tyranny (ẓalimat-i ẓulm) was far from their subjects. At ease from the torment of worry, [the subjects] reposed on account of their justice (ʿadl)." It is interesting to note that the same homily also appears in the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk. According to al-Ghazālī, God said: “Oh David, tell

---

61 Nizām al-Mulk, Siyar al-mulūk [Siyāsat-nāma], 15 (trans. 12); al-Ghazālī, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, 82 (trans. 46); and Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 138.

62 As F. R. C. Bagely has noted, this and other purported sayings do not appear in any of the canonical collections of ḥadīth. For a reference, see Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad al-Ghazālī, Ghazali’s Book of Counsel for Kings (Naṣīḥat al muluk), trans. F. R. C. Bagley (London: Oxford University Press, 1964), lvii.

63 Ann K. S. Lambton, “Some New Trends in Islamic Political Thought in Late 18th and Early 19th Century Persia,” Studia Islamica 39 (1974): 120. Another prophetic maxim on justice found in advice manuals, though one which does not appear in Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl, claims: “One day of just rule by a sultan is better than sixty years of worship (iḥādat),” or “A century of unjust rule (jaur) by sultans will not cause as much damage as one hour of injustice (jaur) of the subjects to one another.” See al-Ghazālī, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, 124 (trans. 71–72) and 131 (trans. 77).


65 Jāmī, SA, 406, lines 295–96.
your folk (qaum) not to speak ill of the people of Iran (ahl-i ʿAjam), for it is they who developed the world so that My slaves (bandagān) might live in it.”

Like Jāmī, al-Ghazālī places the purported revelation immediately after the maxim which states that kingship can endure with unbelief but not with injustice. This suggests that the concept was recognized as an ancient Iranian idea.

The fact that key aphorisms concerning the most important concept in the traditional mirrors-literature appear in Salāmān va Absāl supports the contention here that Jāmī’s tale was intended as a mirror for princes. Another indication is seen with a segment describing the “Four characteristics which are necessary conditions for rule.”

According to Jāmī, four things (chahār chīz) are necessary for kingship: wisdom (ḥikmat), chastity (ʿiffat), courage (shajāʿat), and generosity (jūd):

Wisdom is not that which, following the abject carnal soul,
Turns the noble man into the plaything of a woman’s orders.
It is not on account of chastity that the conscientious man
Defiles himself for an unworthy lover.
It does not belong to courage that he is rendered a captive,
Dragged by a whore outside the collar of manliness.
It is not a mark of generosity that he is not able to pass
Around his circle nothing except meanness.
Whoever is not a friend of these four conditions
Is not entitled to the fruit of the bride of kingship,
For the one who happens to be deficient in all four,
How will the King give him a place in his heart?

A similar quartet of virtues is described in the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, Akhlāq-i Nāširī, and the Akhlāq-i Jalālī. In the Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, al-Ghazālī relates a story about how Yūnān the Minister (Dastūr) wrote a letter to Anūshīrvān advising him of the four things (chahār chīz) he must always retain: justice (ʿadl), wisdom (khirad), patience (ṣabr), and modesty (sharm).

In a section of the Akhlāq-i Nāširī entitled “Enumeration of the classes of virtues to which the excellences of disposition refer,” Naṣīr al-Dīn Ṭūsī lists the four virtues (fażāʾil) which a good ruler is required to possess as: ḥikmat, shajāʿat, ʿiffat, and ʿadālat.

These same four virtues are enumerated in

---

67 Jāmī, SA, 437, lines 897–904.
68 Jāmī, SA, 437, lines 897–903.
69 al-Ghazālī. Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, 139 (trans. 83). On the identity of Yūnān-i Dastūr and his association with the figure of Buzurjmihr, see Bagely, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, lxvi–lxviii.
the *Akhlāq-i Jalālī* by Davānī as necessary conditions for good kingship.\(^71\) It should be noted that the cardinal virtues described by Ṭūsī and Davānī are in fact Platonic in origin; they appear twice in *The Republic* and probably entered Islamic tradition through Ibn Miskawaih’s *Tahžīb al-akhlāq*.\(^72\)

It is interesting to note that whereas Ṭūsī and Davānī describe justice as the fourth virtue, Jāmī’s fourth condition is generosity (jūd), which, according to Miskawaih, is a special virtue that falls under temperance (‘iffa).\(^73\) This fourfold division also serves as a didactic rhetorical device in the *Tuḥfat al-mulūk* (also called *Tuḥfat al-vuẓara‘* and *Tuḥfat al-salāṭīn*), a manual of advice attributed to the Hanbalite scholar and Sufi mystic of Herat, ‘Abd Allāh Anṣārī (d. 481/1089). This work is divided into forty chapters, each of which lists “chahār chīz” (four things) the ruler must do in order to maintain his kingship.\(^74\) It is important to note that Anṣārī’s works enjoyed a renaissance in late ninth/fifteenth century Timurid Herat. This popularity, reflected by the fact that Jāmī revised and expanded several works attributed to him (such as his *Ṭabaqāt al-ṣūfiyya*, which became Jāmī’s *Nafaḥāt al-uns*), makes it very likely that Jāmī wrote this section of his *Salāmān va Absāl* with Anṣārī’s apothegmatic writings in mind.\(^75\)

Another instance of an association between Jāmī’s *Salāmān va Absāl* and the genre of mirrors-literature occurs near the end of the tale when the King, having commanded his retinue to obey Salāmān, delivers his final testament (vaṣiyyat) to him. Before continuing, it is worth mentioning that similar testaments (or “advice,” as vaṣiyyat is sometimes translated) are contained in the *Qābūs-nāma*, *Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī*, and *Akhlāq-i Jalālī*. In the *Qābūs-nāma*, Anushirvān gives advice (pand) to his son, while

---


74 See the edition and Russian translation in Z. N. Vorozhekina, “‘Tukhfat al-mulūk’—srednevekovyi svod nravstvennykh zapovidei,” *Pis’mennye pamiatniki Vostoka* (1973): 17–21. For example, in one of the chapters ‘Abd Allāh Anṣārī describes the four things necessary for the stability of the sultanate as a series of paired virtues: *adālat va shajā‘at*, *muriqvat va futūvvat* (manliness and chivalry), *sakhāvat va ʿaṭīya* (generosity and giving gifts), *marḥamat va shafaqat* (mercy and compassion).

75 Anṣārī’s *Ṭabaqāt al-ṣūfiyya* is a Persian translation and expansion of the Arabic *Ṭabaqāt al-ṣūfiyya*, which was written by Abū ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Sulamī (d. 412/1021). On the popularity of ‘Abd Allāh Anṣārī in the Timurid period, see Subtelny, *Cult of ‘Abdullāh Anṣārī*, 377–406, esp. 401.
at the end of Ṭūsī’s *Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī* Plato delivers his *vaṣāyā* to Aristotle. Davānī, for his part, concludes his *Akhlāq-i Jalālī* with the *vaṣāyās* of both Plato and Aristotle to Alexander the Great.

In the case of Jāmī’s *Salāmān va Absāl*, the King’s *vaṣīyyat* begins with an injunction to Salāmān to take “religion-acquiring reason” (*ʿaql-i dīn-andūz*) as his guide, since every task needs science (*ʿilm*) and every effort gains currency through knowledge (*dānish*). Whatever you do not know, the King enjoins Salāmān, go and ask “learned men” (*dānishvarān*) about it. Mindful of the importance of the shariʿa and the ruler’s observation of its strictures, specifically the equitable dispersal of conquered lands and booty to the Muslim community, Jāmī hints at the perils associated with greed. Thus, the King advises Salāmān to limit his acquisitions and dispensations to that which is permissible according to “religious law” (*ḥukm-i dīn*). More generally, Salāmān is told that his every motive and act ought to be in accordance with *ḥukm-i dīn*, since failing to do so is to turn away from the “straight paths” (*rāhhā-yi mustaqīm*) which are, according to the King, the “rules of the ancient [Iranian] kings” (*dastūr-i shāhān-i qadīm*). That the metaphor of the straight path, which is often used in connection with the shariʿa, is equated with norms epitomized by the Zoroastrian Sasanians is significant, for it suggests that Jāmī regarded, to some degree at least, ancient Iranian ethical concepts and Islamic morality as complementary—something most mirrors only imply.

Next Jāmī echoes a theme common to other mirrors for princes by comparing the ruler to a shepherd and his subjects to a flock of sheep:

> You are a shepherd, and the subjects are like a flock of sheep,
> In your shepherding, keep far from trouble.
> In your shepherding, do not adopt other customs,
> And regard your own ability as superior to actual shepherds.

According to Niẓām al-Mulk and al-Ghazālī, this idea comes from a *ḥadīth* and is related to the divine punishment that is said to await unjust rulers in the next world. It is also contained in the *Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī* and *Akhlāq-i Jalālī* where, like al-Ghazālī’s *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk*, the Prophet is cited as
having said: “On resurrection day God will say to holders of authority (vālīyān): ‘You were shepherds of My sheep,’”; or as Niẓām al-Mulk has it: “You are all shepherds, each responsible for your flock.”81 The analogy also appears in the Qābūs-nāma but in relation to the need of the ruler to protect his royal subordinates.82

Jāmī’s use of the analogy of the shepherd not only links his Salāmān va Absāl to the traditional mirrors for princes, it also introduces another major idea found in Persian works of political advice, namely the indispensability of an effective vazīr who plays a pivotal role in administering the financial branch of government.83 So vital was the vazīr perceived to be to the sustainability of the medieval Iranian state that the Āgār al-vuzarā‘ī, a Timurid manual on the vizierate written in 883/1478–79 by Saif al-Dīn ‘Uqaili for the Timurid vazīr Niẓām al-Mulk Khvāfī (d. 903/1498), claims that the very foundation of the sultanate is the vazīr.84

It is interesting to note that Jāmī prefaces his discussion of the vizierate by conflating it with its military counterpart. He specifically alludes to the dangerous, yet unavoidable, reliance all rulers have on military commanders (sarhangān) because of their capacity to ensure that the flock remains in accord with them. For example, the King tells Salāmān that commanders are like sheepdogs (sag-i gala) who need to be leashed and properly trained so that their hostility is directed at wolves (i.e., external enemies) and not sheep (i.e., the subjects).85 He goes on to explain that utter calamity (balā) ensues for the flock when the sheepdog is a friend (yār) of the wolf. This parable is not original and resembles a story about Bahram Gūr and his vazīr, Rāst-ravishn, which is recounted both in the Siyar al-mulūk.

---

82 Kay Kā‘ūs, Qābūs Nāma, 131–32 (trans. 225).
84 See Subtelny, Le monde est un jardin, 70–71.
85 Jāmī, SA, 444, lines 1051–52.
and in the *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk*.

The story recounts how Bahrām Gūr, anxious over his depleted treasury, went horseback riding and came upon a shepherd who had hung his sheepdog from a gibbet. The shepherd told Bahrām Gūr that he killed the dog after seeing him mount a she-wolf and then fall asleep while the she-wolf poached the shepherd’s flock.

Astonished at hearing this, Bahrām Gūr returned to his court, reviewed the daily account books (*rūz-nāma*), and discovered that Rāst-ravishn (literally, “the one honest in conduct”) had been fleecing the peasantry. This prompted Bahrām Gūr to hang him on account of his treachery.

In a similar vein, the King tells Salāmān in *Salāmān va Absāl*:

> There is no escape for kings from the need for *vazīrs*,
> But the *vazīr* must be one who is knowledgeable and trustworthy.
> He must know the affairs of the realm completely,
> So that he may order them in the best form.
> He must know that he is trusted with the wealth of the king,
> And is not preparing an ambush for seizing more than his rightful share,
> That he does not take more than [what] he needs from the subjects,
> And that which is the rightful portion of the king and his retinue.

The King notes that in addition to being benevolent (*mihrbān*) and compassionate (*mushfiq*) toward the poor, the *vazīr* must know that his graciousness (*lutf*) applies a “salve to every wounded breast.”

At the same time, however, Salāmān is told that while the *vazīr* should direct his severity (*qahr*) at every oppressor (*ẓulm-kish*), but he must not himself be of a wicked disposition (*sīrat*), resembling a filthy mongrel who does not mind having his paws defiled.

Standing at the head of the financial bureaucracy (*dīvān-i aʿlā*) as the preeminent representative of the “men of the pen” (*ahl-i qalam*), the *vazīr* usually had the final word in financial matters, especially the collection of tax revenues (*māl*). The *vazīr* was often responsible for supervising

---


assignments of land or tax exemptions granted to prominent military officials, civilian administrators, and religious leaders by the ruler.\textsuperscript{93} These assignments of land usually gave grant-holders the legal right to collect specified levies in cash and kind in agricultural or urban districts that would otherwise be directed to the state treasury.\textsuperscript{94} It is therefore not surprising to find that most mirrors, including Jāmī’s \textit{Salāmān va Absāl}, admonish the ruler to be suspicious of the \textit{vazīr} and his capacity to misappropriate revenues or tyrannize the subjects.\textsuperscript{95} According to the \textit{Qābūs-nāma}, the \textit{vazīr} should not be able to take a drink of water without the ruler knowing about it.\textsuperscript{96} The King therefore warns Salāmān:

As for that person who is afraid of the \textit{vazīr},
Do not leave his interrogation up to the \textit{vazīr},
Investigate the matter yourself as well,
And you will make the rank of good fortune lofty.
As for he who acts competently on your behalf,
But who tyrannizes the cities and districts,
That is not being competent, that is causing calamity,
It is bundling together the kindling of hell;
Competence indeed! And it is not beyond him,
In the end, to convert his ten into two hundred.
When the extent of this ‘competence’ increases,
His carnal soul will rebel, and he will become an infidel.\textsuperscript{97}

It is therefore essential, Jāmī explains, that Salāmān appoint a true sage, that is to say, a guide or mentor capable of rendering expert counsel. “You must have an admonisher (\textit{munahhī}),” he tells Salāman, “to guide you wherever you go.”\textsuperscript{98} This admonisher, the King adds, must be clear-sighted, disposed to sincerity, and of excellent discernment; moreover, he should “convey the hidden of everything and relate the good and bad deeds of everyone.”\textsuperscript{99} In short, the King concludes, Salāmān must entrust all his religious and worldly affairs to none other than the sages (\textit{dānāyān}).\textsuperscript{100}

\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{93} Lambton, \textit{Continuity and Change}, 37.
\item \textsuperscript{94} For the historical development of such grants, see the following articles by Ann K. S. Lambton, \textit{Encyclopaedia Iranica}, s.v. “Eqṭā’”; “The Evolution of the Iqṭā’ in Medieval Iran,” \textit{Iran} 5 (1967): 41–50; and \textit{The Encyclopaedia of Islam}, 2nd ed., s.v. “Soyūrghāl,” “Tiyūl.”
\item \textsuperscript{95} See for example, Niẓām al-Mulk, \textit{Siyar al-mulūk [Siyāsat-nāma]} (Shi‘ār ed.), 30 (trans. 23).
\item \textsuperscript{96} Kay Kā’ūs, \textit{Qābūs Nāma}, 137 (trans. 235).
\item \textsuperscript{97} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 445, lines 1065–70.
\item \textsuperscript{98} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 445, line 1063.
\item \textsuperscript{99} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 445, line 1064.
\item \textsuperscript{100} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 445, line 1074.
\end{itemize}
\end{footnotesize}
similar idea is contained in the *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk* where the Sasanid king Ardashīr (d. 241) describes the ideal friend of the ruler as a well-principled (*dastūr-i nīk*), wise (*khiradmand*), benevolent (*mihrbān*), and trustworthy (*amīn*) vazīr with whom opinions can be exchanged and to whom secrets can be confided.101

*Being the Shadow of God on Earth*

The idea of the temporal ruler as the shadow of God on earth is frequently encountered in Perso-Islamic treatises on statecraft. Encapsulated by such expressions as *al-sulṭān ẓill Allāh fī al-arẓ* in the *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk*, and *pādishāh ẓill Allāh dar zamīn* in the *Akhlāq-i Jalālī*, “the shadow of God” is often attributed to the Prophet, despite the fact that the saying does not appear in any of the canonical collections of ḥadīth.102 It is therefore not surprising that it is also found in *Salāmān va Absāl*. In fact, Jāmī bases his philosophical definition of kingship on it.103 Without question, this saying was *de rigueur* for writers of political advice manuals, for it instantly legitimized the ruler’s authority, since he was considered the earthly manifestation of the hidden divine Reality. Stated differently, the expression implies that the ruler embodied the attributes of an unknowable divine essence.104 In his description of the ruler as shadow of God, Jāmī also

101  al-Ghazālī. *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk*, 176 (trans. 106). Later he attributes another comparable maxim to the Prophet, whom al-Ghazālī reports as saying: “When prcededom (*amīr*) or office (*kār*) is granted to a man, God Almighty, if He wishes that man well, will give him a pious (*parsā*) truthful (*rāst-guy*) and right-doing (*nīkūravī*) vazīr, to remind him if he forgets anything of his duty towards the subjects, and to assist him if he remembers.” For a reference, see *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk*, 183 (trans. 111). In the *Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī*, Ţūsī says there is no harder task than to be the vazīr (*vizārat*). The vazīr’s best weapons (*silāḥ*), he adds, are integrity and rectitude (*siḥḥat va istiqāmat*). See Ţūsī, *Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī*, 318 (trans. 240–41).

102  al-Ghazālī. *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk*, 81 (trans. 45); and Davānī, *Akhlāq-i Jalālī*, 134 and 143. There is some doubt as to whether the Prophet would have used the term sultan. For example, see the comments of F. R. C. Bagley in al-Ghazālī, *Ghazali’s Book of Counsel for Kings*, 14 n. 2. See also Mahmood Ahmad Ghazi, “Political Thought of Jalal al-Din Daw-wani,” *Journal of the Pakistan Historical Society* 25 (1977): 139–49, who argues that the term sultan, as it appears in both the ḥadīth literature and the Qurʾān (some thirty-seven times), refers to the delegation of God’s authority to rule earth to a collective of believers. It has wrongly been understood, he claims, to mean a king. On the ubiquity of these phrases in Islamic literature and the Iranian provenance of the idea they convey, see Al-Azmeh, *Muslim Kingship*, 73.


104  In addition to the *Naṣīḥat al-mulūk* and *Akhlāq-i Jalālī*, the prophetic expression is also contained in the *Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī*, 134 (trans. 108). While it does not appear in Niẓām
mentions the idea of the “just ruler” and makes an allusion to the ancient Iranian concept of divine glory (New Persian, farr, Middle Persian, farra, and Avestan, khvarna) as part of his reasoning for conceptualizing the perfect ruler as a manifestation of God.\footnote{Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 394–95, lines 71–72 and 78. In the \textit{Naṣīhat al-mulūk}, al-Ghazālī enumerates sixteen things farr-i Īzādī is expressed in on earth—see his \textit{Naṣīhat al-mulūk}, 127–28 (trans. 74).} According to Jāmī, divine command (ḥukm) produces a special bounty; bounty is the existence (vujūd) of a just ruler (shāh-i ʿādil). The just ruler is in turn nothing but God’s shadow and a refuge for mankind.\footnote{Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 394, line 73.}

However much glory (shukūh) may adorn the ruler, his glory is merely a likeness (misl) of that which exists in the shadow.\footnote{Put differently, God’s bounty is manifested in a just ruler who is nothing other than His shadow. The glory that comes from being the manifested shadow (the just ruler) is nothing other than God’s glory, a glory only found in the shadow. Thus, bounty, just ruler, shadow, and glory all owe their individual and collective existences to God.} Jāmī adds that it is for this reason that the shadow, i.e., the just ruler, is the source or eye (ʿain) of the shadow-holder, i.e., God.\footnote{The word ʿain can also denote “eye” as in the esoteric idea that he (the shadow, i.e., the true vicegerent or Perfect Man) is the eye by which the shadow-holder (sāya-dār, i.e., God) sees Himself.} If we recognize that the word ʿain can also mean “itself” or “essence,” then the shadow is to be equated with the shadow-holder Himself. In either interpretation, the correlation of the source of temporal sovereignty with the Divine is sufficient to prompt this warning: “Be careful that you do not look [with] contempt (khvār) upon the shadow, since the shadow is a reflection of the essence (zāt) of the One, meaning God, who is the master of the shadow (sāhib-i sāya).”\footnote{Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 394, line 75.}

Aside from its theosophical significance, such a statement has considerable political implications, for it endorses the view put forward by the classic mirrors that disobedience to a political authority who governs according to God’s command is a sin. To justify their position, writers of advice literature quoted the Qur’anic verse (4:59): “Oh you believers! Obey God, obey the Prophet, and those in authority among you (ūlī al-amri al-Mulk’s \textit{Sīyar al-mulāk}, the expression was included in a compilation of aphorisms attributed to Nīżām al-Mulk and his son known as the \textit{Vaṣāyā-yi Nīżām al-Mulk}. On the authenticity of this work, see Harold Bowen, “The sar-gudhasht-i sayyidnā, the ‘Tale of the Three Schoolfellows’ and the wasaya of the Nīżām al-Mulk,” \textit{Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society} 4 (1931): 771–82. al-Ghazālī punctuates the saying (in Arabic) with a Persian translation equating the ruler with the shadow of God’s awe: \textit{al-sulṭān ẓill Allāh fī al-arḍ sulṭān sāya-i haibat-i khudāst bi-rū-yi zamīn}.}
Later, in a paradoxical statement that calls to mind the speculative theosophy based on Ibn al-ʿArabi’s doctrine of wahdat al-wujūd (Oneness of Being), Jāmī uses an extended metaphor to describe how the shadow-holder exists by means of the master of the shadow: “The shadow is full of substance from the attributes (ṣifāt) of His (i.e., God’s) essence. Although in His essence (ẕāt) He is concealed, through His attributes (ṣifāt) He becomes apparent in every region [of this world] through His shadow.” In other words, God manifests His names or attributes (the Merciful, the Wrathful, etc.) through phenomenal caliphs, kings, sultans, and imāms, whose God-given glory (farr-i īlāhī) evinces their having received divine favor to rule (daulat). Because it was believed that this favor could be passed down as a patrimony, Yaʿqūb’s own claim to farr was based on his being the son of Ūzūn Ḥasan, something which Jāmī explains by way of a pun on the word ḥasan or “good.” Thus, after praising his justice, Jāmī relates that the good morals (khulq-i ḥasan) of Yaʿqūb’s father are his son’s true inheritance (mīrās). Jāmī’s approbation goes so far as to declare that anyone who does not believe that this farr, or glory, is manifested on earth, should simply gaze upon “that sovereign (jahāndār) Shāh Yaʿqūb, on account of whose loftiness the zenith of the heavens is humbled.”

---

110 On the various interpretations of the phrase āli al-amrī (“those with authority”), by early Muslim exegetes, see Marlow, Hierarchy and Egalitarianism, 137–38 n. 107. For an example of how later political writers cited this verse to justify unequivocal obedience to royal authority, see Lambton, “Sufis and the State,” 26.


112 Jāmī, SA, 394, lines 76–77.

113 For concise explications of daulat as it relates to political power and the inscrutability of fate, see Roy Mottahedeh, Loyalty and Leadership in an Early Islamic Society (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1980), 132 and 185; and Arjomand, “Medieval Persianate,” 15–16.

114 Jāmī, SA, 395, line 88.

115 Jāmī, SA, 395, lines 79 and 81.
On Heeding the Prayers of the Sufis

The next major section of *Salāmān va Absāl* is significant in that it emphasizes the need for rulers to heed the advice proffered by Sufi mystics. Professedly written as an expression of Jāmī’s inability to give due praise to the temporal ruler (i.e., Yaʿqūb), this section in fact represents an esoteric interpretation of the concept of perfect kingship. Before proceeding, it is important to note that Jāmī bases much of this description on the idea that the ruler’s fate depends upon the prayers of the Sufis. Because the ideal ruler is considered the locus of divine manifestation, the divine transcendence is mirrored in the limitless virtue (*fażl*) of the [perfect] king. As a consequence, praising his (God’s, and by implication the ruler’s) incalculable excellence is impossible except to “those with penetrating insight” (i.e., Sufis) who recognize that this in itself constitutes religion (*dīn*). This secret (*sīr*) he adds, is the real meaning of the well-known *ḥadīth*: “I cannot count Your praises!” (*lā ẓūhī thanāʾ*). Jāmī explains that praising Him who transcends praise requires a steadfast (*qarār*) method of prayer, one that is delivered through the heart of the Sufi and not, as Jāmī implies, by the tongues of the literal-minded:

Not a prayer that comes from any feeble-minded person
Limited to the power of this [temporal] palace.
On the contrary, a prayer of the people of the heart,
Filled with the blessings of God.

---

117 The section is entitled, “Manifestation of the inability to effect praise and the raising of the hand of weakness in the pronunciation of prayer.”
By differentiating this prayer from the benedictions offered by members of the clerical class, Jāmī not only expresses the belief that Sufi mystics could effect changes in a dynasty's political fortunes, he also asserts that Ya'qūb was the beneficiary of such blessings. Far from being ritualistic, these prayers could be efficacious. These were offered in order to elicit the ruler's spiritual devotion (irādat) to the Sufi(s), according to the writings of certain Naqshbandis, but they were also meant to connect the ruler's well-being to the well-being of the entire umma through his implementation of the moral and legal precepts of the shari'a. This charisma (baraka) was not frivolously given away, but was part of a larger reciprocal relationship. Considered alongside himmat, namely the concentrated creative energy of the Sufi's heart, baraka theoretically invested Sufi mystics with the ability to change dynastic fortunes. Such a proposition would not have been entirely foreign to the Āq Qoyūnlū. We might note, for example, that Davānī's Akhlāq-i Jalālī (which was dedicated to Üzün Hasan) contains a poem that unambiguously characterizes Sufis as capable of influencing the fortunes of a dynasty:

At the tavern door sit rogue [mystics],
Who give and take away the crown of kingship.
When a brick is your pillow, you find the seven stars (i.e., saints) over your head,
Behold the [real] hands of power and their high place of nobility!125


125 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 136. The poem also appears in Davānī’s ‘Arz-sipāh-i Üzün Hasan (‘Arz-nāma), an eyewitness review to a parade of local civil and military officers of Fars in 881/1476 that he dedicated to Ya’qūb’s elder uterine brother Sultan Khalil. See Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī, ‘Arz-sipāh-i Üzün Hasan, ed. Īraj Afshār (Tehran: Dānishkāda-i Adabīyāt, 1335/1956), 3. The first couplet is a derivation of a verse by Ḥāfiẓ: bar dar-i maikada rindān-i qalandar bāshand, kai sītānand va dahkan afsar-i shāhānshāhī. For the original poem, see Divān-i Ḥāfiẓ, ed. Parviz Nāṭil-Khānlāri (Tehran: Bunyād-i Farhang-i Iran, 1359/1980–81), 974. Davānī also composed several commentaries (sharḥ) on the ghazals and couplets of Ḥāfiẓ entitled, Sharḥ-i ghazal-i Ḥāfiẓ and Sharḥ-i bāṭī az Ḥāfiẓ. For a description, see
Such reciprocal support between rulers and religious elites was common before the advent of Islam. Indeed, the Sasanian rulers conceived of religion and kingship as inseparable. This key idea was encapsulated in a motto attributed to the first Sasanian king, Ardashīr, which maintained that “religion and kingship are two [or twin] brothers (dīn va daulat du barādarand),” one cannot exist without the aid of the other.” A dynasty’s endurance, the thinking went, depended on the ruler’s sustained patronage of religious figures and institutions which, in the medieval Islamic context, meant descendants of the Prophet, members of the ‘ulamā, specifically jurisprudents and theologians, as well as individuals affiliated with mystical and popular Islamic movements, e.g., Sufi shaikhs, their disciples, charismatic dervishes, and Sufi saints (auliyā’). In terms of institution-building, rulers were called upon to apportion funds or land from their personal property (khāṣṣ) for the creation of pious endowments (vaqf, pl. auqāf), which facilitated the construction and upkeep of mosques, theological colleges, and Sufi hospices. According to this


126 The word “dīn” has in fact two separate etymologies: judgment or retribution (Hebraeo-Aramaic root, dīn); debt or money owing (Arabic root, DYN); and revelation or religion (Middle Persian, dēn). See The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v. “dīn” (by L. Gardet); and Maria E. Subtelny, “Visionary Rose: Metaphorical Application of Horticultural Practice in Persian Culture,” in Botanical Progress, Horticultural Innovation and Cultural Change, ed. Michel Conan and W. John Kress, Dumbarton Oaks Colloquium on the History of Landscape Architecture, 28 (Washington, DC: Dumbarton Oaks Research Library and Collection, 2007), 31 n. 82.

127 The maxim is ubiquitous, appearing in each of the following advice manuals: Rāzī, Jāmiʿ al-ʿulūm, 204; al-Ghazālī, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, 106 (trans. 59); Niẓām al-Mulk, Siyyar al-mulūk [Siyyasat-nāma] (Shiʿār ed.), 87 (trans. 63); Ṭūsī, Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī, 285 (trans. 215); and Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 53. Davānī also cites a Syriac rock-inscription declaring that kingship (mulk) and justice (ʿadl) are brothers. For a reference, see Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 165. In the Bahr-i favāʿid, an anonymous Persian mirror for princes addressed to Nūr al-Dīn Zangi (d. 569/1174), it is “the pen and the sword” that are brothers. For a reference, see Meisami, Sea of Precious Virtues, 294. On the association of the motto with Ardashīr, see J. Duchesne-Guillemin, “Zoroastrian Religion,” in The Cambridge History of Iran, vol. 3, The Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanian Periods, ed. Ehsan Yarshater (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1983), 877. For the transmission of this Sasanian idea into Islam, see Shaul Shaked, “From Iran to Islam: Notes on Some Themes in Transmission,” Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam 4 (1984): 31–67.

arrangement, neglecting religious institutions was considered an act of oppression (ẓulm), leading the divine will to effect a turn in dynastic fortune (daulat) and topple the ruler in accordance with the Qur’anic (3:26) statement: “Thou givest kingship (mulk) to whom Thou will, and Thou taketh kingship (mulk) away from whom Thou will.”

Unlike the Siyar al-mulūk and Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī, the raison d’être of Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl appears to be the ruler’s awakening to his own spiritual self. According to the tale, this awakening is manifested only through the prayers of the Sufis which “place religion (dīn) in the heart of the ruler, making God-fearing governance (daulat-i dīndār) his practice (āyīn).” A spiritually enlightened ruler, whose heart is receptive to the himmat of a Sufi shaikh, would therefore garner the baraka and instruction (tadbīr) of spiritual men, making him both a beneficiary and benefactor of religion. Stated differently, the Sufis’ baraka would sanctify and legitimate a ruler’s temporal reign, in turn producing expectations that he would be responsive to the mystics’ guidance, since such direction would theoretically benefit all Muslims. As a result, the ruler would be invested with the ability to manifest God’s will.

This reciprocal relationship is alluded to throughout the section of Salāmān va Absāl concerning Sufi prayer. Interestingly, Jāmī uses financial terms associated with contracting a debt or settling accounts. Thus words like istīfāʾ (receiving what is due), idāʾ (quittance), and shumār (counting), together with a variant reading of the line above in which dīn may be read dain or “debt,” seem to suggest that in exchange for their support, the ruler was politically and/or spiritually liable to the mystics. According to this variant reading, the prayer of the Sufis “contracts a debt (dain kunad) on the heart of the ruler, making the fate of being a debtor (daindār) his way.” The description of dīn or dain being impressed upon the heart of the ruler is also reminiscent of a practice associated with Bahāʾ al-Dīn Naqshband, the eponymous founder of the Naqshbandī order. In the Asrār-i Qāsimī, a late ninth/fifteenth or early tenth/sixteenth century treatise on the occult sciences, its author, Ḥusain Vāʿiẓ Kāshifī, mentions Bahāʾ al-Dīn’s skill in the science of talismans (ʿilm-i ṭilismāt),

129 For example, see Meisami, Sea of Precious Virtues, 3, 52, and 214.
130 Jāmī, SA, 397, line 119.
131 Jāmī, SA, 397, line 119. As a derivation of the Arabic root DYN, the term dīn (religion) originally signified “obligation” or “judgment,” as in the Qur’anic “Day of Judgment” (yaum al-dīn). For a discussion of its ancient Arabic meaning, see The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v. “din” (by L. Gardet).
and explains his sobriquet, “naqshband,” as denoting one who draws talismanic figures and binds others by means of these figures.\textsuperscript{132} He thereby provides an explanation of the origin of the ṭarīqa’s name. Bahāʾ al-Dīn purportedly fashioned amulets for a variety of princes in order to help them ward off enemies and rival contenders for the throne while also influencing their spirits through “magical” actions. In return, Bahāʾ al-Dīn and his disciples could very well have been awarded some degree of support by the ruler. Thus, this tangible bestowal of baraka could be an early indication of what later became the historically documented relationship between Naqshbandī shaikhs and temporal rulers.

To take Kāshīfī’s explanation even further, the mere act of tying or binding a talisman to the ruler can be more fully appreciated when we consider the similarities between this concrete gesture and the mystical technique, often associated with the Naqshbandīyya—though not unique to the ṭarīqa—known as rābiṭa (literally, “bond”), by which the Sufi shaikh transmits spiritual energy to a disciple (murīd) by fixing his image (ṣūrat) in his heart.\textsuperscript{133} We therefore cannot discount the possibility that when Jāmī speaks of “placing religion (dīn) in (literally, ‘on the face of’) the king’s heart,” he is alluding to the ruler’s (i.e., Yaʿqūb’s) receptivity to Sufi influences.\textsuperscript{134} As a result of this Sufi blessing, Jāmī suggests, the ruler comes to realize his role as the locus of divine manifestation, becoming a true khalīfat Allāh as it were:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{[The king’s] task is to become he who makes royal decrees obligatory,} \\
\text{And to become the origin of everlasting good fortune.} \\
\text{So that this azure dome} \\
\text{Becomes the place of manifestation for the eastern sun.} \\
\text{May the royal throne be the place of manifestation of the King,} \\
\text{May he always be mindful of the secrets of the Faith.}\textsuperscript{135}
\end{align*}
\]

Jāmī states that when the ruler is conscious of his role in carrying out the divine will, he will be succored at every moment, or breath (dam), by God’s eternal grace (fażl), thereby earning him a place in the “kingdom


\textsuperscript{133} Just as the Sage impressed the image of Venus (zuhra) on Salāmān’s heart in the tale of \textit{Salāmān va Absāl}. See Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 442, lines 1002–03.

\textsuperscript{134} Although there is no direct evidence in the historical sources to suggest that Yaʿqūb was initiated into the Naqshbandī order, the letters he exchanged with Jāmī contain several allusions to spiritual techniques normally associated with the Naqshbandīs. See 107, 110 of the present study.

\textsuperscript{135} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 397, lines 120–22.
of paradise.”

The Sufi prayer of Jāmī is therefore a “silent blessing, a harbinger of eternal life which dawns in the heart,” revealing to the ruler the secret of his pontifical role as the locus of the manifestation of God’s attributes on earth. The pivotal role of the heart in this manifestation is apparent when we consider that takht or throne (‘arsh in Arabic), as in the divine Throne, often denoted the heart (dil, in Arabic qalb, fu’ād, sirr, lubb) in the medieval Islamic literary imagination. This idea is reflected in a prophetic statement wherein Muhammad reportedly said, “The heart of the believer is the Throne of the Merciful.”

A ruler’s throne (takht-i shāhī), and by way of metaphor, the heart of the perfect ruler, is therefore called upon to be the “place” of God’s manifestation (jilvagāh).

The political implications of this idea were perhaps best expressed in the Illuminationist doctrine of Shihāb al-Dīn Yahyā Suhravardi, whose schema of Eastern Wisdom (ḥikmat al-ishrāq) bore heavily upon the theological speculations of late ninth/fifteenth century philosophers writing in Iran. According to Suhravardi’s political philosophy, rulers must possess a sign of divine inspiration (waḥy); specifically, a perceivable relation or link to an unseen realm (ʿālam al-ghaib) interposed between the worlds of sense perception and pure being or light. Only a ruler capable of receiving divine commands (amr) through this hidden realm, which Sufis

---

136 Jāmī, SA, 397, line 123.
refer to as the eighth clime (al-īqlīm al-thāmin), is legitimate and worthy of true vicegerency.\textsuperscript{141}

The perfect ruler is thus the epitome of God’s investiture of Adam, whose deputyship is affirmed in the Qur’ān (2:30) when God informed the angels: “I will create a vicegerent (khalīfa) on earth.”\textsuperscript{142} This investiture will occur only if the ruler becomes a true slave (‘abd), delivered from illusory ego to the extent that God “becomes” the ruler’s very being.\textsuperscript{143} On this subject Ibn al-ʿArabī was led to say, “He [the man] is not truly the deputy (nāʾib) of God unless He who has made him His lieutenant and His substitute is his hearing, his sight, and his hand and all his faculties.”\textsuperscript{144}

True legitimacy, and we can assume divine favor, can only be invested in a temporal ruler of exceptional spiritual perfection, a so-called Perfect Man (insān-i kāmil) or saint, and whose appearance is reflected in the notion shared by Ibn al-ʿArabī and Twelver, or Imāmī, Shīʿites that the ideal sovereign is in occultation and will only manifest himself at the end of time as the justice-dispensing divinely-appointed guide (mahdī).\textsuperscript{145}

Short of spiritual perfection, a temporal ruler was—if we are to accept Jāmī’s Sufi prayer and the importance of baraka in medieval Islamic polities—beholden to the wishes of Sufi saints (auliyāʾ). These “friends of God” were not accidents of history, as Michel Chodkiewicz notes, but directors of it.\textsuperscript{146} In his axial position as the quṭb, or pivot, of the cosmic order, a Sufi saint was, according to Ibn al-ʿArabī (and following him, Jāmī), “the real head of the community of his epoch,” and therefore the true arbiter of divine favor.\textsuperscript{147} Short of becoming a saint himself, it was therefore incumbent upon the ruler to be deferential to the auliya’ in order to earn their blessings. As this study will demonstrate, however, while addressing the need to be guided by Sufis, Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl is ultimately

\begin{itemize}
\item\textsuperscript{141} Ziai, “Source and Nature of Authority,” 307.
\item\textsuperscript{142} For the importance of Adam as an archetypal figure in medieval Islamic political thought, see Al-Azmeh, Muslim Kingship, 154–55.
\item\textsuperscript{144} Chodkiewicz, “Esoteric Foundations,” 194. The statement is an allusion to a well-known hadīth qudsī.
\item\textsuperscript{145} Chodkiewicz, “Esoteric Foundations,” 195.
\item\textsuperscript{146} Chodkiewicz, “Esoteric Foundations,” 195.
\item\textsuperscript{147} Chodkiewicz, “Esoteric Foundations,” 194.
concerned with providing instructions on how Yaʿqūb himself can become the perfect spiritual saint, and thus the true khalīfat Allāh.

Implicit Spiritual Advice for Rulers and Sufi Mystics

Understanding what is meant by true vicegerency entailed recognition of the symbolic significance of the characters, settings, and events depicted in Salāmān va Absāl. Without such recognition, Jāmī’s tale remains precisely what its modern critics have dubbed it: a bizarre romance. Failing to apprehend the significance of the work’s semiotics is therefore to neglect the didactic intent of its author. Focusing on the perturbations between the King, the Sage, and Salāmān, or the incestuous affair between Salāmān and Absāl as an indiscretion on the part of an heir-apparent, is to understand the tale in its most literal sense. As mentioned earlier, these characters, and the dynamics between them, symbolize fundamental elements in the process of the purification of the individual soul often associated with the mystical path. They are therefore integral to the second level of the tale’s didacticism, namely the implicit advice it provides on subduing the carnal self (nafs) through penitence, austerity, and pious devotion in order to realize the state of perfection epitomized by Adam as the vicegerent of God.

Jāmī himself explains that Salāmān va Absāl was to be read allegorically. The intention of the tale, it will be remembered, was not its “outer form” (ṣūrat) but its inner “meaning” (maʿnā). To this end, Jāmī states that in the ṣūrat of every tale a certain portion of its maʿnā is meant for those with “discerning vision” (khurdābīn), or mystics. Once the outer form of the tale has been understood, he adds, it is necessary for the reader to seek the hidden meaning. The juxtaposition of ṣūrat and

---

148 See Browne, Literary History of Persia, 3:523; Arberry, FitzGerald’s Salaman and Absal, 39; and Rypka et al., History of Iranian Literature, 287.
149 For a discussion of the alchemy of the soul in the original Greek version of the tale of Salāmān and Absāl, see Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 209 and 220.
150 On the unique investiture of Adam and his status as the prototypical Perfect Man in Sufi tradition, see Annemarie Schimmel, Mystical Dimensions of Islam (Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 1975), 188–89.
151 Jāmī, SA, 445, lines 1075–83.
152 Jāmī, SA, 445, line 1075.
153 Jāmī, SA, 445, line 1076.
ma’nā is commonplace in Sufi writings. The idea of understanding the reality behind the šūrat also has a special meaning for the Naqshbandis. For example, part of the order's initiatory practices require a disciple to retain the image (šūrat or naqsh) of a shaikh in his mind through the technique of rābīṭa, which was believed to bind the heart of the murīd to the shaikh.

Jāmī explains that divulging the story's hidden meaning is the task of a Sufi shaikh (referred to as a “knower of the path” or rāh-dān), since it necessarily leads to the “secret” (sirr) of the Sufi path itself. He then alludes to the goal of the mystical experience by noting that, in demonstrating this deeper significance, distinctions like “We” and “You” disappear and the secret (sirr) of mystical union, which Jāmī describes as the spiritual state (ḥāl) of “We and You,” will be unveiled (kashf). Through the spiritual advice of a Sufi shaikh—that is to say Jāmī in his Salāmān va Absāl—the adept acquires the rudiments of mystical perception (żauq) which are necessary to contemplate divine transcendence (tauḥīd) and to realize that being a shadow of God is to be a perfect Sufi.

**Advice on Illuminating the Intellect**

According to Jāmī, the goal (maqṣūd) of Salāmān va Absal is the discovery of what he calls “ancient secrets” (asrār-i kuhan). As the conclusion of the tale indicates, these secrets, that is to say, the allegorical meaning of Salāmān va Absāl, are largely explainable through the theory of Neo-Platonic emanationism and its concept of the hierarchy of

---


A poet of considerable learning in both the formal and speculative sciences, Jāmī would have been familiar with the metaphysics of al-Fārābī, Ibn Sinā, Suhravardī, and Ṭūsī which, among other aims, sought to integrate the Greek peripatetic philosophical system into Islamic cosmology. It is therefore not surprising to find Jāmī pointing out that the King in his tale represents the Tenth or Active Intellect (‘aql-i fa‘āl), the Sage represents supernal emanation (faiż-i bālā), Salāmān represents the Rational, or Speaking Soul (nafs-i gūyā), Absāl represents the lust-worshiping body (tan-i shahvat-parast), and Venus represents the perfections (kamālāt) of a celestial body. The image of Venus, usually understood as being negative in medieval Persian thought, is depicted positively in Salāmān va Absāl. It is possible that Jāmī integrates an element of Zoroastrian tradition, which associates the planet Venus with the goddess Anāhitā (Middle Persian, Anāhīt, Anāhīd, New Persian, Nāhīd), or “the Immaculate One,” into his version of the tale.

Jāmī describes how, before creating the world, God created the First Intellect (ʿaql-i avval) and followed it with a chain of Ten Intellects (silk-i ʿuqūl), the last of which makes its effect (muʾsir) known in this world as the Tenth, or Active Intellect (ʿaql-i fa‘āl). Consistent with the ideas of the emanationist school, Jāmī notes that this Tenth Intellect effuses (mufīż) good and evil in the world and is responsible for abundance and

---


160 Jāmī, SA, 446–47, lines 1093, 1095–96, 1099, and 1115.


163 Jāmī, SA, 446, lines 1075–76.
deficiency on earth. It is not, Jāmī explains, related to the corporeal (jismānī) realm or to the body (jism); rather it is a treasure completely free in both essence (zāt) and activity (fiʿl) from such a material “talisman” (ṭilism). He goes on to say that the spirit of man (rūḥ-i insān) is a “son,” or product, of the Active Intellect, while man’s animal soul (nafs-i ḥaīvān) is its plaything. Both the rūḥ and the nafs, he adds, are under the command (farmān) of the Active Intellect.

In a series of couplets Jāmī suggests that the Active Intellect is the command-giving king (shāh-i farmān-dih), while the others (a reference to temporal rulers) are command-carriers (farmān-barān) [who are] under the decree (farmān) of the Active Intellect. Because the temporal king is adorned with the title of kingship (naʿt-i shāhī), this spiritual guide (i.e., Jāmī) really intends “it” (i.e., the Active Intellect) when speaking of the King. Speaking as a guide who is “experienced in the wonders of the world” (rāḥ-dān-i bū ‘l-ʾajab), Jāmī posits that the supernal emanation (faiż-i bālā) of the Active Intellect, which falls onto this world and thus onto the temporal king, is known by the title “ḥakīm” (sage). In turn, pure spirit (rūḥ) was named “nafs-i gūyā” (Rational Soul) and is born of this (Active) intellect (ʿaql) without the fetters of corporeality. Its existence without bodily connection, Jāmī explains, is what is implied by the idea that the Rational Soul is “born of a father without a mate” (az pidar bī juft zād). A human soul or off-spring (zāda) that has come into the world “clean-skirted” without the blemish of sexual union is thus named as “Salāmān,” literally, “the unblemished one.”

Absāl, on the other hand, represents the lust-worshipping body (tan-i shahwat-parast) that acts according to the laws of nature (ahkām-i ṭabīʿat). Jāmī makes it clear that the body lives by way of the soul, and through the body the soul derives pleasure through the faculty of sense-perception.

---

164 Jāmī, SA, 446, line 1077.
165 Jāmī, SA, 446, line 1090.
166 Jāmī, SA, 446, line 1092.
167 The two couplets read:
ū shāh-i farmānda-ast va digarān zīr-i farmān-i vai az farmānbarān
chun bi naʿt-i shāhī ū ārāstast rāhdān az shāh ū rā khvāstast

168 Jāmī, SA, 446, line 1095. The idea that a wayfaring sage or pīr is a symbol of divine emanation is also expressed in Shihāb al-Dīn Suhravardi’s treatise, Ṭaql-ʾi surkh. For a reference, see Shihāb al-Dīn Yaḥyā al-Suhrawardi, The Philosophical Allegories and Mystical Treatises: A Parallel Persian-English Text, ed. and trans. Wheeler M. Thackston, Jr. (Costa Mesa, CA: Mazda, 1999), 22.
169 Jāmī, SA, 446, line 1096.
170 Jāmī, SA, 447, line 1098.
(mahsūsāt). As for the sea in which Salāmān and Absāl experience unison (viṣāl), it is the sea of sensual lusts (bahr-i shahvathā-yi ḥaivānī) and the abyss of carnal pleasures (laẓzāt-i nafsānī). Salāmān’s return to the King and his appreciation of glory and dignity represents the inclination of the soul toward noetic pleasures (laẓzātā-yi ʿaqlī), whereafter the soul is brought to what Jāmī calls the intellectual (ʿaqlī) kingdom. The fire into which Salāmān and Absāl leap represents stern ascetic discipline (riyāżātā-yi sakht), which sets fire to the human nature (ṭabīʿat) and cleanses the “hem of animal lusts” until only the pure spirit remains. Jāmī points out that, because Salāmān had grown accustomed to Absāl (just as the carnal soul becomes preoccupied with the pleasures of the flesh), he was pained by his separation from her. The Sage alleviated his grief by means of descriptions of the beauty of Venus. Jāmī explains that, through these descriptions, the Sage joined the soul (jān) of Salāmān to his love (mihr) for Venus until he was freed from his despair over Absāl. As for the significance of Venus, she represents the lofty perfections (kamālāt-i buland) through which the soul becomes noble (arjumand) and the intellect is made luminous (nūrānī). On account of this illumination, he concludes, the soul becomes the ruler of the kingdom of man (pādishāh-i mulk-i insānī).

The Role of Repentance in Attaining Mystical Enlightenment

The overriding theme of Salāmān va Absāl is the need for tauba, or repentance. While tauba literally means “turning” or “returning,” it is better understood as “repentance” from sin in this and other works of a religious nature. Repentance being an essential element of Salāmān va Absāl is not at all surprising if we remember that Jāmī’s allegorical romance is in fact a spiritual tale about the purification of the soul; moreover, it was dedicated to a ruler given to wine-drinking.

---

171 Jāmī, SA, 447, line 1100.
172 Jāmī, SA, 447, line 1103.
173 Jāmī, SA, 447, line 1109.
174 Jāmī, SA, 447, lines 1110–11.
175 Jāmī, SA, 447, line 1113.
176 Jāmī, SA, 447, line 1114.
177 Jāmī, SA, 447, line 1116.
178 From the Latin paenitere, meaning “to be sorry, to grieve, to regret.” It is equivalent to the Hebrew tĕshūbāh or Aramaic tethubah.
The very act of repentance or “(re)turning one’s face toward God,” is presented in the classic Sufi manuals as the first step, or spiritual station (maqām), on the mystical path. It occupies a fundamental place in such well-known Sufi manuals as the Kashf al-majhūb by Hujvīrī (d. 464/1071) and al-Risāla al-Qushairiyya by Qushairī (d. 465/1072).179 The association of tauba with the initial step of the mystical path is also noted in Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl. In an anecdote about a “wine-worshipper” (may-parast) who seeks the advice of a saint, Jāmī relates how the drunkard took the path of repentance (rāḥ-i tauba) and, “from this repentance (tauba), he achieved lofty stations (maqāmāt-i buland), and the quarry of sainthood (vilāyat or valāyat) came within his lasso.”180 The Sufi adept, in other words, can achieve perfection only through tauba.181

The issue of tauba, especially its practical benefits and/or mystical meaning, appears to have been a special concern of other writers of didactic literature in late ninth/fifteenth century Iran. For example, Ḥusain Vā’īz Kāshīfī dedicated his mirror for princes, the Akhlāq-i Muḥsinī, to the Timurid ruler Sultān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā and his son Abū al-Muḥsin Mirzā on the occasion of the latter’s public repentance (tauba) from wine-drinking at his father’s court in Herat.182 In a similar vein, the Subḥat al-abrār, a didactic mašnavī written by Jāmī for Sultān-Ḥusain, contains a chapter entitled “Maqām-i tauba” which describes tauba in terminology that is especially relevant to the Naqshbandīs.183 The same relevance is detected in Salāmān va Absāl where, in describing God’s role in granting tauba, Jāmī alludes to the Naqshbandī commitment to “act with strictness” (al-ʿamal bi al-ʿazīma), a formula which is usually taken to refer to the order’s strict


180 Jāmī, SA, 403, line 238.

181 On the semantic ambiguity of the terms vilāyat and valāyat and how they relate to the larger topic of Muslim sainthood, see Vincent J. Cornell, Realm of the Saint: Power and Authority in Moroccan Sufism (Austin, TX: University of Texas Press, 1998), xvii–xxi.

182 Subtelny, “A Late Medieval Persian Summa,” 604.

183 Jāmī, Subḥat al-abrār, 597, lines 898–876. See also 600, lines 892–901.
fidelity to the sharīʿa. In the view of a mystic like Jāmī, directing a young ruler to a life of sobriety was to bring him closer to God, since, according to a prophetic tradition cited in both the Kashf al-mahjūb and al-Risāla al-Qushairīyya, “There is nothing dearer to God than a repentant youth.”

This sentiment is partly echoed in a section of Salāmān va Absāl which, in praising Yaʿqūb’s abstinence (ijtināb) from prohibited things (manāḥī), Jāmī declares: “Oh excellent is a king who, in the time of [his] youth, finds benefits from repentance (tauba), just like the aged do.”

It should be mentioned, however, that the two sections of Salāmān va Absāl that deal most directly with tauba address it in terms that are not exclusively Naqshbandī but rather consistent with the general Sufi precepts described in Kashf al-mahjūb and al-Risāla al-Qushairīyya. For example, like Hujvīrī and Qushairī, who prioritize the three conditions for sound tauba as remorse (nadam), abandonment (tark) of the sin, and the resolve (ʿazm) not to sin again, Jāmī says tauba is “to be penitent (pashīmān) over the past and in the present to abandon (ḥāliyā bugẕashtan) disobedient acts, and to resolve (ʿazm kardan) that, in the future, you will be successful in overcoming acts of disobedience.” He then explains how success in repentance depends on the penitent’s determination (ʿazīma) to allow Divine will/predestination (qażā) to act through him:

Repentance is like a glass bottle, Divine decree like a rock, How can a glass bottle do battle with a stone? When Divine decree becomes the agent Repentance will be solidly founded. And if Divine decree does not become its (i.e., repentance’s) agent, There is no happiness except in acquiescing to His judgments. The repentance-granter and the repentance-breaker are both Divine decree, Attributing these things to oneself is to sin.


On the fact that this hadith is non-canonical, see Abū al-Qāsim ʿAbd-al-Karīm b. Hawāzin Qushairī, Das Sendschreiben al-Qušayrīs über das Sufitum, trans. and commentary Richard Gramlich (Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner, 1989), 146.

Jāmī, SA, 401, line 199.

Jāmī, SA, 402–03, lines 231–32.

The image of breaking the bottle of tauba with a rock appears frequently in the ghazals of Hāfiz. See for example, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad
The idea that a believer is incapable of fulfilling the divine command to repent without divine initiative, i.e., only when God “turns” toward the penitent servant, is not original to Jāmī. In fact the notion that God is the first to “repent” is something which formed the basis of Ibn al-ʿArabī’s radical interpretation of tauba.189 According to Ibn al-ʿArabī, justification for this paradoxical arrangement is found by inverting the situation presented in Qur’anic verse 24:31 so that it is “He (God) [who] turned towards them [the believers] in order that they might turn [toward Him].”190 This view of tauba is supported by the narrative of Salāmān va Absāl. For example, it is only after the King himself uses his himmat to separate Salāmān from Absāl that Salāmān “returns” to the King: “His [Salāmān’s] face, in fear of his awe-inspiring father, repentant (tauba), apologetic, and seeking forgiveness.”191 To believe that tauba can be initiated by the individual is, according to Jāmī, to fall into the “mire of sin” (gunah). He therefore exhorts the reader to resolve (ʿazm kun) to always be in communion (damsāz) with tauba.192

Advice on Subduing the Carnal Soul

The need for repentance is necessitated by the ego-soul or lower-self’s (nafs) base instincts which allow blameworthy acts and sins, such as lust (shahvat) in the case of Salāmān. According to the ascetic tradition in Sufism, the physical appetites of this faculty, articulated in Qur’anic terms as the soul which incites to commit evil (al-nafs al-ammāra bi-al-sūʾ), must be subdued and purified through the restraining influence of the accusing soul (al-nafs al-lawwāma), which roughly corresponds to the moral conscience.193 Described in the prophetic tradition and Sufi literature as the “greater holy war,” or al-jihād al-akbar, this psychological struggle involves constant self-mortification (mujāhada) and discipline (riyāжа) so that

---


190 Khalil, “Ibn al-ʿArabī,” 404. The verse in the Qur’ān, reads: “And turn all together to God, O you believers; happily so you will prosper.”

191 Jāmī, SA, 436, line 877.

192 Jāmī, SA, 403, line 235.

the nafs, which is often compared in Perso-Islamic literature to a restive horse, a stubborn mule, a dog, or a camel, is purifed and made obedient to the commands of the intellect. Only by resisting the lower soul and engaging in self-mortification, Hujvīrī writes in the Kashf al-mahjūb, can man find the way to God. Submission to the nafs and its passions (havā), he warns, results in man’s destruction; resistance to it, on the other hand, entails his salvation. Once sublimated, the nafs becomes the soul at peace (al-nafs al-mutma‘inna) and according to the Qur’ān, it is called “home” to its Lord. It is at this point that repentance (tauba), or the act of (re)turning toward God, is occurs.

These three aspects of the soul—the soul inciting to commit evil, the blaming soul, and the soul at peace—are all personified in the character of Salāmān by way of three major events which happen to him. First, Salāmān’s descent into the evils of carnality on account of his love for Absāl is a representation of the soul’s first condition. Later, the third condition is depicted when Salāmān repents and returns to his father’s court in order to assume his place on the royal throne. However, it is the second condition, the intervening and transformative state, during which the soul is in a state of blame al-lawwāma that is most interest to us here. This represents the pivotal stage where the soul reproaches itself (by way of the Active Intellect) for its attraction to the sensory pleasures of the temporal realm; it is also at this stage that the blaming soul receives advice on how to renounce its base instincts.

In the case of Salāmān va Absāl, this defining event occurs when the King and Sage give advice to Salāmān, symbol of the soul, for his infatuation with Absāl, symbol of the body. The King prefaces his advice to Salāmān by invoking the image of the rose and the rose-gardener to express his own sense of having been abandoned by Salāmān. Like the rose who draws its “hem,” or petals, away from the gardener’s hand, the King accuses Salāmān of forsaking him, an offense he likens to a rose that greets the gentle palm of the gardener with “the thorn of cruelty.” The notion that Salāmān has forsaken his roots is reinforced by Jāmī when, during the King’s admonishment, he interjects the story of Khusrau II Parviz (d. 628), the Sasanian king and husband of Shīrīn, whose son Shirūya

197 Jāmī, SA, 427, lines 688–702 and 718–32.
committed parricide only to die of the plague himself. The King therefore warns Salāmān against forsaking the crown of good fortune (afsar-i daulat) and kicking the throne of majesty (takht-i shaukat) like a mount in pursuit of earthly beloveds. Instead, Salāmān is advised to gallop into the hippodrome of the material world with his “Rakhsh”—Rustam’s famed horse in the Shāh-nāma epic but taken here to mean Salāmān’s tamed nafs or lower soul—under his command. He is encouraged to leap among the ranks of heroes since, as the King says, it is better to gird yourself among men worthy of the title “real man” (mardān-mard) than to lay your neck before the “womanly sword” (shamshīr-zanī). It ought to be noted that mardān, rijāl, or fityān (part of the larger Perso-Islamic concept of chivalry or javānmardi; or futuwwat) often connotes the class of “spiritual champions” who make up the ranks of Sufi saints. The King’s admonishment here is thus an appeal to Salāmān to join the fraternity of virtuous men whose society is open only to those who have subjugated their nafs. In response, Salāmān claims that the capacity to liberate himself from what he acknowledges is a “calamity” (balā) is beyond his own means. He explains that this is because, when his eyes fall upon that “full moon” (māh), namely Absāl, his face turns away from the “two worlds.” After seeing the cheeks of that “heart-pleaser,” he admits, “no good counsel (naṣīḥat) or any wise advice (pand) remains in my memory.”

In characterizing Salāmān’s preoccupation with Absāl as a calamity (balā), Jāmī is alluding to the pun on the affirmative “balā,” or “verily,” by which the Qurʾān states that human souls answered God on the primordial Day of the Covenant (rūz-i alast or rūz-i mīsāq) by agreeing to endure the tribulations (balā) of serving Him. By implication then, Salāmān

---

198 Jāmī, SA, 427, lines 703–5.
199 Jāmī, SA, 427, lines 693–96.
200 For another, more detailed, instance in which a prominent Naqshbandī author, in this case Makhdūm A’zam Ahmad Kāsānī (d. 949/1542–43), equated the untamed nafs to a horse, see Alexandre Papas, “No Sufism without Sufi Order: Rethinking Tariqa and Adab with Ahmad Kāsānī Dahbī (1461–1542),” Kyoto Bulletin of Islamic Area Studies 2, no. 1 (2008): 7–8.
201 Jāmī, SA, 427, line 700. This is a homonymic pun (tajnīs) on the phrase “a sword-wielder” (shamshīr-zanī).
203 Jāmī, SA, 427, line 713.
204 Schimmel, Mystical Dimensions of Islam, 136–37. The well-known verse (7:172) reads: And when thy Lord took from the Children of Adam, from their loins, their seed, and made
embodies the plight of humanity and the struggle of the soul to return to its primordial divine origin. Jāmī uses the parable of the fox and its cub to further demonstrate his point here. The fox, having led its cub to an enclosed orchard, cautions it to consume meagerly, for overindulging its appetite will render it incapable of escaping the jaws of a prowling guard-dog. Fully aware that its nature presupposes overindulgence, the cub resigns itself to fate, and, like Salāmān, says: "How can I carry out this plan? Greed for fruit will be like a veil (parda) over my awareness (hūsh), and I will be negligent of the bite of the dog."206

It should be noted that the excuses of Salāmān and the fox-cub serve an important didactic purpose. Implicit in them is the idea that the transformation of the nafs from the condition of ammāra bi-al-sū’ to one of mutma’inna involves an awakening, by way of the conscience (al-nafs al-lawwāma), to the reality of the soul’s powerlessness vis-à-vis an omnipotent Creator. In other words, Jāmī uses these episodes to underline the determining role of the divine actor in the soul’s progression from evil to purity. The anecdotes therefore suggest that advancing along the spiritual path requires the individual to realize that the decision to act in accordance with, or in defiance of, the reproaching soul, belongs to God alone. Furthermore, Jāmī’s verses indicate that an adept on the path should also realize that al-nafs al-lawwāma is unique to mankind and thus signifies man’s special status amongst the hierarchy of created things.

The idea of man’s superior rank is emphasized by the Sage who admonishes Salāmān for not realizing his ontological status as God’s highest manifestation on earth, and does so by invoking the creation of Adam:

Oh you, who are the sprout of the primordial garden,
The most recent image from the pen of ‘Be!’
Letter-reader of the ledger book of the seven [heavens] and the four [elements],
Decipherer of the pages of night and day,
It is you who are the keeper of the treasure of Adam,
It is you who are the comprehensive book of the cosmos.
Realize your worth and do not count yourself foolishly,
For you are superior to whatever I speak of!207

205 Jāmī, SA, 427, lines 714–17.
206 Jāmī, SA, 427, lines 716–17.
207 Jāmī, SA, 428, lines 719–22.
As the descendant of Adam, Salāmān is thus God’s perfect and final creation, the last *naqsh* issued from the primordial Pen which, acting on the divine commandment “*kun! fa fayakūn*” (Qurʾān 16:40), engraved the destinies of men on the Well-preserved Tablet (*al-lauḥ al-maḥfūẓ*).208 The Sage indicates to Salāmān that he (like all of Adam’s descendants) is the microcosm, namely a mirror which is poised at the interstices of the seven heavens and the four elements, astride the supernal light of day and night, and thus a copy (*nuskha*) therefore of the entire universe.209 Implicit in addressing Salāmān as the custodian of Adam’s treasure is the Sufi idea—preserved in a well-known *ḥadīth qudsī*—that God, in His eternal loneliness, wished to be known and therefore created man whom He graced with knowledge of His most beautiful Names (*al-asmāʿ al-ḥusnā*).210 These names, epitomized by the greatest (*ism-i aʿẓam*) and all-encompassing (*ism-i jāmiʿ*) Name, “Allāh,” are keys to the treasury of universal wisdom; according to Sufi mystical tradition, the universe is nothing but the theophanic manifestation (*tajallī*) of the Names of God.211 When Adam was taught “the names of things” (Qurʾān 2:31), he became the locus (*maẓhar*) of divine manifestation in the world. This knowledge was accordingly deposited in his heart (*dil* or *qalb*), the organ of spiritual perception akin to the mind (*khirad*), whose visionary capacity is often captured by medieval Persian writers and mystics in the metaphor of the mirror (*āyina*).212 The mirror (or eye) of the heart (*chashm-i dil*) is in constant need of “polishing,” since its capacity to reflect is distorted by the carnal soul (*nafs*), which mystics compare to dust or verdigris on a metallic mirror. This, in turn, promotes asceticism (*zuhd*) aimed at taming the soul’s base appetites by purging the *nafs* of its blameworthy attributes and replacing them with praiseworthy counterparts.213 Not surprisingly, then,

208 An allusion to the central theme of Qur’anic mythology, the act of creation when the divine Pen (al-Qalam) wrote the realities of all things (*ḥaqāʾiq*) on the Well-preserved Tablet, also considered the primordial Qurʾān.

209 Regarding how Adam refers to all men, or at least men in their state of (spiritual) perfection, see Chittick, “Perfect Man,” 144. See also Jāmī’s *Sīsilat al-zahab* where Adam is described as “a book embracing all verses and signs, his being is the goal of all goals.” Quoted in Chittick, “Perfect Man,” 155–57.


211 Chittick, “Perfect Man,” 143.

212 See Subtelny, *Le monde est un jardin*, 137–44; especially as it pertains to Rūmī’s *Maqānov* and Farid al-Din ʿAṭṭār’s (d. 617/1220) *Manṭiq al-ṭair*.

the Sage tells Salāmān to renounce the fleeting pleasures of the sensory realm and acquire true knowledge through his heart:

He whose almighty hand mixed your clay,
And who transcribed the word ‘wisdom’ onto your pure heart,
For His sake purify your breast of the image of external forms,
And turn that mirror toward Reality,
So that your breast may be the treasure of inner meanings,
Your mirror flooded with the light of gnosis!214

According to Muslim tradition, the secret of these inner meanings was not revealed even to the angels. As a consequence, their position in relation to primordial man is secondary. This belief also stems from the notion that angels do nothing but worship God in perfect obedience, whereas mankind suffers the choice, albeit within the confines of predestination, between obedience and rebellion.215 In this choice lies the superiority of man, for he accepted the burden of the divine attributes and essences as part of the amāna, or “trust” (Qurʾān 33:72), a responsibility which the heavens, earth, and mountains could not bear.216 But, like Adam, who rebelled and ate what was forbidden to him, Salāmān neglected this oath by indulging his lust for Absāl. As a consequence, the Sage implores Salāmān to veil his eyes from the face of [that] beauty (ṭalʿat-i shāhid)—taken here to mean women—and warns him against succumbing to passion (havās) and spilling his sperm (nuṭfa), since doing so will lead him beyond the pale of chastity (ḥarīm-i ʿāfiyat) and into the darkness of materiality:

In the beginning, you were of lofty rank,
Your star was in the highest heaven.
But now the lust of your carnal soul has dropped you low,
It has fettered you tightly in the nadir of the earth.217

---

214 Jāmī, SA, 428, lines 723–25.
215 Schimmel, Mystical Dimensions of Islam, 188.
216 On how this trust has been variously interpreted by Persian mystic poets, see Annemarie Schimmel, A Two-Colored Brocade: The Imagery of Persian Poetry (Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 1992), 58.
217 Jāmī, SA, 428, lines 731–32. This fall into carnal pursuits and materiality is reminiscent of several verses of Rūmī’s Maṣnūnī which are contained in “The tale of the evil Jewish king who persecuted Christians,” i.e., Maṣnūnī, bk. 1, lines 537–38:
The Spirit was bearing you to the highest celestial sphere.
[Instead] you went toward the water and clay, among the lowest
You transformed/disfigured yourself through this fall,
From that [state of] existence that was the envy of the [spiritual] intelligences.
Jāmī draws a parallel between Adam and a rooster to illustrate the depths to which the natural condition of the soul has fallen. The rooster (khurūs, in Arabic dīk) has traditionally been held in high regard by medieval Muslim writers. This is probably because of the numerous statements attributed to Muḥammad in which the bird is commended as a praiseworthy animal for its mastery of time, its daily crowing which summons believers to prayer, its capacity to see angels, and its notoriety as the animal Iblīs (the Devil) hates most. For example, one particular tradition (ḥadīth) claims that God sent Adam a white rooster with the ability to hear the tasbīḥ of the angels in order to prevent him from forgetting the times of prayer. Perhaps it is not surprising then that we find a muʾaẓẓin praising the rooster for its knowledge of time. However, the muʾaẓẓin is also puzzled as to why, with this wisdom, the rooster does not sit perched atop the divine Throne (ʿarsh), but instead frets over a hen and walks in circles around dung-heaps. The rooster meets the muʾaẓẓin’s inquiry with a confession by which Jāmī certainly intended to remind readers of Adam’s fall into corporality and his desire to be reunited with his celestial “self”:

At first there was a lofty rank for me,
But the lust of the carnal soul cast me down to this lowliness.
If I were able to pass by the carnal soul and its lust,
Why would I saunter into the pit of every dung-heap?

---

219 On the elevated position of roosters in early Islamic literature, see Roberto Tottoli, “At Cock-Crow: Some Muslim Traditions About the Rooster,” Der Islam 76 (1999): 139–47. Another report, which does not appear in the canonical collections of ḥadīth, describes how God keeps a white rooster near the divine Throne, while others purport that it is in fact an angel in disguise. For a reference, see Tottoli, “At Cock-Crow,” 142–43. It is interesting to note that in Zoroastrianism, the white rooster is a holy animal and is associated with the angel of prayer, Surūsh (Middle Persian, Sraoša or Srōšh), who, together with the rooster Parodarsh (literally, “one who sees ahead”), is believed to be responsible for rousing humanity to the revelations of Mazda. For a reference, see G. Kreyenbroek, Sraoša in the Zoroastrian Tradition (Leiden: E.J. Brill, 1985), 118 and 172. See also Boyce, History of Zoroastrianism, 3:60–63 and 3:226–27. On the significance of the rooster, as symbol of Surūsh, in Persian renditions of Muḥammad’s miʿrāj, or heavenly ascension, especially in its connection to Zoroastrian conversions to Islam in medieval Iran, see Maria E. Subtelny, “Zoroastrian Elements in the Islamic Ascension Narrative: The Case of the Cosmic Cock,” in Medieval and Modern Iranian Studies: Proceedings of the 6th European Conference of Iranian Studies, Held in Vienna on 18–22 September 2007 by the Societas Iranologica Europaeae, ed. Maria Szuppe (Paris: Association pour l’Avancement des Études Iraniennes, 2011), 193–212.
220 Tottoli, “At Cock-Crow,” 144.
221 Jāmī, SA, 428, line 734.
I would be admitted to the gardens of Paradise,
I would be a companion of the Celestial Cock.\footnote{\textsuperscript{222} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 428–29, lines 737–39.}

What emerges from the advice of the King and the Sage, along with the symbolic vignettes about Shīrūya, the fox-cub, and the rooster is a call for Salāmān to eventually achieve a state of perfection which Sufi mystical doctrine conceptualizes as “the Perfect Man.”\footnote{\textsuperscript{223} See chapter 1 of this study, note 54.} The prerequisite of attaining this lofty degree of existence is repentance, followed by the abandonment of blameworthy traits, most notably lust. These sections of \textit{Salāmān va Absāl} imply that, only through determined asceticism, can a person subdue his carnal nature and contemplate the full reality of being the \textit{khalīfat Allāh}.\footnote{\textsuperscript{224} For examples of how the institutions of kingship were used to illustrate Sufi ideas, namely the tendency to conflate the Perfect Man and the vicegerent of God with the sultan and the shadow of God respectively, see Lambton, “Sufis and the State,” 23.} As Salāmān indicates in his response to the Sage’s counsel, a paradoxical element in this process is the acknowledgment on the part of the one repenting that the act of \textit{tauba}, though done with sincerity and single-mindedness, is ultimately determined by God. We therefore find Salāmān telling the Sage:

\begin{quote}
But it is surely clear to your enlightened view
That free will is beyond me.
The power of the agent depends on the ability of the recipient,
Its agency is not the product of the producer.
Whatever it is that I have had a capacity for from the beginning,
How can I break from it in the end?
Nay, it is outside the power of the agent
To have an effect contrary to that.\footnote{\textsuperscript{225} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 429, lines 745–48.}
\end{quote}

On the surface, Salāmān’s response appears to be a stubborn act of defiance. In the context of the esoteric and mystical significance of the tale, however, it represents the soul’s awakening to the reality that its attraction to, embodiment within, and struggle to escape its material form is part of what has already been characterized as the “divine wish,” namely God’s desire that each soul should experience and thus recreate the drama of Adam. With every enlightened soul’s desire to return to its Creator, God’s wish to be known is fulfilled.

While it is impossible to determine whether Ya‘qūb and members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court acted on the mystical significance of \textit{Salāmān va Absāl}, the political significance of the story is clear. It provides a model for rulers to follow, especially in the realm of foreign policy, and serves as a reminder of the importance of repentance and the abandonment of blameworthy traits. The story also serves as a call to action for the Sufi mystic, encouraging them to strive for perfection and to contemplate the full reality of being the vicegerent of God. 

---

\textsuperscript{223} See chapter 1 of this study, note 54.
\textsuperscript{224} For examples of how the institutions of kingship were used to illustrate Sufi ideas, namely the tendency to conflate the Perfect Man and the vicegerent of God with the sultan and the shadow of God respectively, see Lambton, “Sufis and the State,” 23.
Absāl, particularly its implicit advice to rulers on how to achieve a degree of spiritual perfection akin to Sufi sainthood, we shall now turn our attention to the dynasty’s interest in Sufism. The following chapter discusses instances in which Úzûn Ḥasan and Ya’qûb associated with individual dervishes and Sufi organizations. The apparent inclination of Āq Qoyûnlû rulers toward Sufism is thus presented here in order to support the notion that Yaʿqûb and his courtiers would have at least recognized mystical elements in *Salāmān va Absāl*. 
CHAPTER THREE

THE RELIGIOUS AND POLITICAL INFLUENCES OF SUFIS AT THE ĀQ QOYİNLÜ COURTS OF ÜZÜN ḤASAN AND YA’QŪB

Oh you full moon, as long as the light of your face is the sun of Tabriz, The qibla of Jāmī, just like [Rūmī], is none other than Tabriz!

—Jāmī, Dīvān

The abovementioned verse, whereby Jāmī uses paranomasia to liken his devotion to a beloved in Āq Qoyûnlû Tabriz, taken here to be Yaʿqūb, to the devotion of Jalāl al-Dīn Rūmî for his companion and muse, Shams al-Tabrīzī (d. 645/1247), is consistant with how historical sources depict the unique relationship between the poet of Herat and Yaʿqūb, his patron in Tabriz. Their rapport, which in many respects resembled the archetypal master-disciple (murshid-murīd) relationship characteristic of medieval Sufi mystical brotherhoods, will be contextualized by exploring several facets of Āq Qoyûnlû history.

To this end, this chapter will examine the political activities of Sufi mystics—especially Naqshbandīs—at the royal court and civil administrations of Üzûn Ḥasan and his son, Yaʿqūb. Historical information about these activities will be drawn from the ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, Menākib-i Gülşenī, Raużāt al-jinān wa jannāt al-janān, and the Rashaḥāt-i ʿain al-ḥayāt. The personal correspondence between Jāmī and Yaʿqūb will also be mined for information on the nature of their relationship, the details of which will be compared with data from the official chronicle by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī (i.e., the ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī).

What emerges from these inquiries suggests that members of the Naqshbandī order, Jāmī in particular, played a more significant religio-political role in the Āq Qoyûnlû administrative and personal affairs of Yaʿqūb than has previously been acknowledged. This chapter will also demonstrate that, while Salāmān va Absāl represents the finest example of Yaʿqūb’s sustained patronage of Persian belles-lettres, it was in fact just one aspect of the interest of the Āq Qoyûnlû court in dervishes and Sufis and the esoteric or mystical writings they produced.

---

1 Jāmī, Dīvān, 221 (no. 305).
Dervishes, Sufi Mystics, and the Political Legitimacy of Üzûn Hasan

In his study of the political history of the Āq Qoyûnlû confederation, John Woods concludes that, of all the Sufi groups attached to Yaʿqûb in Tabriz, it was the Khalvatî order that enjoyed the greatest influence. Its association with the Āq Qoyûnlû began during the reign of Yaʿqûb’s father, Üzûn Hasan, when he welcomed the Khalvatî shaikh Dada ʿUmar Raushanî (d. 892/1487) to Tabriz around 864/1470. The shaikh was a native of Laranda in Anatolia and at the time was the successor (khalîfa) of Sayyid Yahyâ Shirvânî, the second founder (pîr-i thânî) of the Khalvatî order.2 ʿUmar Raushanî may have been invited by associates of Üzûn Hasan for the simple fact that he offered an alternative, more moderate form of Sufism to Üzûn Hasan, whose preoccupation with an ecstatic shaman-like dervish, named Tāj al-Mujâżîb (also referred to as Tâj al-Majûbîn) Bâbâ ʿAbd al-Raḥmân Shâmî (d. before 896/1490), must have been unsettling to the urban tradionalists in his retinue.3 It should be noted that ʿAbd al-Raḥmân Shâmî was not affiliated with any of the established Sufi mystical brotherhoods, thus making him a liability in the eyes of state officials who may have been keen to exploit the political advantages associated with patronizing leaders of the major, urban-centered ṭarîqas. Instead, as Woods suggests, ʿAbd al-Raḥmân Shâmî personified the type of popular religion practiced by the rural and tribal populations of western Iran, northern Iraq, and eastern Anatolia during the second-half of the ninth/fifteenth century.4

That Üzûn Hasan held ʿAbd al-Raḥmân Shâmî in high esteem is indicated by an allusion in the ‘Ālam-ārâ-yi amînî, where in praising Üzûn Hasan’s patronage of Sufis, Khunjî-Iṣfahâni uses the term majûbî, which is a word-play on ʿAbd al-Raḥmân Shâmî’s laqab, Tâj al-Mujâżîb:

That majestic presence (Ūzûn Hasan), his blessed habit was such that he joined the eye of insight from every sitting corner and with a mighty wave was raising the heads [of those] without heads and feet (i.e., Sufis). He was

---

3 Woods, Aqquyunlu, 141. Despite being perhaps the single best source for biographical information on ʿAbd al-Raḥmân Shâmî, the Raużât al-jinân simply says that he died during the reign of Yaʿqûb. For a reference, see Karbalâʾi-Tabrîzî, Raużât al-jinân 1:472.
4 Woods, Aqquyunlu, 83.
favoring every ecstatic (majzūbī) for beloved places and every frenzied lover (shūrīda, i.e., Sufi) was seeing the light of [his] eyes.5

The Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya, also contains many references to ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī. Among them is the description by Țıhrānī-Iṣfahānī of a bizarre incident in which an entranced ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī leapt atop a banquet table and predicted Üzūn Hasan’s victory in a major battle.6

The strength and longevity of the relationship between Üzūn Hasan and ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī is reflected in a document dated about fifteen years later (876/1471) in which Üzūn Hasan awarded ʿAbd al-Raḥmān a suyūrghāl.7 As with most suyūrghāl documents, the conditions of this grant would have awarded the beneficiary, in this case ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī, partial or complete immunity from certain taxes and would theoretically have ensured that such land(s) remained free from administrative and judicial interference by the central government. Under this arrangement, agents of the state were expressly prohibited from trespassing upon such lands (a condition typically stipulated in the circumlocution: “qalam va qadam kutāh va kashāda dāshta”).8 In the introduction to the suyūrghāl, Üzūn Hasan credits Sufis with his rise to power:

---

5 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 266–67; Woods, Aqquyunlu, 252 n. 78.
6 According to the Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya, while encamped north of Ruha at Akziyarat in 861/1456, Üzūn Hasan held a banquet for officers of his royal body guard and confederate chiefs in order to discuss the likelihood of an invasion by their Qarā Qoyūnlū foes. Suddenly, ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī burst in and snatched up the sword of an officer. He struck a serving-bowl, unfastened his waistband and, in a symbolic gesture of investiture, bound the sword and belt to the waist of Üzūn Hasan. ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī then swiped a goblet from an astonished guest, passed it to Üzūn Hasan, and ensured all present that divine assistance would intercede on behalf of the Āq Qoyūnlū by proclaiming, “Drink and do not fear! For all shall be yours!” For a reference, see Țıhrānī-Iṣfahānī, Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya 1:253; and Woods, Aqquyunlu, 82–83.
7 A description of the unpublished suyūrghāl document can be found in Nazan Ölçer, Kilims [Türk ve İslâm Eserleri Müzesi], trans. William A. Edmonds (Beyölu-İstanbul: Eren, 1989), no. 2200. For information on the Bābā Maḥmūd hospice erected in honor of bābā ʿAbd al-Raḥmān in Mardin, see Nejat Göyünç, Onaltıncı yüzyılda Mardin sancağı (İstanbul: İstanbul Edebiyat Fakültesi Basimevi, 1969), 119–21.
From the dawn of the morning of our sultanate and the first appearance of the signs of our caliphate, we have recognized that the doors of victory and conquest which were opened upon the countenance of our good fortune, and the portents of ascendancy and prosperity which became evident and manifest upon the pages of the felicitous circumstances of our aspirations, were due to the benevolence of the sublime spiritual energies (himam-i ‘alāyya) of the dervishes and to the beneficence of their lofty fervor.9

Other Sufi mystical figures are also mentioned in connection with Üzün Hasan’s rise to power. For example, according to the Raużāt al-jinān wa jannāt al-janān, the Ḥusainī sayyid ‘Abd al-Ghaffār Ṭabāṭabā’ī (d. ca. 895/1490) had prophesized Üzün Hasan’s conquest of Azerbaijan well before its occurrence in 872/1467.10 In fact, on the eve of the conquest, Üzün Hasan is reported to have dreamed that all the dervishes and saints of Azerbaijan had assembled in order to seat him on the throne of Tabriz.11 As a reward for his good auguries, Üzün Hasan named ‘Abd al-Ghaffār Ṭabāṭabā’ī to the office of shaikh al-Islām of Azerbaijan—a post later inherited by his son Mīr Sirāj al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Vahhāb (d. ca. 930/1524).12 The appreciation of Üzün Hasan for ‘Abd al-Ghaffār also manifested itself in grants of land. For example, Jean Aubin identified ‘Abd al-Ghaffār Ṭabāṭabā’ī as the Rafīʿ al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Ghaffār, who is named as the beneficiary of a hereditary suyūrghāl in the district of Rūdiqāt in a farmān issued by Üzün Hasan in 875/1471.13

Support for Üzün Hasan’s claim to rule came from other quarters as well. Amīr Badr al-Dīn Aḥmad Lālaʾī (d. 912/1506), the founder of the Azerbaijani

---

9 Quoted and translated in Woods, Aqquyunlu, 83. The word himam, which Woods translates as “efforts,” is the plural form of himmat, and thus an important Sufi technical term related to the idea that Sufis could effect changes in fortune.


branch of the Kubravī order, acknowledged the legitimacy of Ūzūn Ḥasan in 876/1471 when he publicly declared that Qur’anic verse (4:59) exhorting believers to “Obey God, the Prophet, and those in authority among you (minkum)” applied to Ūzūn Ḥasan.14 Āḥmad Lālaʾī based his endorsement on the fact that, according to the abjad system of Arabic letter numerology, the phrase “minkum” (among you) has the same numerical value (150) as Ūzūn Ḥasan’s name, “Ḥasan Beg.”15 The Āq Qoyūnlū ruler also won the blessings of Shāh Naʿīm al-Dīn Nī’mat Allāh al-Thānī (d. ca. 906/1501), the great-great grandson of the founder of the Nī’mat Allāhī order, Shāh Nī’mat Allāh Nūr al-Dīn b. ‘Abd Allāh Vālī (d. 834/1431). According to several historical sources, Shāh Nī’mat Allāh II expressed his support for the regime of Ūzūn Ḥasan by consecrating the silk covering (mahmil) for the Kaʿba that the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler dispatched to the Hijaz.16

16 Ṭihrānī-Īsfahānī, Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya, 476, 485, 553–54, and 560–61. On the religious-political significance of the Āq Qoyūnlū mahmil, see Woods, Aqquyunlu, 107–8. It is interesting to note that Shāh Nī’mat Allāh II initially refused to recognize the political legitimacy of Ūzūn Ḥasan and sided with Sulṭān-Abū Saʿīd during the ill-fated campaign by the Timurid ruler against the Āq Qoyūnlū. Rather than malign the Nī’mat Allāhī shaikh, Ūzūn Ḥasan invited him to Shiraz where the ruler and his retinue had decamped. According to a hagiography composed by a descendant of Shāh Nī’mat Allāh II, the invitation of Ūzūn Ḥasan was prompted by rumors that the wife of Nī’mat Allāh II, who happened to be a Qarā Qoyūnlū princes, had hidden a large cache of jewels and other valuables at the couple’s domicile in Taft. Shāh Nī’mat Allāh II was summoned to the royal majlīs whereupon Ūzūn Ḥasan appointed him to lead the assembly in prayer. When Shāh Nī’mat Allāh II recited the testimony of faith (shahāda) Úzūn Hasan suddenly collapsed. He awoke one hour later and told Nī’mat Allāh II that the Prophet had appeared to him in a dream and scolded him, saying, “We made you ruler and we made kings submit to you, and yet you, with your lies, have caused problems for our child (i.e., Shāh Nī’mat Allāh II)!” The vision so shocked Ūzūn Hasan that he allegedly confessed his true intentions to the shaikh and apologized. As a recent study has suggested, this potentially apocryphal account was written well into the reign of the Safavids and may therefore represent an attempt to discredit the Āq Qoyūnlū while also erasing any suspicion that Shāh Nī’mat Allāh II maintained relations with the descendants of Ūzūn Ḥasan. For a fuller description of the preceding episode, see Michael Paul Connell, “The Nimatullahi Sayyids of Taft: A Study of the Evolution of a Late Medieval Iranian Sufi Tariqah,” (PhD diss., Harvard University, 2004), 127–28.
Despite his interest in a number of individual mystics and dervishes, however, Üzün Hasan's patronage of Sufis does not appear to have been indiscriminate. Evidence of this is contained in a letter that Üzün Hasan addressed to the Ottoman sultan, Bāyazīd II, in Rabīʿ I 875/September 1470. In the letter, which was clearly intended to promote the nascent Āq Qoyūnlū confederation as worthy defenders of the *shariʿa*, Üzün Hasan mentions the achievements his administration had made in abolishing such abominable practices as sodomy, prostitution, wine-drinking, and gambling. Üzün Hasan also claims that his forces successfully eradicated local heretical and antinomian dervish groups, specifically the Qalandarīs and Ḥaidarīs. If true, such a position tempers the view expressed by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī that Üzün Hasan “favor[ed] every ecstatic.”

The Role of the Akhlāq-i Jalālī

It appears that, in recognizing the political importance of Sufi mystics, Üzün Hasan was first and foremost upholding the advice given to him by Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī in the *Akhlāq-i Jalālī*. As the chief religious figure and advisor of the Āq Qoyūnlū empire, Davānī advocated the creation of a polity based on what Woods has dubbed a “Turko-Iranian Sunni-Sufi synthesis.”

The emphasis on Sufism is evident in a chapter of the *Akhlāq-i Jalālī* entitled, “On the government of kingship and the proper comportment of kings.” In it, Davānī classifies society in a hierarchical sequence that, while according a high status to representatives of normative Islam, nevertheless gives the highest ranking to their mystical counterparts, the Sufis. At the top of this schema are those people Davānī says have a good natural disposition (*bi-ṭabʿ-i khair*), specifically scholars of the religious law (*ʿulamā-yi sharīʿa*), the leaders of the Sufi brotherhoods (*mashāʾikh-i*...
According to Davānī, members of this last group are not only the elite worshippers of God, they also represent the goal of existence (ghayat-i ījād). In fact, the other divisions of society, he writes, have entered the “inn of being” (miḥmānkhāna-i vujūd), which is to say the material world, as intruders (ṭufail). Considering such opinions, it is hardly surprising that elsewhere in the same chapter Davānī posits that the well-being of the ruler (i.e., Üzūn Ḥasan) depends on receiving help and good counsel from these elite holy men:

The master of good fortune finds security from the scorching wind of the calamities of fate, [when] he finds refuge in the pure interior (bāṭin-i pāk) of the pure hearts (ṣāfī dil) of the dervishes, and he assists in attaining the goal of the intentions and desire of those with spiritual power (himmat). For, at the time of facing journeys and undertaking dangers and risks, having sought a shield from the thoughts of the residents of the mosques and dwellers in Sufi hospices (sākinān-i khānaqāh), the crown of rulership finds existence on the head of the man who seeks direction from the minds of the crown-bestowing headless and footless ones (i.e., Sufis). The throne of the caliphate is the permanent residence of a king who begs divine grace (faiż) from the minds of the beggars with puissant hearts.23

It is interesting to note that this passage is found (almost verbatim) in the introduction to Davānī’s ‘Arż-i sipāh-i Üzūn Ḥasan (usually referred to as the ‘Arż-nāma), which he wrote as an eyewitness of the review of local civil and military officers in Fars in 881/1476. Also noteworthy is the inclusion of the term himmat. As has already been mentioned, himmat, or the creative power of the heart, had special relevance for the Naqshbandīs, who used the term to denote the capacity of the shaikh to control the psychological state (ḥāl) of a disciple. Its use here, while doing little to establish either Davānī or Üzūn Ḥasan as Naqshbandīs, does at

---

21 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 139.
22 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 139–40. This fourth “glimmer” has been rendered into English by Carl W. Ernst, “Flashes of Illumination on Praiseworthy Ethics, or, the Jalālian Ethics, Akhlāq-i jalālī: The Fourth Flash, On the Politics of Kingship and the Manners of Kings,” in An Anthology of Philosophy in Persia: Volume Four, From the School of Illumination to Philosophical Mysticism, ed. Seyyed Hossein Nasr and Mehdi Aminrazavi, with the assistance of M. R. Jozí (London: I. B. Tauris in association with The Institute of Ismaili Studies, 2012), 119–33.
23 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 135–36.
24 Davānī, ‘Arż-i sipāh-i Üzūn Ḥasan, 3. The fact that the review was dedicated to Sultān-Khalil is another indication that the advice of the author, namely that the Āq Qoyūnlū patronize Sufi mystics, was not limited to Üzūn Ḥasan.
least suggest that the lexicon of Sufism was known at the highest echelons of the Āq Qoyūnlū administration.

In this same section of the Akhlāq-i Jalālī, Davānī goes so far as to indirectly associate Īzūn Ḥasan with Khiḍr, the protean guide or “Green Man” whom Islamic legend identifies as the mysterious companion of Moses and conveyor of divinely inspired knowledge (Q 18:65–82). After expounding on the qualities of human perfection (kamāl-i insānī), Davānī implicitly equates Īzūn Ḥasan’s command of the virtues of perfect kingship with the unique ability of Khiḍr to perceive the divine mysteries:

[The insight of the ruler] has acquired the subtle customs of the sultanate, the realities of the proper conduct of having dominion and governing, the secret obscurities of wisdom, and the extraordinary commandments of religion, from divinely-inspired instruction (talqīn-i mulhim-i qudsī) and the gift of divine emanation (faiż-i fażūl), without the intermediary of acquired learning and human effort, his sacred soul has attained the lofty rank of “And whom we had taught knowledge from Our own presence” (Q 18:65) and origin.

According to mystical tradition, Khiḍr was viewed as the archetypal Sufi shaikh who, in addition to aiding wayfarers and pilgrims, initiated masterless aspirants into the mystical path. His appearance here is interesting, especially in connection with the term talqīn, for in addition to its more mundane meaning, talqīn is a Sufi technical term for the spiritual

---


26 For another instance of a Persian poet equating an earthly ruler, in this case Fakhr al-Dīn Bahramshāh (d. ca. 617/1220), the Mengüçek sultan of Erzinjan, with Khiḍr, see Niẓāmi Ganjavi, Kulliyāt-i Khamsa-i Ḥakīm Niẓāmi Ganjavi. Makhzan al-asrār, Khusrau va Shīrūn, Lailā va Majnūn, Haft paikar, Iskandar-nāma (Tehran: Mu’assasa-i Âmir Kābir, 1351/1972), 26. In a similar vein, certain Mongol-era writers equated Chinggis Khān (d. 624/1227) with Khiḍr. To be specific, some Sufis justified the havoc wreaked by Chinggis Khān and the Mongols as the manifestation of the will of God which, much like the destructive acts of Khiḍr in the Qurʾān (e.g., scuttling a boat, murdering a youth, and toppling a wall), ultimately had a hidden and justifiable purpose. On this topic, see Devin DeWeese, “Stuck in the Throat of Chingīz Khān: Envisioning the Mongol Conquests in Some Sufi Accounts from the 14th to 17th Centuries,” in History and Historiography of Post-Mongol Central Asia and the Middle East: Studies in Honor of John E. Woods, ed. Judith Pfeiffer, Sholeh A. Quinn, and Ernest Tucker (Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz, 2006), 36–42.

27 Davānī, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 147. The entire verse (Q 18:65) reads, “So they found one of our servants, on whom We had bestowed mercy from Ourselves and whom We had taught Knowledge from Our own presence (ʿallamnāhu min ladunna ʿilman).”

28 Schimmel, Mystical Dimensions, 105–6.
impartations of a master to his disciple, especially with regard to the performance of ḥikr. For Naqshbandis, talqīn was at the core of their unique rites of initiation. According to Naqshbandi tradition, Muhammad gave Abū Bakr instruction (talqīn) in the performance of a silent form of ḥikr (Ḥikr-i ḫaṭī) when the two eluded Meccan forces in a cave during the Prophet’s hījra. This practice has historically distinguished Naqshbandis who justify it by pointing to the Qur’anic (7:55) expression: “Call on your Lord in humility and in private (khufyatan).” What is more, Naqshbandi tradition maintains that the order’s adoption of the silent ḥikr was based on instructions (talqīn) received by the Khvājavānī forefather of the order, ‘Abd al-Khāliq Ghijduvānī, when he was reportedly visited by Khiḍr in a dream-vision. While mentioning Khiḍr and talqīn in connection with his description of Ūzūn Ḥasan’s unique qualifications to rule does not imply that he was a Naqshbandi initiate, it does nevertheless lead one to suspect that the influence of the order at court was greater than has heretofore been acknowledged. Finally, it is interesting to note that Ūzūn Ḥasan was not the only Āq Qoyunlū ruler metioned by Davānī in connection with Khiḍr. In the ‘Arż-nāma, Davānī attributes the agricultural prosperity of Fars to the mere presence of its Āq Qoyunlū governor, Sulṭān-Khalil. Refering to him as the “Second Solomon,” Davānī describes Sulṭān-Khalil as a luminous, “Jesus-like” figure, capable of breathing life into the ancient ruins of Persepolis, known as Takht-i Jamshīd, and compares him to the immortal Khiḍr, who “makes everything surrounding him verdant.”

---

29 In a related sense, talqīn also refers to the Muslim tradition of reciting “La ilāha illā Allāh.” It should be noted that Davānī dedicated a mystical treatise explicating the hidden significance of the attestation (“There is no god but God”) to Ūzūn Ḥasan. The first section gives a literal interpretation of the utterance, while the second is an esoteric exposition based on the “concealed sciences” (‘ulūm-i bāṭinī) of “unveiling” (kashfī) and “witnessing” (shuhūdī). For a published edition of the treatise, see Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī, Tahlīliyya (sharḥ-i lā ilāh ilā Allāh), ed. Firishta Farīdūnī Furūzanda (Tehran: Sāzmān-i Intishārāt-i Khāhān, 1373/1994). See also Barakāt, Kitābshīnāsī-yi maktab-i falsafī-yi shīrāz, 78.

30 Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, 168.

31 An event related in Qur’ān 9:40.


33 Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, 14 and 117. In the Naqshbandi literature, Ghijduvānī is generally referred to as sar-silsila-i khvājavān (“the first link in the chain of the Khvājavān”) and is credited with formulating a set of eight spiritual principles (kalimāt-i qudsiyā) that later became the hallmarks of Naqshbandi doctrine, namely: hāsh dar dam, nazr dar qadam, safar dar vaṭan, khalvat dar anjuman, yād kard, bāz gasht, nigāh dāsht, and yād dasht.

CHAPTER THREE

*Khalvatī Influence on Āq Qoyūnlū Affairs*

While in many cases it is necessary to make inferences from the historical sources regarding the role of the Naqshbandis at the Āq Qoyūnlū court, no such measures are needed when discussing the Khalvatī order. As mentioned earlier, several members of Khalvatī ʿtariqa wielded considerable influence over successive Āq Qoyūnlū administrations. Foremost among these influential holy men was Ibrāhim Gulshānī (d. 940/1534), whose thirty-eight year-long association with the Āq Qoyūnlū spanned the reigns of Üzūn Hasan, Sultān-Khalīl, and Yaʿqūb.35

First introduced to the court by Maulānā Ḥasan, the chief magistrate (*qāżī al-qużāt*) of Üzūn Ḥasan and himself a mystic, Gulshānī was soon appointed to the prestigious position of keeper of the royal signature seal (*tauqīʿī*).36 According to the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī*, a hagiographical account of the life of Gulshānī, he quickly gained the favor of Üzūn Ḥasan and was dispatched to conclude a peace treaty with Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā in Herat where he became acquainted with Jāmī.37 Acting on the orders of Üzūn Hasan, Maulānā Ḥasan then sent Gulshānī to escort the pre-eminent Khalvatī shaikh, Dada ʿUmar Raushānī, from Qarabagh.
to the the Āq Qoyūnlū court in Tabriz.\textsuperscript{38} Becoming a disciple (\textit{murīd}) of ‘Umar Raushanī, Gulshanī assiduously attended the latter’s sermons in Tabriz and was eventually designated his successor (\textit{khalīfa}).

In addition to Ibrāhīm Gulshanī, it is very likely that ‘Umar Raushanī counted members of the royal family among his disciples. For example, the principal wife of Ūzūn Ḥasan, Saljūqshāh bt. Kūr Muḥammad Begum (d. 896/1490), reportedly made a pious endowment (\textit{vaqf}) in favor of ‘Umar Raushanī by granting him a hospice (\textit{zāviya}) near Bāgh-i Shamāl, which came to be known as the Muẓaffariyya.\textsuperscript{39} Moreover, the \textit{Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī} states that ‘Umar Raushanī initiated Ūzūn Ḥasan’s brother Idrīs into the Khalvātī order.\textsuperscript{40}

Besides members of the royal household, the Khalvātīs had supporters at the highest levels of the civil and military administration. One such individual was Sayyid ‘Alā’ al-Dīn ‘Ali Baihaqī, who eventually relinquished his position as chief magistrate (\textit{qāżī al-qużāt}) for Ūzūn Ḥasan so that he could pursue Khalvātī-related activities full-time.\textsuperscript{41} His absence from official duties must not have lasted long, however, for according to the \textit{Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī}, the newly-enthroned Sultān-Khalīl sent ‘Alī Baihaqī to Istanbul with the news of the death of his father, a gesture aimed at improving relations with the Ottomans.\textsuperscript{42}

Not everyone, it seems, took a liking to ‘Umar Raushanī’s brand of mysticism or his influence. During the reign of Ya‘qūb, the Khalvātī shaikh was brought before Qāżī ʿĪsā in Tabriz, and according to the \textit{Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī}, he was made to defend himself against charges that he was a “Fuṣūṣī,” that is, an adherent of the complex metaphysics expounded by Ibn al-ʿArabī in his \textit{Fuṣūṣ al-ḥikam}. The accusations were apparently

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{39} Martin, “Short History,” 279. For a brief description of the Muẓaffariyya hospice, which used to be attached to the (Great) Blue Mosque in Tabriz, see ‘Abd al-ʿAlā’ Karang, Tārīkh-i Tabrīz, ed. and trans. Vladimir Minorsky (Tabriz: Kitābfurūshī-yi Tihrān, 1958), 40 and 85 n. 1. According to the \textit{Dānishmandān-i Āẕarbāijān}, a modern study on important figures from Azerbaijan’s past, the mother of Ya‘qūb (i.e., Saljūqshāh Begum) was especially inclined (\textit{i{}rādat-i khāṣṣī}) to ‘Umar Raushanī. For a reference, see Muḥammad ‘Ali-Khān Tarbiyat, \textit{Dānishmandān-i Āẕarbāijān} (Tabriz: Maṭba‘a-i Majlis, 1314/1935), 320.
\item \textsuperscript{40} Gulshanī, \textit{Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī}, 48.
\item \textsuperscript{41} Karbalā’ī-Tabrīzī, \textit{Raużāt al-jinān} 1:476–77.
\item \textsuperscript{42} Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, \textit{ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī} (1957), 29. In addition to the administrative title of \textit{ṣadr}, ‘Ali Baihaqī is referred to in the ‘Arz-sipāh-i Ūzūn Ḥasan as a “great spiritual master” (\textit{mashāyikh-i kibār}). For a discussion on the mystically symbolic role he played at a civil and military parade in Fars, see Melikian-Chirvani, “Le Royaume de Salomon,” 28.
\end{itemize}
made by strict exotericists among the 'ulamā’ who wanted to brand ‘Umar Raushanī an infidel. Ibrāhīm Gulshanī apparently persuaded Qāżī ‘Īsā to dismiss the accusations against his spiritual master and forced those who had initiated the investigation to ask ‘Umar Raushanī for his forgiveness. Besides illustrating that the writings of Ibn al-‘Arabī remained controversial in late ninth/fifteenth century Iran and that his ideas may have been a flashpoint for tensions between the strict traditionalists and the Sufis, the incident also suggests that Gulshanī exercised considerable influence over members of the Āq Qoyūnlū administration.

Another indication of his influence was an incident described in the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī* in which Gulshanī stifled a plot by the Türkmen ‘ulamā’ (terākime ‘ulemāsinden) who did not speak Persian, to have the Persian-speaking Qāżī ‘Īsā deposed as Ya’qūb’s vazīr. According to the report, thirty-four religious scholars convinced the amīr, Sulaimān Beg Bījan (d. 897/1492), to ensure that Qāżī ‘Īsā was ousted. The conflict was resolved when Gulshanī secured the appointment of a Turkish-speaking scribe (kātib) to act as a liaison between the Turkish ‘ulamā’ and Qāżī ‘Īsā. It should be pointed out that the incident, which suggests that there were serious ethno-linguistic tensions between Turkish and Persian members of the religious intelligentsia, does not appear in the other

---


45 Another example of Qāżī ‘Īsā’s intervention on behalf of ‘Umar Raushanī and Ibrāhīm Gulshanī occurred during a violent dispute over the estate of the late Raushanī. Shortly after the death of Raushanī in 892/1487, state officials tortured his children in an effort to extort their inheritance, and obtained some 170,000 karaca akça in the process. When news of the attack reached Ibrāhīm Gulshanī, he raced from Tabriz to Ya’qūb’s winter encampment (qishlaq) in Qarabagh and presented the case to Qāżī ‘Īsā who conferred with the ruler. As compensation, Ya’qūb dispatched a high ranking Turkic commander who, in addition to returning the inheritance, presented the aggrieved descendants of Raushanī with lavish gifts and textiles. Assurances were made that fiscal authorities would never again interfere with the family or the regular pension (razqat) granted to them by the state. The episode is contained in Gulshānī, *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī*, 176–78. See also Dunietz, “Qāḍī Ḥusayn Maybūdī,” 139.

46 Dunietz, “Qāḍī Ḥusayn Maybūdī,” 137.
historical sources, leaving open the possibility that the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī* exaggerated the influence of Gulshanī (and thus of the Khalvatī) over Āq Qoyūnlū administrative affairs.

**Shaikh Ibrāhīm Gulshanī at the Court of Yaʿqūb**

The Persian historical sources have little to say about Yaʿqūb's personal or political involvement with Sufi mystics. For instance, the official account of his reign by Khunjī-İṣfahānī is virtually silent about his patronage of Sufis or his personal interest in mysticism. It is only in the *Raużāt al-jinān* by Karbalā’ī-Tabrīzī that we find an indication that Yaʿqūb made frequent visits to the *zāviya* of ʿUmar Raushanī. Furthermore, the relative dearth of royal edicts granting administrative and fiscal immunities to prominent Sufis could be an indication that the centralizing measures undertaken by Qāżī ʿĪsā to curb all such awards did not spare members of the Sufi elite.

At the same time, however, the very issue of recouping state revenues by cancelling *suyūrghāls* gave the author of the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī* a chance to recount the conflict between Qāżī ʿĪsā and Gulshanī over these very grants. Apparently, Gulshanī personally warned Yaʿqūb of the impending peril that would face the empire if the bureaucratic interests of Qāżī ʿĪsā were to supersede what the hagiographer of Gulshanī characterizes as “the principles of the *sharīʿa*.” This despite the fact that the administrative measures proposed by Qāżī ʿĪsā were themselves part of a larger “back to the *sharīʿa*” campaign of fiscal and social reform. Remarkably, the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī* suggests that Gulshanī successfully persuaded Yaʿqūb to make up for the deficit in the treasury by repossessing the private incomes of members of the civil and military establishment. Although no other historical sources confirm whether this unprecedented idea was actually implemented, the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī* nevertheless insists that Yaʿqūb and prominent figures within the Āq Qoyūnlū administration relinquished one-third of their incomes for a period of several years.

---

49 Dunietz, “Qāḍī Ḥusayn Maybudī,” 140.
50 Gulshanī, *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī*, 120–21, 111–12, and 113–14; and Woods, *Aqquyunlū*, 140–41. The absence of any supporting documents, coupled with the fact that Qāżī ʿĪsā eventually initiated sweeping reforms to the *suyūrghāl* system in 894–96/1489–90, indicates that the solution described in the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī* was ignored, or at most, short-lived.
The influence of Ibrāhīm Gulshanī over Ya'qūb, Qāzī ʿĪsā, and Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd is reflected in a *mašnāvī* which is attributed to Ḥakīm al-Dīn Idrīs Bidlīsī (d. 926/1520), Ya'qūb's secretary (*muvaqqiʿ*) in the *divān* and scribe of royal orders (*nishānchī*), and cited in the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūlsenī*:51

Who is the spiritual guide of that ancient path?
Shaikh Ibrahīm, master of the dawn.
Through his respirations Gulshanī is the one who
Made the garden of the world of Egypt like the garden of Paradise.
At that time he was the master of righteous guidance,
For his sake, Shāh Yaʿqūb was obedient (*munqād*),
[And Qāzī] ʿĪsā [Sāvajī] and Najm [al-Dīn Masʿūd] were in his service.52

Curiously, despite his close relationship with Ya'qūb, Gulshanī is not mentioned in Khunjī-Iṣfahānī’s history. The omission of Gulshanī is even more conspicuous in light of the fact that approximately one-half of Gulshanī’s hagiographical work consists of anecdotes involving Ya'qūb and senior members of his court, especially Qāzī ʿĪsā. This could be explained by the fact that the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūlsenī* exaggerates the influence of Gulshanī in royal affairs over other Āq Qoyūnlū figures, including Ya'qūb himself.53 Exaggerations notwithstanding, the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūlsenī* does at least suggest that Ya'qūb engaged in morally questionable


53 Woods, *Aqquyunlu*, 229. Omission aside, Gulshanī was reportedly present as Ya'qūb took the field and commanded his ghāzī warriors against infidel forces at the siege of Akhisqa (Akhal-Tsikhe) in 890/1485. The raid apparently yielded much booty, which Ya'qūb distributed to members of the religious establishment of whom we might adduce Gulshanī was a constituent member. This is not to suggest however, that Ibrāhīm Gulshanī willingly accepted royal favors; for according to the *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūlsenī*, Gulshanī refused a *suyūrghāl* on private crown lands (*khāṣṣa*) in Barda’a. Gulshanī’s refusal was greeted with disbelief, a view most vociferously expressed by Qāzī ʿĪsā’s elder brother, ‘Ali Sāvajī, who reportedly ridiculed the shaikh for his eccentricity. For a description of the above-mentioned siege, see Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, 43–44, and 218–25. On the reaction to Gulshanī’s refusal of the *suyūrghāl*, see Dunietz, “Qāḍī Ḥusayn Maybudi,” 141.
conduct, which apparently prompted Gulshanī to ask that Yaʿqūb repent for his deeds.54

_Naqshbandīs at the Āq Qoyūnlū Court, Tabriz, and Its Environs_

By the second half of the ninth/fifteenth century, the Naqshbandī order had emerged as the preeminent Sufi brotherhood in Timurid Khurasan and Transoxiana.55 The ascendency of the order and the political influence it exerted on members of the Timurid ruling family were largely the result of the propagative efforts of the spiritual leader of the ṭarīqa, ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār.56 As Algar has demonstrated, several disciples of ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār, most notably Khvāja Muḥammad Amīn Bulghārī (d. before 902/1497), Bābā Nīʿmat Allāh b. Shaikh Maḥmūd Nakhchivānī (d. 920/1514), and Mīr Sirāj al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Vahhāb, who was Yaʿqūb’s shaikh_al-Islām, are known to have resided in Tabriz during the heyday of the Āq Qoyūnlū.57

It is interesting to note, however, that their proximity to the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler did not translate into an attempt on the part of ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār and the Naqshbandīs to replicate in Tabriz the political influence the order had achieved in the Timurid domains. If anything, the three Ahrarian Naqshbandīs appear to have shared a disinclination to openly propagate the ṭarīqa.58 Instead, Bulghārī, Nakhchivānī, and ‘Abd al-Vahhāb are noted for their relations with leaders of the Kubravī and Khabvāti brotherhoods. For example, according to the _Raużāt al-jinān_, Bulghārī often accompanied the Kubravī shaikh badr al-Dīn Aḥmad Lālaʾī and was authorized to use Badr al-Dīn’s personal retreat at a _khānaqāh_

---

55 For a detailed examination of the Naqshbandī political activities and geographic distribution during the ninth/fifteenth century see, Paul, _Politische und soziale Bedeutung_, passim.
56 On the impact of the “grand missionary effort” of ‘Ubaid Allāh Aḥrār, see Le Gall, _Culture of Sufism_, 20.
near the village of Darvīshābād. For his part, Mahmūd Nakhchivānī (also referred to in the sources as Shaikh ‘Alvān) enjoyed collegial relations with ʿUmar Raushānī and reportedly visited the Khalvātī master on his deathbed. By all indications, Nakhchivānī was given to withdrawal and social isolation, which would have been at odds with the Naqshbandī tenet of khalvat dar anjuman. Instead, his Naqshbandī orientation found expression in the composition of an Arabic exegesis of the Qurʾān and in the commentaries he wrote on such well-known Sufi works as Fuṣūṣ al-ḥikam by Ibn al-ʿArabī, Lamaʿāt by Fakhr al-Dīn ʿIrāqī (d. 688/1289), and Gulshan-i rāz by Mahmūd Shabīstārī (d. ca. 720/1320).

It is also interesting to note that the third disciple of ʿUbaid Allāh Ahrār, Sirāj al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Vahhāb, also does not appear to have used his official position as shaikh al-Islām to propagate the order. According to Hamid Algar, this could be explained by the fact that the true sympathies of ʿAbd al-Vahhāb were with Twelver Shīʿism. Algar points to the eagerness with which ʿAbd al-Vahhāb embraced the rule of Shāh Ismāʿīl Ṣafavī (d. 930/1524) and the antagonism he showed Ibrāhīm Gulshanī on account of what the Menākīb-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūlṣenī describes as the “rāfīzī” (i.e., Shīʿite) tendencies of ʿAbd al-Vahhāb. The mutual animosity boiled over at court when Gulshanī sabotaged an attempt by ʿAbd al-Vahhāb and his protégé Qāżī Ḥusain Maibūdī (d. ca. 910/1505), a former student of Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī and chief qāżī of Yazd, to undermine his explication of the Qurʾānic verse (2:152) “Remember Me and I will remember you” to Yaʿqūb.


60 Algar, “Naqshbandīs and Safavids,” 8.

61 All three works survive as MSS. Also extant are the treatise on existence (vujūd) by Mahmūd Nakhchivānī and a general tract on Sufism. For references, see Algar, “Naqshbandīs and Safavids,” 34 n.12.


63 For a full discussion of the ambiguous loyalties of ʿAbd al-Vahhāb, see Algar, “Naqshbandīs and Safavids,” 12–13.

64 Gulshanī, Menākīb-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūlṣenī, 104–6; and Algar, “Naqshbandīs and Safavids,” 10. It is worth mentioning that the collected letters of Qāżī Ḥusain Maibūdī include an epistle addressed to Khvāja Muhammad Yaḥyā, who was the son of ʿUbaid Allāh Ahrār, which indicates that Maibūdī intended to join the Naqshbandī order. For a reference see, Algar, “Naqshbandīs and Safavids,” 35 n.15; and Aubin, “Études safavides,” 55.
It is tempting to speculate that the rivalry between Gulshanī and ‘Abd al-Vahhāb may have reflected the competition between the Khalvatī and Naqshbandī orders for disciples and royal patronage. However, there is nothing in the sources to suggest that such rivalry existed. In fact, the Raużāt al-jinān, which is considered to be the most reliable source of information on Sufis in pre-Safavid Tabriz, describes the abovementioned khānaqāh of Badr al-Dīn Aḥmad Lālaʾī as an ecumenical venue where prominent Sufis, irrespective of ṭariqa affiliation, gathered and retreated for the purpose of mystical contemplation. Among those who attended such retreats were ‘Umar Raushanī, the aforementioned Khvāja Bulghārī, and the intriguing figure of Ṣunʿ Allāh Kūzakunānī, who unlike Bulghārī, was a Naqshbandī from a non-Ahrarian lineage and who actively undertook the propagation of the order in Azerbaijan. With respect to the khānaqāh’s ecumenical outlook, the Raużāt al-jinān says:

Many of the excellent and pious ones, dervishes, shaikhs, ʿulamāʾ, grandees, and common folk made appearances at that place, such as: Khvāja ‘Abd al-ʿAzīz Jāmī; Khvāja Muḥammad Amīn Bulghārī; Maulānā ‘Alī Rūmī; Darvīsh Yaʿqūb Rūmī; Dada ʿUmar Rūmī (i.e., ʿUmar Raushanī); Maulānā ʿṢunʿ Allāh Kūzakunānī; Khvāja ‘Ali Kūjujī, and others. That heart-ravishing place is in reality the place of divine emanation (faʿiż) and purity. The faʿiż of the excellent ones’ secret arrival is manifested and made apparent in that place. [Interjecting poem] In the Lāla khānaqāh, which is known to be in Darvīshābād, and in which many [Sufis] sit for the purposes of forty-day ascetic retreats of contemplation (arbaʿīnāt), several of the excellent ones— for whom it is a place of asylum and firm belief—have agreed that when they choose the accommodations of that place (i.e., the cells within the Lāla khānaqāh), the horizons seize their public fame.

The reference to two Naqshbandīs (Bulgharī and Ṣunʿ Allāh) as frequenting the Darvīshābād khānaqāh suggests that the ambivalence which traditionally marked the attitude of the order to such institutions as tekke, zāviya, khānaqāh, for the performance of devotional rites and spiritual instruction, did not necessarily preclude its members from visiting facilities stewarded by other ṭariqas. Le Gall notes that whereas earlier Naqshbandīs

---

65 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 2351.
67 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 2351.
68 For a discussion of the proliferation of khānaqāhs in post-Mongol Iran, see George Lane, Early Mongol Rule in Thirteenth-Century Iran: A Persian Renaissance (London: RoutledgeCurzon, 2003), 242–46.
in Transoxiana largely adhered to the advice of ʿAbd al-Khāliq Ghijduvānī, which was to eschew building or living in khānaqāhs, later Naqshbandis, particularly in Ottoman Anatolia, were not averse to such practices.69 It should be noted, however, that there is no evidence to suggest that this change in attitude resulted in the construction of Naqshbandi hospices or shrine complexes in Āq Qoyūnlū territories. In fact, no references to the commissioning or maintenance of Naqshbandi religious edifices exist in either the Kitāb-i Diyar-Bakrīyya or the Ālam-ārā-yi amūnī.

It would therefore appear that the only discernable Naqshbandī edifice in late ninth/fifteenth century Tabriz, at least according to the Rauẓāt al-jinān, was a mosque (masjid) built by Ṣunʿ Allāh adjacent to his own residence in the Naubar district of Tabriz.70 Given the Naqshbandi proclivity to engage in devotional practices and spiritual instruction in private residences, mosques, and theological colleges, it might be reasonable to conclude that the mosque of Ṣunʿ Allāh served as the hub for the nascent Naqshbandī activities in Tabriz, thereby making Ṣunʿ Allāh the de facto standardbearer for the order in Azerbaijan.71

It is important to note that Ṣunʿ Allāh, who was a man known for his strict piety, elicited what Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī describes as “the assiduous attention (mulāzamat) of the rulers of the age (salāṭīn-i rūzgār).” This statement could be taken as an indication that Ṣunʿ Allāh associated with members of the Āq Qoyūnlū administrative elite or with Yaʿqūb himself.72

---

69 Ghijduvānī reportedly told his disciples: “Do not build khānaqāhs and do not live in them.” Quoted in Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, 163. The testament of Ghijduvānī is found in Fakhr al-Dīn ‘Ali, Rashāḥāt-i ʿāin al-ḥayāt 1:47. See also Paul, Doctrine and Organization, 61.

70 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Rauẓāt al-jinān 1:100.

71 For a discussion of the Naqshbandī tradition of promulgating the order without the benefit of khanaqāhs and their rejection of the idea that leadership of such lodges was a matter of hereditary succession, see Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, esp. 43–47, 79–85, and 162–65.

72 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Rauẓāt al-jinān 1:100. Given that Ṣunʿ Allāh died a peaceful death in 929/1522–23 in Tabriz, this statement by Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī could be understood to mean the Safavids. But such reasoning would have to account for the fact that Ṣunʿ Allāh initially fled to Bitlis when Shāh Ismāʿīl took Tabriz 907/1501, which suggests that Ṣunʿ Allāh had some misgivings about the fervent ʿithnā ʿasharī Shīʿism that was espoused by the Safavids and ghuluvv Islam of their Qizilbāsh supporters. For differing views on the problem of Safavid persecution of the Naqshbandis see, H. Algar, “Naqshbandi Order: A Preliminary Survey of Its History and Significance,” Studia Islamica 44 (1976): 123–52; Sāʿīd Amir Arjomand, The Shadow of God and the Hidden Imam: Religion, Political Order, and Societal Change in Shiʿite Iran from the Beginning to 1890 (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1984), 109–21; and Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, 23–33. For a discussion that is specific to the unfavorable climate encountered by Naqshbandis in Safavid-controlled Herat, see Maria E. Subtelny, “Art and Politics in Early 16th Century Central Asia,” Central Asiatic Journal 27, nos. 1–2 (1983): 121–48.
Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī adds that Ṣunʿ Allāh’s prestige was such that he was able to intercede with rulers “in speech, deed, and writing” on behalf of victims of injustice, and that Ṣunʿ Allāh came to expect their deference to him as a matter of course.⁷³ Ṣunʿ Allāh’s reputation amongst the rank-and-file of Tabriz was probably earned when he refused to vacate the capital during an outbreak of the plague and instead chose to remain in the city in order to care for the sick and bury the dead.⁷⁴

Before establishing himself in Tabriz and promoting the Naqshbandī cause, Ṣunʿ Allāh had traveled to Khurasan in search of a spiritual master.⁷⁵ According to the Raużāt al-jinān, while in Herat, Ṣunʿ Allāh attached himself to Jāmī and took up residence in a madrasa affiliated with the poet, serving as its congregational prayer leader (imām).⁷⁶ Despite their close association, Jāmī was reluctant to act as Ṣunʿ Allāh’s spiritual master and directed him to receive his spiritual training (tauba va inābat, literally, “repentance and return to God”) from Mālānā ‘Alāʾ al-Dīn Ābīzī Maktabdār (d. 892/1487), who like Jāmī was initiated into the Naqshbandī brotherhood by Sa’d al-Dīn Kāshgharī (d. 860/1456).⁷⁷ Before moving to Tabriz, Ṣunʿ Allāh performed the ḥajj and remained in Mecca for a year, where he worked as an attendant (mujāvir) in a mosque.⁷⁸ The disintegration of Āq Qoyūnlū authority after the death of Yaʿqūb and the turmoil created by the Safavids appears, on balance, to have had little impact on Ṣunʿ Allāh. He lived out the remainder of his life in Tabriz, relatively

⁷⁴ Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1301; and Algar, “Naqshbandis and Safavids,” 14.
⁷⁶ Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1397–99.
⁷⁷ Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1399; Algar, “Naqshbandis and Safavids,” 13; and Martin van Bruinessen, “The Naqshbandi Order in 17th-Century Kurdistan,” in Naqshbandis: Cheminements et situation actuelle d’un ordre mystique musulman/ Historical Developments and Present Situation of a Muslim Mystical Order, Actes de la Table Ronde de Sèvres/ Proceedings of the Sèvres Round Table 2–4 mai/2–4 May 1985, ed. Marc Gaborieau, Alexander Popovic, and Thierry Zarcone (Istanbul: l’Institut Français d’Études Anatoliennes d’Istanbul, 1990), 354, n. 43. In reference to Maktabdār’s intense interest in the doctrine of wabdat al-wujūd, see Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, 218 n. 89. For the subtle though important distinctions between tauba and inābat, see Paul Nwyia, Exégèse coranique et langue mystique: Nouvel essai sur le lexicque technique des mystiques musulmans (Beirut: Dar el-Mashreq, 1970), 300–301.
⁷⁸ Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1300.
unmolested by Safavid authorities, a fact that is alluded to in the Ḥabīb al-siyar by Khvāndamīr:

From the early days of the reign of Yaʿqūb Mīrzā down to the present day, he [Ṣunʿ Allāh] has been seated on the carpet of piety and abstemiousness in the noble city of Tabriz and is celebrated among the people of that region for the purity of his soul and the clarity of his spirit.79

The Murder of Darvīsh Qāsim

Not all Naqshbandīs in Tabriz shared the happy fate of Ṣunʿ Allāh. For example, a certain Darvīsh Sirāj al-Dīn b. Qāżī ʿUmar Qāsim fell victim to Yaʿqūb’s volatile temperament in a brutal incident that is recorded in several Persian and European sources.80 The incident, which began with an isolated act of intercommunal violence, escalated into a major challenge to the authority of Yaʿqūb and probably dampened any hopes the Naqshbandis might have had of establishing a presence in Tabriz to match their success in Herat. According to the Raużāt al-jinān, Darvīsh Qāsim was executed by Yaʿqūb in 891/1486 as punishment for his role in inciting a mob after word spread that the ruler had personally ordered the arrest and dismemberment of a Türkmen soldier accused of killing a local Armenian merchant.81 Before continuing with a description of the events leading up to the killing of Darvīsh Qāsim and its aftermath, it is important first to examine what the sources indicate about Qāsim’s role in serving kings and his standing amongst the Āq Qoyūnlū.

According to the Rauẓāt al-jinān, Darvīsh Sirāj al-Dīn Qāsim had devoted the twenty-two years before his death to a life of strict piety; the last ten of these years he is said to have engaged in spiritual wayfaring (sulūk) and Sufism (taṣavvuf).82 Born in 840/1436–37 to Khvāja ʿUmar, the chief qāżī of

---

79 Khvāndamīr, Habīb al-siyar 4:609. Quoted in Algar, “Naqshbandis and Safavids,” 14, who mentions the refusal of Ṣunʿ Allāh to fully prostrate himself before Shāh Ismāʿīl, a gesture contravening court protocol, yet one which reportedly left the sovereign impressed.

80 For a synopsis of these accounts, see Sajjadi, Kū-yi surkhāb-i Tabrīz, 177–84.

81 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1:92–95. The merchant, a certain Mīrak, is referred to in the Rauzāt al-jinān as both “tarsā” (Christian) and “Gabr,” which is a pejorative applied to Zoroastrians and synonymous with mugh (magus) or ātishparast (fire-worshipper). See Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. “gabr” (by Mansour Shaki); and ‘Alī Akbar Dihkhudā, Lughāt nāma, ed. Muḥammad Muʿīn and Jaʿfar Shahīdī, 15 vols. (Tehran: Muʾassasa-i Intishārāt va Chāp-i Dānishgāh-i Ṭihrān bā Hamkārī-yi Intishārāt-i Rauzāna 1993–94), 11:16,722–26, s.v. “gabr.”

82 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Rauzāt al-jinān 1:92.
Diyar-Bakr, Darvish Qāsim sought to emulate his father’s career in government and entered the service of Mīrzā Yūsuf, the son of the Qarā Qoyūnlū ruler Jahānshāh (r. 843–72/1439–67). The *Raużāt al-jinān* describes how Darvish Qāsim became a companion (ham-rāh) of Mīrzā Yūsuf to whom he remained loyal (fidā-dār) for nearly twenty years. When Mīrzā Yūsuf was killed by Āq Qoyūnlū forces in 872/1467, Darvish Qāsim changed allegiances and sought to enter the service of Üzūn Ḥasan.

According to Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Darvish Qāsim tried to ingratiate himself to the new regime by traveling to Qum where Üzūn Ḥasan was staying at the time. Shortly after arriving, Qāsim fell victim to the deceits of an “envious and slanderous” group of people, and was forced to flee. Darvish Qāsim was captured, brought before Üzūn Ḥasan, and condemned to execution, but he was spared at the urging of the vazīr, Qāżī Ḥasan Ṣadr. The report in the *Raużāt al-jinān* explains how the Queen Mother (vālīda-i pādishāh), Sarāy Khātūn, rebuked Üzūn Ḥasan for detaining the “son of Khvāja ʿUmar” and recommended that Darvish Qāsim be released. She pointed out that as qāżī of Diyar-Bakr, Khvāja ʿUmar had delivered legal decisions that protected the interests of the Bāyandur clan. For the sake of Khvāja ʿUmar’s blessing (barakat), the Queen Mother recommended that Darvish Qāsim be considered worthy of the trust of the royal family. Following his mother’s wishes, Üzūn Ḥasan ordered that Darvish Qāsim be released and awarded him the post of chief of protocol (mihmāndār).

---


84 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, *Raużāt al-jinān* 1:89.

85 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, *Raużāt al-jinān* 1:89.

86 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, *Raużāt al-jinān* 1:90. The use of the word “ẕimma” or “dhimmat” by Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī could be an indication that legal decisions involving the non-Muslim members of the royal family—perhaps the Christians from Trabzon (i.e., relatives of Üzūn Ḥasan’s wife, Theodora Komnene)—were rendered at some point.

87 For a description of the duties of the mihmāndār, see *The Encyclopaedia of Islam*, 2nd ed., s.v. “Mihmāndār” (by A. Saleh).
After demonstrating an aptitude for courtly duties, Darvīsh Qāsim was promoted to the rank of *parvanchī* (head of the chancery). He eventually became a confidant (*mahram*) of Ūzūn Ḥasan’s, and in the words of the *Raużāt al-jinān*, “there was no one, other than him [Darvīsh Qāsim] who was privy to the king’s secrets.” The report adds that Ūzūn Ḥasan readily accepted the counsel of Darvīsh Qāsim on important matters and often heeded his advice to act with benevolence. Following a series of skirmishes between Āq Qoyūnlū and Ottoman forces, Ūzūn Ḥasan sought to make peace by dispatching Darvīsh Qāsim as a diplomatic envoy (*īlchī*) to the Ottoman court. So favorable an impression did Darvīsh Qāsim make that sultan Meḥmed II wrote a letter to Ūzūn Ḥasan requesting that any future Āq Qoyūnlū diplomatic missions include him. According to a description of the contents of the letter, Meḥmed II prized the blessings (*barakat*) of Darvīsh Qāsim which, he claimed, could make enmity turn into friendship.

The fact that Darvīsh Qāsim had a prominent position at the Āq Qoyūnlū court is also supported by the *Rashaḥāt-i ʿain al-ḥayāt*. In its description of the celebrated arrival of Jāmī in Tabriz in 878/1473, it states that the poet was officially welcomed by three of Ūzūn Ḥasan’s dearest booncompanions (*aqrab-i nudamāʾ*). The welcoming party reportedly included, Qāżī Ḥasan, Abû Bakr Ṭihrānī-Iṣfahānī, and Darvīsh Qāsim.

Another illustration of the fealty that existed between Ūzūn Ḥasan and Darvīsh Qāsim appears in the *Raużāt al-jinān* where the ruler, afflicted with a terminal illness, asked for Qāsim to whom he offered a death-bed confession. According to Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Ūzūn Ḥasan confided to Darvīsh Qāsim that one of his great mistakes was not building a burial tomb (*maqbara*), Sufi hospice (*zāviya*), or mosque (*masjid*) on his behalf. After telling Darvīsh Qāsim that no individual had ever garnered as much trust of the ruler as he had, Ūzūn Ḥasan implored the Naqshbandī shaikh

---

90 For a description of the duties of the *īlchī*, see Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. “Elči” (by David O. Morgan); and Doerfer, *Türkische und mongolische Elemente* 2:203–7.
91 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, *Raużāt al-jinān* 1:90. As mentioned, the eagerness of Meḥmed II to receive Naqshbandī shaikhs could be explained by their reputation as experts in the teachings of Ibn al-ʿArabī and their knowledge of the *Masnavī* by Rūmī. On this, see Le Gall, *Culture of Sufism*, 35.
to abandon his court duties and oversee the establishment of a mosque and hospice adjacent to what would become Üzün Ḥasan’s tomb.

The chaos generated by the death of Üzün Hasan, which is to say, the ensuing struggle for succession between Sultân-Khalîl and a teen-aged Ya’qûb, not only postponed construction on the late ruler’s tomb complex, but also necessitated the continued service of Darvîsh Qāsim as a diplomatic envoy. Evidence of the continued employment of Darvîsh Qāsim can be found in an official letter (dated 883/1478–79) from the newly-coronated Sultân-Khalîl to a provincial military governor (beglerbegî) in Anatolia, in which the Āq Qoyûnlû ruler suggests that the two empires establish a détente. As part of his peaceful overtures, Sultân-Khalîl announced that Darvîsh Qāsim, a favorite of the Ottoman court and “trusted pillar of the state,” was specifically chosen to convey these sentiments.

With the assassination of Sultân-Khalîl and the enthronement of Ya’qûb, the loyalties of Darvîsh Qāsim shifted to the new ruler, who the Raużât al-jînân says exhibited nothing but “boundless grace and unlimited compassion” to the Naqshbandi shaikh. Despite their later troubles, Karbalâ’î-Tabrizî makes it clear that Darvîsh Qāsim was resolute in his commitment to Ya’qûb, even quoting the Naqshbandi as having told his new king that “Whatever you say and whatever you command I hold as a favor in my heart and soul.” Darvîsh Qāsim fulfilled the death-bed request of Üzün Ḥasan and oversaw the construction of a tomb complex, the Naṣriyya, which included a Sufi hermitage, in the gardens of Şâhîbâbâd on the outskirts of Tabriz, and which took some seven years to complete, whereupon Qāsim was appointed trustee (or head, kulâh) of the shrine.

As for the spiritual development of Darvîsh Qāsim, the Raużât al-jînân mentions that when he was twenty-nine years old, and thus fourteen years before the death of Üzün Hasan (i.e., 869/1464), he went on pilgrimage.

---

95 See the edited letter contained in L. Fekete, Einführung in die persische Paläographie: 101 persische Dokumente, ed. G. Hazai (Budapest: Akadémiai Kiadó, 1977), 225–28. The military governor is a certain Sinân Pasha. For information on the duties of the beglerbegî, see Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. “beglerbegî” (by Peter Jackson); and Doerfer, Türkische und mongolische Elemente 2:406–10.
96 Fekete, Einführung in die persische Paläographie, 226.
97 Karbalâ’î-Tabrizî, Raużât al-jînân 1:91.
98 Karbalâ’î-Tabrizî, Raużât al-jînân 1:91.
(ziyārat) to several Shi‘ī holy sites in Iraq. While there, Darvīsh Qāsim is said to have repented (tauba karda) and henceforth dedicated his life to ritual worship, never neglecting any of the traditional Islamic customs (sunān). It is interesting to note that other than the decade in which Darvīsh Qāsim occupied himself with the traditions of sulūk and ṭasāvvuf, the Raużāt al-jinān lacks specific information on his formal spiritual training. That is to say, nowhere in the report by Karbalā‘ī-Tabrīzī on Darvīsh Qāsim is specific reference made to his association with a Sufi master, Naqshbandī or otherwise. At the same time, the Raużāt al-jinān gives no indication that Darvīsh Qāsim was a so-called “Uvaisī” Sufi, which is to say, a mystic who took instruction from the spirit of a deceased or physically absent master.

While the notice on Darvīsh Qāsim provides little concrete information on the spiritual training and pedigree of Qāsim, it does contain vivid details of his deadly encounter with Ya‘qūb. As mentioned earlier, Darvīsh Qāsim was summoned by Ya‘qūb on a Friday night in Rabī‘ I 891/March 1486 and accused of inciting riots throughout Tabriz after Āq Qoyūnlū troops killed and mutilated a young Türkmen soldier accused of murdering a local merchant. According to the Raużāt al-jinān, Darvīsh Qāsim

---

100 Karbalā‘ī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1:92. The sites that Darvīsh Qāsim visited included the Ḥāʾirī enclosure at the shrine of Ḥusain in Karbala, the Kāẓimain shrine complex near Baghdad which honors the Seventh Imām, Mūsā al-Kāẓim, and his grandson, the Ninth Imām, Muhammad al-Taqī, and the ‘Askarain shrines in Samarra honoring ‘Ali al-Hādī, the Tenth Imām, and his son, Ḥasan al-‘Askari, the Eleventh Imām. For a description of these shrines and their significance to Shi‘īsm, see Moojan Momen, An Introduction to Shi‘ī Islam: The History and Doctrines of Twelver Shi‘īism (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1985), xx, 40, and 44.

101 Karbalā‘ī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1:92.

102 For a study of Uvaisiyya Sufis, see Julian Baldick, Imaginary Muslims: The Uwaysi Sufis of Central Asia (London: I. B. Tauris, 1993). See also A. S. Husaini, “Uways al-Qarani and the Uwaysi World,” The Moslem World 57 (1967): 103–114. For a critique of Baldick’s thesis and his use of the term “Uvaisi” see the following studies by Devin DeWeese, An ‘Uwaysi Sufi in the Timurid Mawarannah; and “The Tadhkira-i Bughrā-khān and the ‘Uvaisi’ Sufis of Central Asia: Notes in Review of Imaginary Muslims,” Central Asiatic Journal 40, no. 1 (1996): 87–127. There is no reason to discount the possibility that Darvīsh Qāsim may have claimed to have received his spiritual training remotely. As J. Ter Haar has observed, “Many a Naqshbandi is reported to have been an Uwaysi, that is a mystic who was not (only) initiated by a living, physically present Shaykh, but (also) by the ‘spirituality’ or ‘spiritual presence’ (ruhaniyyat) of a deceased Shaykh or even by Khidr.” Ter Haar also notes that according to Khvāja Muḥammad Pārsā (d. 822/1420), who was a disciple of Bahā’ al-Dīn Naqshband, many Naqshbandi shaikhs walked the path of the Uvaisī (tarīqa-i Uvaisiyān). For a reference, see Johan G. J. Ter Haar, “The Importance of the Spiritual Guide in the Naqshbandi Order,” in The Heritage of Sufism, Vol. 2, The Legacy of Medieval Persian Sufism (1150–1500), ed. Leonard Lewisohn (Oxford: Oneworld, 1999), 312.

103 Based on the description given by Karbalā‘ī-Tabrīzī, the Türkman (az tā‘īfa-i turkmān) soldier could have been a Qizilbāsh tribesman. For example, the Raużāt al-jinān
was brought before Yaʿqūb after he was observed at the vanguard of the soldier’s funeral procession and inciting his fellow mourners with the rallying cry: “Who will die on behalf of me?” Having roused the anger of the mob, Darvīsh Qāsim led the procession toward the royal palace. Yaʿqūb, who had spent the night drinking wine, became enraged upon hearing that residents were defying his authority and focused his anger on Darvīsh Qāsim who, he was informed, was solely responsible for the display of civil disobedience. According to the Raużāt al-jinān, Darvīsh Qāsim was apprehended and brought before Yaʿqūb, whom Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī describes as “drunk and witless” (mast va lā-yaʾqil). Yaʿqūb, the report continues, promptly unsheathed his sword as Darvīsh Qāsim uttered “the prayer of martyrdom.” The besotted ruler then struck “several fatal blows” before inviting his attendants to finish the execution.

The slaying of Darvīsh Qāsim and the marketplace incident that triggered it are also mentioned in a letter attributed to the Venetian ambassador Giosafat Barbaro (d. 900/1494). Originally sent by Venice in 876–7/1473 to enlist the support of Üzūn Ḥasan against the Ottoman Empire, Barbaro became a fixture at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. His memoir, which was first published in 950/1543, provides not only valuable historical information on intrigues at the Āq Qoyūnlū court, but also includes the first ever reference in a European historical source to an individual Naqshbandī Sufi. According to the account of Barbaro, which it should be mentioned, is based on the testimony of fellow-traveler Pietro di Guasco, a certain “Darviscassun” (i.e., Darvīsh Qāsim), who is referred to as the guardian of the burial tomb of King “Assambei” (i.e., [Üzūn] Ḥasan Beg) and the director of its hospice, was brought before Yaʿqūb. Barbaro relates that Darvīsh Qāsim was a man of account and [good] reputation who served says that local residents nick-named the soldier “Mahdī” because of his exaggerated passion (ghuluv-i jaẕba) and for his ecstatic ravings (shaṭḥ) which frequently lead him to declare: “I am [the] Mahdī!” For a reference, see Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1392–93.

104 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1394. In Persian: kū az barāyi man īn ūr margī?
105 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1394.
106 Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 1395.
109 Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.vv. “Barbaro, Giosafat” (by A. M. Piemontese) and “Italy, iv. Travel Accounts” (by Michele Bernadini).
110 An observation first made by Algar, “Present State of Naqshbandī Studies,” 45.
111 Giosafat Barbaro, I viaggi in Persia, 100.
as “treasurer” (thesauriero) for the previous king.\footnote{112} Incidentally, none of the Persian historical sources refer to Darvish Qāsim as having served as either vazīr or mustaufī (comptroller), which leaves open the possibility that Barbaro was writing figuratively and in reference to the position of the Naqshbandī shaikh as a close confidant of the ruler’s.\footnote{113} Whatever esteem Darvish Qāsim enjoyed from his days with Ùzūn Ḣasan apparently counted for naught that night since Barbaro has Ya’qūb condemning Qāsim with the words: “You dare issue a command contrary to my commandment? Well, let him die.”\footnote{114} To which Barbaro reports that Darvish Qāsim “was summarily executed.”\footnote{115}

Accounts of what occurred next vary among the sources. According to the Raużāt al-jinān, the Muslims of Tabriz, who were overcome with sorrow, cursed Ya’qūb after he reportedly prohibited anyone, including family members of Darvish Qāsim, from removing his corpse from the roadway where it was dumped.\footnote{116} However, the Raużāt al-jinān also relates how, at daybreak, Ya’qūb returned from “the world of inebriation to the world of sobriety” (az ‘ālam-i masti bi ‘ālam-i hushyārī) and was unable to face the consequences of his outburst.\footnote{117} “Ridden with guilt,” Ya’qūb ordered his officials to arrange for a proper burial ceremony for Darvish Qāsim in the Ḩażrat-i Bābā Mazīd district of Tabriz.\footnote{118}

Barbaro’s version of the ensuing events differs from that in the Raużāt al-jinān in that he suggests that the residents of Tabriz were made to suffer for their open defiance of royal authority. According to Barbaro, Ya’qūb ordered his forces to ransack the city for a period of three to four hours, provoking what Barbaro called “marvelous fear” among its residents.\footnote{119} The plundering ceased only after Ya’qūb levied a heavy indemnity on the

\footnote{112} Giosafat Barbaro, I viaggi in Persia, 100.
\footnote{113} The reference could thus be understood in the sense of “the treasurer of the private matters of the king.”
\footnote{114} Giosafat Barbaro, I viaggi in Persia, 170. In Italian: “Te basta l’animo di comandar contra el mio comandamento? Orsù, che’l sia morto.”
\footnote{115} Giosafat Barbaro, I viaggi in Persia, 170. In Italian: “. . . et subito fu morto.”
\footnote{116} Karbalāʾi-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 195.
\footnote{117} Karbalāʾi-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 195.
\footnote{118} Karbalāʾi-Tabrīzī, Raużāt al-jinān 195. Before concluding his notice on Darvish Qāsim, Karbalāʾi-Tabrīzī puts a cabalistic twist on the hijrī year, 891, of the death of the Naqshbandī shaikh by mentioning the fact that Darvish Qāsim prefaced all his written correspondences with the pious invocation (da’vat) “huwwa al-fayyāţ” (He is the Effulgent one), which also happened to be Darvish Qāsim’s nick-name (“Fayyāţ”). The word fayyāţ, Karbalāʾi-Tabrīzī notes, has a numerical value of 891.
\footnote{119} Giosafat Barbaro, I viaggi in Persia, 170.
populace. It would seem that the killings generated such animosity among the residents of Tabriz that Yaʿqūb all but abandoned the capital. As Woods has noted, during the next five years, the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler spent less than twelve months in his newly-completed Hasht Bihisht palace in Tabriz. In fact, his final four month-long stay in the city in 894/1488 was the occasion for his public repentance from wine-drinking and his declaration of the prohibition against the consumption of alcohol by residents of the city.

**The Spiritual Relationship between Jāmī and Yaʿqūb**

Given the apparent volatility of Yaʿqūb, it may have been advantageous for Jāmī to advise the young ruler from afar. Although he never visited Tabriz during the twelve-year reign of Yaʿqūb, Jāmī did nevertheless take more than a casual interest in advising him about the moral and ethical responsibilities that went along with kingship. If the letters Yaʿqūb addressed to Jāmī are any indication, it might also be fair to say that, in spite of his temperament, Yaʿqūb had an enduring interest in receiving such moderating advice.

In at least one of these letters Yaʿqūb justifies his request for Jāmī’s blessings (barakāt) by portraying himself as a supporter of Sufi mystics. The letter contains a number of Sufi technical terms (suḥbat, himmat, vilāyat, ṭarīqa, etc.) and an allusion to the Naqshbandī custom of binding the heart of the disciple to his shaikh, which suggests that Yaʿqūb was familiar with at least one of the key doctrines of the order. After addressing him by a series of honorific titles, Yaʿqūb tells Jāmī that following his regime of praiseworthy ethics (akhlāq-i ḥamīda) has given him unique insights into the concept of himmat. Yaʿqūb adds that it is no secret that he enjoys

---


122 Any offender caught by the officers of the sharīʿa (shiḥna-i sharīʿat) was to have “molten lead poured down his throat.” For a reference, see Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, *ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī*, 325.

123 A distance of some 920 miles (1,500 kilometers).


125 It is debatable whether this was part of a larger interest on the part of Yaʿqūb in the Naqshbandī ṭarīqa or if it was simply a means of ingratiating himself to Jāmī.

the companionship (suḥbat) of Sufis, whom he indirectly refers to as those people who know the true meaning of the expressions, “My saints are under My domes,” and “He has written faith in their hearts.” Implicitly equating his own spiritual rebirth to the creation of Adam who was fashioned by God out of clay, Yaʿqūb states that his relationship with the Sufis has “leavened the fine clay of his majesty.”

The letter effuses with praise for Jāmī, whom Yaʿqūb credits with making hearts luminous until they become mirrors of the Divine verities and gnoses (mirʾāt-i ḥaqāyiq va maʿārif). This transformation of the heart, Yaʿqūb writes, is the way in which a person acquires good ethical qualities (akhlāq-i ḥamīda) and divine favor (ināyat-i ilāhī), which, he notes, will lead him to “high places” in this world and the hereafter. With its frequent references to spiritual transformation, the letter reads as though Yaʿqūb were in fact a disciple of Jāmī.

The possibility that the two had an informal spiritual bond is lent further credence in an epistolary reply that Jāmī addressed to Yaʿqūb. It would seem that rather than write letters in response to Yaʿqūb, Jāmī’s habit was to send panegyric odes (qaṣāʾid) to the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler. However, one surviving letter that Jāmī addressed to Yaʿqūb is noteworthy for the light it casts on the nature of their relationship (see Appendix 1). It is also unique in that, unlike other letters Jāmī addressed to kings and amīrs, it does not open with the conventional string of honorific titles. Yaʿqūb is not given the lofty epithets that Jāmī accorded his father, Ūzūn Ḥasan, whom Jāmī refers to as: “King who is the Refuge of the World,” “Ruler of the Warriors for the Faith,” and “Prince who is characterized by Justice.”

127 The phrase, auliyaʾ taḥt qibābī, is an abbreviated ḥadīth qudsī which reads, “Verily My saints are under My domes, and only I know them.” On how this ḥadīth reflects God’s reluctance to reveal the identities of His saints, see Schimmel, Mystical Dimmensions, 202–3. The second expression is drawn from the Qur’ānic verse (58:22): aulaʾika kataba fī qulūbihum al-īmān, and is especially relevant in light of the Naqshbandī practice of binding a Divine name onto (the heart of) a ruler.

128 See Qurʾān 38:71.

129 Yaʿqūb to Jāmī, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 304.

130 Yaʿqūb to Jāmī, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 304.

131 Fourteen of Jāmī’s qaṣīdas that are contained in his Dīvān were replies to Yaʿqūb. For a reference, see Jāmī, Dīvān-i Jāmī, v:680.

132 Jāmī to Yaʿqūb, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 281 (letter no. 422).

133 Jāmī to Ūzūn Ḥasan, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 239–40 (letter no. 385). In Persian: padishāh-i jahān-panāḥ; sultān al-ghuzāt wa al-mujāhidin; and shabryār-i maʿdalat shīʿār, respectively. In addition to Ūzūn Ḥasan and Yaʿqūb, Jāmī addressed personal letters to Jahānshāh Qarā Qoyūnlū, Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā, Mehmed II,
Although differences in age could explain the lack of honorifics (Jāmī was a septuagenarian while Yaʿqūb was in his twenties), it could also be an indication that theirs was a personal and/or spiritual relationship.

In a show of feigned modesty, Jāmī begins the letter by claiming that, despite his reputation as Sufi master, he is better-suited to anonymity and that, in fact, it is Yaʿqūb’s heart that turns into the center of the “ambit of astonishment” (muḥīṭ-i taḥayyur) and the pivot of the “circle of contemplation” (dāyira-i tafakkur). Jāmī expresses regret for not corresponding more frequently to Yaʿqūb, a rhetorical statement of contrition typical of medieval Persian epistolary writing, but also manages to excuse himself by making what could be a subtle reference to the notorious intemperance of the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler. Jāmī says that only the imprudent would dare to challenge the king’s majesty (haibat) and awefulness (ḥishmat) by carelessly entering his presence. Doing so, Jāmī adds, would assuredly prompt Yaʿqūb to unsheathe “the sword of siyāsat” (literally, “the sword of punishment”). To emphasize his powerlessness, Jāmī breaks into verse, casts himself as a speck of dust, and asks (rhetorically): “When the brilliant sun (i.e., Yaʿqūb) becomes manifested, how is it that a [mere] mote appears equal [to it]?” Instead of answering, Jāmī inverts the hierarchies established in the introduction of the letter by elevating his own spiritual authority over the political power of Yaʿqūb and by implying that he is, in terms of spiritual matters, Yaʿqūb’s superior. To introduce this point, Jāmī appears to suggest that his support of the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler is not unconditional. It is only after Yaʿqūb pursues the habit of “keen-hearing” and “sharp-wittedness,” he writes, and retracts [his tongue] into the palate of silence, that Yaʿqūb’s soul will be seized by Jāmī’s “entreaties of sincerity” (davāʿī-yi ikhlāṣ) and the allurements of affection and privilege.

Bāyīzīd II (d. 918/1512), and Shams al-Dīn Lashkarī Muḥammad (d. 886/1482), leader of the Bahmanid kingdom in the Deccan. See Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munsha’āt-i Jāmī, 239–40 (letter no. 385); 269–70 (letter no. 409); 271–74 (letters no. 412, 413); 278–79 (letters no. 417, 418); 281–82 (letter 424); 281–83 (letters no. 423, 425).


135 Jāmī to Yaʿqūb, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munsha’āt-i Jāmī, 281.

136 It is difficult to imagine that this statement is not an allusion to silent ẓikr (or ẓikr-i khafī), a hallmark of Naqshbandi devotional practice, and the importance of the 112th chapter of the Qurʾān, sūrat al-ikhlāṣ. This importance is reflected in the fact that among the proto-Naqshbandis (i.e., the Khvājagān), sūra 112 was to be recited 1,001 times as part of their daily ẓikr exercises. For a reference, see Meier, Zwei Abhandlungen, 194 and 195 n. 1.
To emphasize his point, Jàmì again resorts to verse, casting himself as a raincloud and Yaʿqûb as a delicate lily, the symbol of the silent worshipper in Persian poetry. “When the cloud reaches effulgence (faiż),” he says, “it is not pleasant for the lily, since all its petals (zabân, literally “tongue”), in [their] search of praise, do not retreat [from the deluge].” The intention appears to be to convey to Yaʿqûb that he, like a flower in need of nourishment, can withstand (or benefit from) a deluge of “spiritual guidance” only after he “withdraws” from view and exercises silent introspection. That is to say, Yaʿqûb must close the “petal” of his speech in order for the “downpouring” of Jàmì’s spiritual guidance to issue forth, which, in turn, might occasion a state of “mutual contemplation” (mulâḥaža-i jânibain) between the two parties, that is, Jàmì and Yaʿqûb. Using a homographic pun—specifically, an imperfect homonym (tajnîs-i nāqis) on the doubled word bain—Jàmì suggests that this reciprocal concentration creates a path or channel of “inner vision” (ṭarîq-i bain [or bîn] bain) through which the poet, in his capacity as shaikh, could transmit his spiritual blessings or energy to Yaʿqûb.

Such expressions are reminiscent of râbiṭa, a mystical technique employed by various Sufi groups but often associated with the Naqshbandiyya, and the belief that a shaikh could transmit spiritual energy to a disciple without being physically present—a complex method Fritz Meier referenced to as “Herzensbindung an den Meister.” Although it is impossible to prove that Jàmì’s letter, with its allusions to Sufi spiritual techniques, especially those associated with the Naqshbandiyya, indicates that he and Yaʿqûb had a shaikh-murîd rapport, it does nevertheless suggest that the two had a unique, if not intimate connection, and that the vernacular used in their communications was very consciously mystical.

---


138 Jàmì to Yaʿqûb, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jàmî, 281.


140 Meier, Zwei Abhandlungen, 42. The unity between master and murîd is described in the Kashf al-mahjûb by Hujvîrī where a shaikh tells his adept: “To traverse distance is child’s play: henceforth pay visits by means of thought; it is not worthwhile to visit any person, and there is no virtue in bodily presence.” Hujvîrī, Kashf al-Mahjûb, 225; and Schimmel, Mystical Dimensions, 206.
CHAPTER FOUR

POETRY AT THE COURT OF YA‘QÜB AND ITS BACKGROUND IN Establishing an Historical Context for SALAMĀN VA ABSĀL

I see little certainty in the world,
With all of its joy I see thousands of sorrows.
It is like an old frontier way station, since from all its sides,
I see a path to the desert of non-existence.

—Ya‘qūb, cited in Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʿushšāq

After Ya‘qūb murdered the leader of the Naqshbandī order in Tabriz, Darvish Qāsim, in Rabī’ I 891/March 1486, it must have become apparent to members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court that Ya‘qūb’s volatile temperament needed restraining. The arrival at the Āq Qoyūnlū court of Salāmān va Absāl, with its ethical and moral advice, would, we might rightly assume, have been an anticipated event. Determining, however, if the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler fully grasped—much less acted on—its message is beyond the scope of this study. Nevertheless, by examining the literary activities at the court of Ya‘qūb and its taste for Persian belles-lettres, it can be reasonably assumed that the esoteric intricacies of Salāmān va Absāl and its didactic message would have been understood at the Āq Qoyūnlū court and discussed by its literati in attendance. By exploring the caliber of poets at the Āq Qoyūnlū court (along with the Āq Qoyūnlū interest in Sufi mystics), it would not be implausible to conclude that Ya‘qūb and/or his entourage recognized that Salāmān va Absāl was in fact a complex mirror for princes which contained multiple planes of mystical and political meaning.

In order to support this contention, a description will be given of the Persian literary milieu in late ninth/fifteenth century Tabriz, with particular attention devoted to the group of professional poets and literati who were patronized by Ya‘qūb and his vazīr, Qāzī ʿĪsā Sāvaji. Some of the poets and their works will be highlighted, as will biographical entries contained in selected literary anthologies which contain allusions to events at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. One event in particular, namely a romance between Qāzī ʿĪsā, a representative of the sedentary Tajik (i.e., Persian) population,

---

1 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʿushšāq, 324. These verses also appear in Sām Mīrzā, Taẕkira-i Tuḥfa-i Sāmī, 25; and Fakhrī Haravī, Taẕkira-i Raużāt al-salāṭīn, 65.
and the sister of Yaʿqūb, who belonged to the ruling Türkmen clan, will be used as evidence to suggest that the repercussions of a socially and politically unacceptable relationship—as it is depicted in Salāmān va Absāl—would have been recognized by members of the royal Āq Qoyūnlū household.

_Literary Activities in Āq Qoyūnlū Tabriz_

The circle of poets at the court of Yaʿqūb included such luminaries as Ahlī Shīrāzī, Kamāl al-Dīn Banāʾī Haravī, Shahīdī Qumī, and Bābā Fīghānī. They all addressed encomiums (qaṣīdas), lyrical odes (ghazals), and/or romantic and didactic _masnavīs_ to Yaʿqūb. Before examining the contributions each of these poets made to the literary life of Āq Qoyūnlū Tabriz, it is worth pointing out that Jāmī’s maternal nephew, ‘Abd Allāh Ḥātifī (d. 927/1520), who was an accomplished poet in his own right, spent some five years (890–95/1485–90) at the Āq Qoyūnlū court during Yaʿqūb’s reign. It could therefore be argued that Ḥātifī kept his uncle in Herat informed of Āq Qoyūnlū internal affairs, which might explain why the tale of Salāmān va Absāl so vividly reflects key personalities at the Türkmen court.

Ahlī Shīrāzī, who was a master of all literary genres and an unsurpassed practitioner of rhetorical devices, dedicated an allegorical _masnavī_ on love entitled _Shamʿ va parvāna_ to Yaʿqūb and supreme military commander (amīr-i ażam), Shāh Qulī Beg. The poem is unique in that its emphasis is not so much on the typical suffering lover (namely, the allegorical moth) but rather on the affection that the beloved (the allegorical candle) develops for the afflicted lover. Keeping this novel twist in mind, it is interesting to note that Ahlī implicitly casts Yaʿqūb as the candle and royal fortune as the moth:

---

2 It should be noted that Ahlī Shīrāzī probably never left his native Shiraz. See Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. “Ahlī Šīrāzī, Mowlānā Mohammad” (by W. Thackston).


The grace of God brought forth the luminous sun,
The Solomon of the age, Yaʿqūb sultan.
Like a man of perspicacity, he is from the divine light (nūr-i ilahī),
He is the prince (khudāvand) of white and black (i.e., both worlds).
When the candle of kingship turns into the sun,
The humā-bird circles like a moth around the orbit of its (Yaʿqūb's)
head—
A candle so wonderous that through the eye of favor,
The moth becomes its star of felicity.⁵

Ahlī also composed a Dīvān which contains many poems dedicated to
members of both the Āq Qoyūnlū and Safavid dynasties. In addition to
the panegyrics he wrote for Yaʿqūb, Ahlī wrote chronograms (tārīkh)
commemorating the deaths of Yaʿqūb's rebellious half-brother Maqṣūd b.
Ūzūn Ḥasan Bāyandur (d. 883/1478) and his older uterine brother, Sultān-
Khalīl.⁶ Ahlī also wrote qaṣīdas in honor of the provincial governor of
Fars, Qāsim Beg Pūrnāk (d. 904/1498), which suggests that the cultural
patronage activities of the Āq Qoyūnlū were not limited to Tabriz but
extended to provincial capitals like Shiraz.⁷

It is worth mentioning that Salāmān va Absāl was not the only ethical
masnāvī dedicated and addressed to Yaʿqūb. Kamāl al-Dīn Banāʾī Haravī, a
native of Herat and familiar face amongst the Timurid nobility, dedicated
a 5,000–verse poetic narrative, entitled Bahrām va Bīhrūz (also referred to
as Bāgh-i Iram), as well as numerous qaṣīdas, to the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler.⁸
Banāʾī (also variously Bannāʾī and Bināʾī), whose takhallus reflected his
background as the son of an architect-builder (bannā'), arrived at Tabriz
after leaving Herat and fell under the discipleship of Shaikh Shams al-Dīn
Muḥammad Lāhiji (d. 922/1516), who was the head of the Nūrbakhshī order
in Shiraz, and who was held in high regard by both Davānī and Jāmī.⁹

---

⁵ Ahlī, Kulliyāt, 575, lines 11509–11512. This could also be an allusion to Yaʿqūb's muqarrab
and boon companion (and cousin of Qāẓī ʿĪsā Sāvajī), Najīm al-Dīn Mas'ūd.
⁶ Ahlī, Kulliyāt, 560.
⁷ The Pūrnāk or "Pirmik" were the only Türkmen clan to intermarry with the paramount
Bāyandur ruling house during the formative years of the empire. Üzūn Ḥasan rewarded
the loyalty of the Pūrnāk by allowing them to monopolize provincial rule in Fars where
Manṣūr Beg and his son, Qāsim Beg, ruled with virtual independence from 900/1494 to
⁸ In all likelihood, Bahrām va Bīhrūz was composed after Banāʾī's service to Yaʿqūb,
since he speaks of the death of the ruler. See Storey, Persian Literature: Bio-bibliographical
Survey 1:302.
⁹ On Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Lāhiji, see The Encyclopaedia of Islam, 2nd ed., s.v.
"Lāhidji, Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Yahyā Gīlānī" (by A. H. Zarrinkoob). For a discussion
It should be noted that the Nūrbakhshīs, who were a Shi‘ite-oriented branch of the Kubravī ṭariqa, were apparently on good terms with the Sunni-oriented Āq Qoyúnlu. For example, Shāh Qāsim Faizbakhsh (d. 927/1520–21), the eldest son and designated successor of the eponymous founder of the order, Muhammad Nūrbakhsh, was reportedly drawn to the court of Ya‘qūb sometime between 885/1480 and 895/1490. The precise nature of his relationship with Ya‘qūb is unclear. What is certain is that Qāsim Faizbakhsh’s stay was cut short by the arrival of a letter from Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā, in which the ailing Timurid ruler requested that the shaikh travel to Herat in order to deliver his curative blessings.

As for Bānā‘ī, the sources indicate that he achieved a high rank in service to Ya‘qūb and remained in Tabriz until the latter’s death. Bānā‘ī initially served at the court of Sulṭān-Ḥusāin and established a reputation as one of the most colorful figures in the late Timurid period. In Herat he was embroiled in a long-standing dispute with Mīr ‘Alī Shīr Navā‘ī who, despite his praises for his talent and character, belittled Bānā‘ī for his resistance to recognizing Chaghatay (Eastern Turkish) as a literary language. It is interesting to note that this tension, which is described in Bādayi‘ al-vaqāyi‘, a memoir of the Timurid poet, Zain al-Dīn Vaṣīfī, suggests the possibility that the poets of the rival Āq Qoyúnlu court, at least those who visited Herat, were well-regarded by Timurid littérateurs.

Relatively little is known about Shahīdī Qumī, who, according to the Tuhfa-i Sāmī, was the poet laureate (malik al-shu‘arā) at the Āq Qoyúnlu court under Ya‘qūb. Attesting perhaps to his mercurial nature, the rather brief entry on Shahīdī Qumī, which describes him as conceited and head-
strong (khūd-pasand and khūd-rāy), notes that Qumī was Yaʿqūb’s con-
fidant and that his poetry “possessed a density no one could penetrate.”17
Though Mīr ʿAlī Shir Navāʿī described Shahīdī Qumī in his Majālis al-nafāʿis as domineering, quarrelsome, and apparently unstable (dīvāna),
the Persian revision by Qazviṇī of the same work (entitled Hasht bihisht) clarifies this assessment of Qumī and contends that his talent and strict
abstemiousness incited the worldly people (mardum-i dunyā) around him
to conclude that he was insane.18

For our purposes, it is important to note that Shahīdī Qumī twice trav-
eled to Khurasan where, according to the Hasht bihisht, he entered the
service of Jāmī, with whom, the entry adds, he frequently socialized.19 As
Algar has suggested, the poet from Qum was in fact a literary and spiri-
tual disciple of Jāmī, as well as a full-fledged member of the Naqshbandī
order.20 If true, it is possible that Shahīdī Qumī could have communi-
cated key aspects of Naqshbandī doctrine and practice to Yaʿqūb, either
directly or through the medium of his poetry. In a similar sense, Shahīdī
Qumī would have been an ideal candidate to explicate to Yaʿqūb and his
courtiers the most salient or allusive points of Jāmī’s Salāmān va Absāl,
especially those that utilize Naqshbandī terminology.21

The fourth and most checkered of the celebrity poets attached to the Āq Qoyūnlū court of Yaʿqūb was Bābā Fighānī, a one-time knife-maker and
fellow townsman of Ahlī Shirāzī.22 According to the Tuhfa-i Sāmī, Fighānī’s
talent blossomed only after he entered the service of Yaʿqūb.23 An affable
character, Fighānī acquired the nick-name Bābā Shāʿir or “father poet” but
also managed to establish his reputation as someone who could not hold
his liquor (bad mast), despite his proclivity to frequent local taverns.24 He
evidently also served as an informal talent scout who personally referred
promising young poets to Yaʿqūb’s attention.25 The entry adds that, soon

---

18 ʿAlī Shir Navāʿī, [ʿAlisher Navoii], Mazholisun nafois [Majālis al-nafāʿis], [Chaghatay],
See also Losensky, Welcoming Fighānī, 23–24.
19 Qazviṇī, Hasht bihisht, 296.
20 Algar, “Naqshbandis and Safavids,” 38 n. 44.
21 Like Banāʿī, Shahīdī Qumī remained in the service of Yaʿqūb until the death of the
latter in 896/1490, whereupon he left for India, settled in Gujarat, and died in 935/1528–29
at the age of 100. See Losensky, “Shahīdī Qumī,” 283.
22 Fighānī’s original nom de plume was Sakkākī, meaning “cutler.”
23 Sām Mīrzā, Taṣḵīr-i Tuhfa-i Sāmī, 176.
24 Sām Mīrzā, Taṣḵīr-i Tuhfa-i Sāmī, 176.
after the death of Yaʿqūb, Fighānī settled in Khurasan where his wine drinking became the stuff of legend. Perhaps sensing his own mortality, Fighānī made a pilgrimage to the tomb of the eighth Shiʿī Imām, ʿAlī al-Riẓā, in Mashhad and died sometime during 925/1519.26

Famous in the later taẕkira literature for his “fresh style” (ṭarz-i tāza) of poetry, Fighānī is credited with countering the supposedly simple poetry practiced at the Timurid court of Sulṭān-Ḥusain.27 He is therefore celebrated as a seminal contributor to what later came to be known as the “Indian style” (sabk-i Hindī) of Persian poetry (alternatively, sabk-i Isfahānī and sabk-i Ṣafavī), which was made famous during the Mughal period.28

It is interesting to note that whereas the Hasht bihisht and the Tuḥfa-i Sāmī are silent about any connection between Fighānī and Jāmī, the later taẕkiras claim that, prior to joining the Āq Qoyūnlū, Fighānī left his native Shiraz for Herat where he joined the company and service of Jāmī.29 According to Losensky, however, many of the later biographical entries on Fighānī contain apocryphal stories aimed at adding to his mystique. Keeping this possibility in mind, it is nevertheless tempting to speculate that Fighānī, like Shahīdī Qumī, achieved stardom at Yaʿqūb’s court after coming under the literary and spiritual influence of Jāmī.

Jāmī, the “Āq Qoyūnlū Poet”

It might be said that, because of his influence on a poet like Shahīdī Qumī (and perhaps Bābā Fighānī) along with the fact that he addressed his Salāmān va Absāl to Yaʿqūb, Jāmī could also be considered an “Āq Qoyūnlū poet.” Granted, Jāmī never visited Tabriz during the reign of Yaʿqūb, but there is ample evidence in the ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī and in the letters that Yaʿqūb addressed to Jāmī to suggest that his influence on

26 Šām Mīrzā, Taẕkira-i Tuḥfa-i Sāmī, 176.
27 Losensky, Welcoming Fighānī, 39.
29 Losensky, Welcoming Fighānī, 37, 41, and 45.
Āq Qoyūnlū literary tastes, and more germanely, on the moral and ethical outlook of Yaʿqūb was significant.

Take, for example, the notice written by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī on the events of 892/1487, which has significant implications for determining the nature of Yaʿqūb’s relationship to Jāmī and to Sufi mysticism as a whole.30 According to the ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, Yaʿqūb wanted to secure the blessings of Jāmī whom he regarded as the “Master of the Gnostics” (ustād al-ʿurafāʾ). To be more specific, Yaʿqūb wanted the same glory and good fortune that other men of state (arbāb-i daulat) had attained thanks to Jāmī’s himmat. As if to justify the request of Yaʿqūb and establish his bona fides, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī notes that the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler was a servant of “the sages of the spiritual path” who understood that the “throne of this world” was determined entirely by their himmat.31 Allegedly, Yaʿqūb henceforth recognized that the perpetuation of the state “depends on the prayers of the Sufi saints (auliyāʾ),” and that the guidance provided by their himmat would benefit him and his subjects. It is for this reason, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī writes, that whenever Yaʿqūb found a Sufi weeping in a corner or in meditation (khalvat) he would inquire about his spiritual state (ḥāl).

Having described the deference of his patron to Sufi mystics and to Jāmī in particular, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī explains that Yaʿqūb ordered that a certain Ḥāfiẓ Muḥammad Sharbaṭī be dispatched to Herat with 10,000 Shāhrukhī dinars as an offering to Jāmī.32 The notice relates that Yaʿqūb hoped that the monetary gift would be sufficient to purchase more prayers from the “great saint” or “shadow of God” (buzurg sāya), i.e., Jāmī.33

It is interesting to note that Khunjī-Iṣfahānī makes reference to the bulk of Jāmī’s poetry, but not Salāmān va Absāl, which suggests that the poem in question was not written until after 892/1487. In fact, the only reference to Salāmān va Absāl in any of the Āq Qoyūnlū sources consulted for this study appears in an undated letter Yaʿqūb sent to Jāmī. The letter is a valuable historical source as it indicates that a significant number of compositions by Jāmī had already been dispatched to the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Yaʿqūb acknowledges in his letter that treatises (rasāʾīl), compositions (muṣannafāt), volumes (kutub), and compilations (muʾallaṣafāt) by Jāmī

---

30 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 250–51.
31 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 250.
32 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 251. This same intermediary, Ḥāfiẓ “Shams al-Dīn” Muḥammad, is mentioned in a letter that Yaʿqūb addressed to Jāmī, the gist of which is a request by Yaʿqūb for more poetry from Jāmī. See Yaʿqūb to Jāmī, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 306–7 (letter no. 18).
33 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 251.
had already been received. Clearly appreciative of their didactic content, the young ruler praises Jāmī, and claims that the poet’s “jewels of moral advice” occasioned several types of spiritual enlightenment (futūḥāt).

Near the conclusion of the letter, another detail emerges to suggest that Salāmān va Absāl was a work of political and ethical advice. In an allusion to the tale, Yaʾqūb characterizes Salāmān va Absāl as a work of naṣāʾīḥ or “good counsels” (pl. of naṣīḥat). The title of the poem, whose arrival Yaʾqūb eagerly awaits, is not actually named but alluded to through the use of a pun. Yaʾqūb expresses his anticipation for the arrival of what he describes as the “ishārāt wa al-tanbihāt” of Jāmī.

In addition to meaning “intimations and admonitions,” the phrase ishārāt wa al-tanbihāt could be an allusion to Ibn Sinā’s final masterpiece, the Kitāb al-Ishārāt wa al-tanbihāt, which contains three tales that culminate in an allegorical romance entitled Salāmān wa Absāl. We therefore find Yaʾqūb closing his letter with the following words:

The affectionate gaze of the expectant one (i.e., Yaʾqūb) is always seeking the announcement that the good counsels (naṣāʾīḥ), which are full of guidance for us, and the good tidings of intimations and admonitions (bashārāt-i ishārāt wa al-tanbihāt) will be sent and received.

As chapter 1 of this study noted, the Salāmān wa Absāl by Ibn Sinā, though somewhat different from the version by Jāmī, was nevertheless a logical inspiration for it, partly on account of the fact that it was the first major literary work in the Near East to feature characters named Salāmān and Absāl. It is therefore possible that while Yaʾqūb was unaware of the title of the forthcoming masnawi by Jāmī, he may at least have been informed that it was patterned after one of Ibn Sinā’s visionary tales (the others being Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān and Risālat al-ṭair).

It would appear as though the mere act of receiving the poetry of Jāmī from Herat created excitement at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. For example, in another of Yaʾqūb’s letters we find reference to an embarrassing mishap involving a Timurid delegation to Tabriz that mistakenly presented Yaʾqūb

---

34 Yaʾqūb to Jāmī, in Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 307.
and Qāżī ʾĪsā with a copy of al-Futūḥāt al-Makkīyya by Ibn al-ʿArabī instead of what was supposed to be the Dīvān of Jāmī. A meaningful description of the event is all but obscured by the letter-writer’s high-flown rhetoric and polite turns of phrase, so characteristic of the Persian epistolary style. It does nonetheless provide yet another indication that Jāmī’s poetry was coveted by members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Given the formality of the presentation, it also raises the possibility that such delegations played an important and hitherto unexamined role in diplomatic relations between the Timurids and the Āq Qoyūnlū.

The artistic vibrancy of Yaʿqūb’s court in Tabriz, which rivaled its Timurid counterpart in Herat, is reflected in the Hasht bihisht by Qazvīnī. The Hasht bihisht contains the names of some forty poets and dilettantes attached to the Āq Qoyūnlū court of Yaʿqūb who do not appear in the Chaghhatay Majālis al-nafaqī’s of Mir ʿAlī Shir. Thus, the following list of poets was inserted by Qazvīnī into the 6th chapter, entitled, “The elegant, the graceful, and the remainder of the poets of the kingdoms whose poems reached Khurasan and the inhabitants of that place approved of their poetry”:

Khvāja Muʿzaffar Miʿmār [kātib in the dīvān of Yaʿqūb]; Maulānā Bayānī; Maulānā Vafāʾī; Maulānā Unṣī Kātib; Maulānā Khurrāmī; Maulānā Gharqī; ʿAli Khān Mirzā [senior amīr]; Kuchik Beg [amīr]; Maulānā Āgāhī; Maulānā Šīfātī; Maulānā Ṭāhirī; Mir Humāyūn; Shāh ʿInāyat Allah [vāzīr]; Shāh Mahmūd Jān [vāzīr and uncle of another vāzīr, Shāh ʿInāyat Allah]; Maulānā Mazhari; Maulānā Raфиqī; Maulānā Ḥaqīrī; Maulānā Juzvī; Maulānā Fidāʾī; Maulānā Shamsī; Maulānā Bāṭīnī; Maulānā Halākī; Maulānā Şafqī; Maulānā [Bābā] Fighānī; Maulānā Qabūlī; Maulānā Ḥairānī; Mir Fānāʾī; Maulānā Ruḥī; Maulānā Ṭūṭī; Maulānā Khātamī; Khvāja Maqṣūd Kāzarūnī; Maulānā Jalāl al-Dīn Muḥammad Davānī Siddiqī [author of the Akhlāq-i Jalālī]; [Name missing (but with a brief notice) in two MSS]; Khvāja Masʿūd; Maulānā Sulamī; Maulānā Madiḥī; Maulānā Naṣībī; Maulānā Faṭḥī; Mir Dallāl; Khvāja ʿImād.

---

38 For a detailed account of the incident, which seems to have been a premeditated effort to discredit the leader of the delegation, Sayyid (also Amīr) Kamāl al-Dīn Ḥusain Abīvardī, see Khvāndamīr, Habīb al-siyar 4.450–51. The collection is referred to as the “Kulliyāt” of Jāmī in the Habīb al-siyar.


40 Qazvīnī, Hasht bihisht, 300–312. According to their notices, the following poets resided in Shiraz or other Āq Qoyūnlū territories: Maulānā Humāʿī; Maulānā Yārī; Maulānā Mirākī.
In addition to the poets cited by Qazvīnī, the *Tuhfa-i Sāmī* mentions several others associated with the Āq Qoyūnlū court, including Anṣārī Qumī, Maulānā Ḥabībī Bargshādī, and Dīvānā Naqqāsh Tabrizī. It is interesting to note that, in his Persian translation of the *Majālis al-nafāʾís* (entitled *Laṭāʾif-nāma*), Fakhrī Haravī (d. 928/1521–22) mentions only five poets, including Yaʿqūb’s *vazīr*, Qāẓī ʿĪsā, as being affiliated with the Āq Qoyūnlū: Darvīsh Dahaki (or Dehgi) Qazvīnī, Qāẓī ʿĪsā, Shaikh Najm al-Dīn [Masʿūd], Khvāja Afżal, and Shahīdī Qumī. As Losensky has suggested, the literati of Herat and Khurasan appear to have known surprisingly little about the poets of western Iran who did not visit their region. Alternatively, this could be an indication that Timurid writers were indifferent to, if not disapproving of, Āq Qoyūnlū poets whose literary output they may have regarded as inferior to their own. Be that as it may, it is interesting to observe that Qāẓī ʿĪsā and his cousin, Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd, the *muqarrab* and boon-companion (*nadīm*) of Yaʿqūb, were themselves considered accomplished poets.

Qāẓī ʿĪsā Sāvajī: Reform-Minded Vazīr, Poet, and Ill-fated Lover

Yaʿqūb’s official historian, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, laments the fact that despite “having the reins of government entirely in his hands,” Qāẓī ʿĪsā regularly neglected affairs of state by insisting on mingling with poets. “Though the affairs of the world might reach the brink of calamity,” Khunjī-Iṣfahānī writes, “the qāẓī would wait for the completion of a plaintive hemistich.” According to the notice on him in the Persian translation of the *Majālis al-nafāʾís* by Fakhrī Haravī, Qāẓī ʿĪsā was melancholic by nature (*saudāʾī miżāj*) and so consumed (*mashghūf*) by poetry that he routinely composed at least ten *ghazals* a day. Qāẓī ʿĪsā’s interest in poetry was such
that an anthology (divân) of ghazals was attributed to him, a copy of which is held in the Österreichische Nationalbibliothek.\footnote{Gustav Flügel, \textit{Die arabischen, persischen, und türkischen Handschriften der Kaiserlich-Königlichen Hof-Bibliothek zu Wien}, 3 vols. (Vienna: K. K. Hof- und Staatsdruckerei, 1865), 1:575–76. The first twenty-six pages of the \textit{Dīvān} contain ghazals by Qāżī ʿĪsā while the remaining two pages include comments and a conclusion which was written in a different hand. A sketch portrait of Qāżī ʿĪsā and Najm al-Dīn Maṣʿūd also appears in the MS, which contains the completion date of 912/1506, or fifteen years after the death of Qāżī ʿĪsā. An edition of the \textit{Dīvān}, based on a MS attributed to Idrīs bidlīsī, along with the poetry of Najm al-Dīn Maṣʿūd, was recently published in Iran. See Idrīs b. Ṭabīb, \textit{Dīvān-i du sarāyanda az qarn-i nuhum: Qāżī ʿĪsā Sāvajī va Shaikh Najm al-Dīn Maṣʿūd}, ed. Amīna Maḥallātī (Tehran: Kitābkhāna, Mūza va Markaz-i Asnād-i Majlis-i Shūrā-yi Islāmī, 1390/2012).}

It should be noted that the negative statement by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī concerning Qāżī ʿĪsā’s preoccupation with poetry appears in a section of the ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī in which the attitude of Khunjī-Iṣfahānī toward Yaʿqūb’s vazīr and chief qāżī is decidedly negative. This undoubtedly reflects the fact that it was around this time (894–95/1489) that Qāżī ʿĪsā consolidated his near-absolute control of the Āq Qoyūnlū administration, along with his cousin, Najm al-Dīn Maṣʿūd, who in that year was appointed \textit{amīr-i dīvān}, or deputy of the sultan.\footnote{Minorsky, “Aq-Qoyulu and Land Reforms,” 452. See also Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 357, where Khunjī-Iṣfahānī says that “the qāżī nearly reached the position of a king (ṣāhib takht).” On the position \textit{amīr-i dīvān} under the Āq Qoyūnlū, see \textit{Encyclopaedia Iranica}, s.v. “Divān, iii. Government Office” (by C. Edmund Bosworth). See also, Ismāʿīl Ḥasanzāda, \textit{Hukūmat-i Turkmānān-i Qarā Qoyūnlū va Āq Qoyūnlū dar Irān} (Tehran: Sāzmān-i Muṭālaʿa va Tadvīn-i Kutub-i ʿUlūm-i Dānishgāh-hā, 1379/2000), 181–83.}

The maneuver was part of an ambitious campaign by Qāżī ʿĪsā to completely reorganize the empire along the lines of a traditional Perso-Islamic state based on a centralized bureaucracy and agriculturally-derived tax revenues. In order to effect these reforms, Qāżī ʿĪsā sought the abolition of the Mongol-era \textit{tamghā} commercial tax and the revocation of numerous \textit{suyūrghāls} and tax immunities (\textit{musallamiyāt}) that had been granted to influential civilian dignitaries, many of whom were members of the religious intelligentsia whose pious foundations (\textit{auqāf}) relied on the revenues generated by such grants and tax-shelters.\footnote{Maria Eva Subtelny, “Centralizing Reform and Its Opponents in the Late Timurid Period,” \textit{Iranian Studies} 21, nos. 1–2 (1988): 128. See also Woods, \textit{Aqquyunlu}, 144. Subtelny draws parallels between the aborted Āq Qoyūnlū reforms of Qāżī ʿĪsā and the similarly unsuccessful centralization attempted by the Timurid vazīr, Khvāja Majd al-Dīn Muḥammad (d. 899/1494).}

As Khunjī-Iṣfahānī indicates, Qāżī ʿĪsā’s reforms were aimed at reestablishing the primacy of the sharīʿa in matters of land-tenure and were framed as part of a larger “return to Islam” strategy that sought to curb the lingering influence of Turko-Mongol customary law (\textit{yāsā-yi...})
Chingiz-khānī), particularly in the provinces. Despite its religious underpinning, the policy failed to persuade the landed ‘ulamā’, who probably shared the view expressed by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, namely that “the bad actions of the qāżī” needed to be opposed. Khunjī-Iṣfahānī goes so far as to give mocking tribute to Qāżī Īsā’s sweeping powers in a series of rhyming couplets that call to mind the miracles attributed to Jesus (Īsā), the vazīr’s namesake:

Because of Īsā, the religion of Islām exists,
Because of Īsā, the power of belief is improved,
Because of Īsā, the forearm of prosperity is strengthened,
Because of Īsā, deceased ancestors are enlivened,
Because of Īsā, the goblet of god-fearingness is purified,
Because of Īsā, chronic sickness is healed.

Elsewhere in the ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī quotes several lines of poetry attributed to Qāżī Īsā (in the form of fragments [qiṭʿa]; initial verses [matla’]; and a ghazal). These verses, which were probably not chosen at random, may have been selected because they suggest that Qāżī Īsā was an embattled and isolated figure who apparently suffered some sort of public disgrace. Some indication of this disgrace is evinced in the ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, where the following verse of Qāżī Īsā is recorded:

Surreptitiously people on every side laugh at my betrayal,
I know it, [but] amazingly I make myself ignorant of what I know.

In another fragment quoted by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, Qāżī Īsā likens his shame to an ignoble death:

Everywhere mourners are arranged in ranks, singing lamentations,
I go there out of desire, since maybe they will speak for my sake.
So completely have I been dishonored for your sake,
That wherever two people sit together, they speak about me.

Exactly what these shameful circumstances could have been is not elucidated in the ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī. One possible explanation is contained in

51 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, 355. On how this tension was also evident in the socioeconomic reforms of the Timurids, see Subtelny “Centralizing Reform,” 126–27 and 134–35.
52 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, 355. In a show of public protest, the chief qāżī of Fars, Davānī, removed his white turban and refused to wear it again until the night of the death of Ya’qūb. For a reference, see Woods, Aqquyunlu, 145.
54 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, 352.
the notice on Qāżī ʿĪsā in the Hasht bihisht, which provides another explanation why Jāmī dedicated his Salāmān va Absāl to the Āq Qoyūnlū.

According to the Hasht bihisht, Qāżī ʿĪsā fell in love with and married one of Yaʿqūb’s sisters.56 Their union was rejected, presumably by senior members of the Bāyandur clan—most importantly the Queen Mother, Saljūqshāh Begum—on the grounds that it was contrary to Turkish custom, which Qazvinī describes as “the ignorance of the Turks” (jāhilīyat-i Turkān).57 This objection does not appear, however, to reflect a blanket prohibition by the Bāyandur elite against marrying outside the clan. For example, the Āq Qoyūnlū had no reservations about allowing Bāyandur females to marry a) leaders of the Şafavī Sufi order, b) heirs to the Shirvānshāh principality, and c) Sufi personalities, such as the ʿAbd al-Vahhāb sayyids of Tabriz.58 In addition to these examples, the well-known marriages of Üzūn Ḥasan’s family to the Greek princesses of Trabzon (e.g., Theodora Komnene), further suggest that the Āq Qoyūnlū practiced exogamy.59 And whereas the motives for scuttling Qāżī ʿĪsā’s marriage might be unclear, Qazvinī appears to suggest that the union may even have produced a child:

Qāżī [ʿIsā], the martyr, was entirely sweet-natured and amorous. He fell in love with a sister (hamshīra) of sultan Yaʿqūb Khan, and in that affection the attributes of Lailī had been changed into Majnūn. Since sultan Yaʿqūb

57 Qazvinī, Hasht bihisht, 294.
58 The daughter of Üzūn Ḥasan (i.e., Yaʿqūb’s sister), Ḥalīma begī Āghā (also referred to in the sources asʿĀlamshāh Khātūn), was given in marriage to Shaikh Ḥairdār b. Junaid Șafavī. At the time, Ḥaidār was a young nephew of Üzūn Ḥasan, but went on to transform the Șafavids into a formidable corps of militant Șufls. As for the ʿAbd al-Vahhāb sayyids, the daughter of Yaʿqūb’s younger brother, Yūsuf Mīrzā, was betrothed to Mir Sīrāj al-Dīn (also Nūr al-Dīn) ʿAbd al-Vahhāb, who served as the shaikh al-Islām of Azerbaijan (Tabriz). For references, see Iskandar Bīg Turkmān Munsī, Tārikh-e ʿālam-ārā-ye ʿAbbāsi, ed. ʿIraj Afsār, 2 vols. (Tehran: Amīr Kabīr, 1334/1955–56), 151, 153. For an English translation, see Eskandar Bīg Monshī, The History of Shah ʿAbbās the Great: Tārikh-e ʿālam-ārā-ye ʿAbbāsi, trans. Roger M. Savory, 2 vols. (Boulder, CO.: Westview Press, 1988), 241 and 244. See also Khvāndamīr, Habīb al-siyār 4680; Aubin, “Études safavides,” 57; and Maria Szuppe, “La participation des femmes de la famille royale à l’exercice du pouvoir en Iran safavide au XVIe siècle,” pt. 2, Studia Iranica 24, no. 1 (1995): 62.
59 In a similar case to that of Qāżī ʿĪsā, Saljūqshāh Begum (mother of Yaʿqūb), convened a council of princes of the blood in order to prevent the widow of her eldest son, Sulṭān-Ḵalīl, from remarrying. Her suitor was Husain Chalabi, who was a disciple of the Khalvatī shaikh ῾Umar Rašān and the brother of Üzūn Ḥasan’s vazīr, Qāżī Ḥasan. According to the Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūšenī, the Queen Mother opposed the union because of Husain Chalabi’s rank as a “commoner” (bir raʿiyat) and conspired to have the couple murdered. See Gūšanī, Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūšenī, 93–94; cited in Woods, Aqquyunlu, 16.
desired a son free from blemish and vice (ibn-i salām), Lailī was conveyed to Majnūn according to the prescribed way of Islam (bar nahj-i Islām), and he freed both of them from the confinement of separation. However, the protective prohibitions of the ignorant (jāhilīyat) Türkmen customs triumphed over him. He [Qāżī ‘Īsā] therefore abandoned [her]. During the time of his affection for that girl, the qāżī recited this matla:\n\nI depart for the sake of that friend, for whose sake I could die,  
My life is a sacrifice to her name, her name [which] cannot be uttered.\n
An indication that Qāżī ‘Īsā was embroiled in scandal is also intimated in the Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī. In the maṣnaṣī attributed to Idrīs Bidlīsī, which was quoted earlier in its connection to the nature of Ya’qūb and Ibrāhīm Gulshānī’s relationship, Bidlīsī declares that the kingdom of Ya’qūb found order (niẓām) and beauty (zībā) through Qāżī ‘Īsā and Najm al-Dīn Maṣʿūd, respectively.\n
\n\n\n60 Qazvīnī, Hasht bihisht, 294.  
61 Gulshānī, Menākīb-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī, 81.  
62 Gulshānī, Menākīb-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī, 81.
On account of those two people, the Yaʿqūbian state
Found order and arrangement to the utmost extent.
That one (Qāżī ʿĪsā) elevated the affairs of religion to the celestial spheres,
This one (Najm al-Dīn) made luminous the star of kingship.
ʿĪsā was at the forefront (ṣadr) of the heavens,
Najm Masʿūd was Jupiter-like.
The shāh followed that one (Qāżī ʿĪsā) on account of his īlm,
And this one (Najm al-Dīn) was a dear friend of the people on account of
his ḥilm.
ʿĪsā revivified the religious law (sharʿ),
On account of Najm, the state was full of light and radiance.
ʿĪsā breathed spirit into the eye of religion,
Which was illuminated by the star of the divine world (najm-i ʿālam-i qudsī).

Thus, the impression given by the poem of Bidlīsī is that Qāżī ʿĪsā, in his
official capacities as sadr and qāżī al-qużāt, epitomized normative Islam,
whereas Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd represented its mystical counterpart. That
the two Sāvajis respectively embodied the exoteric and esoteric aspects
of Islamic religion finds support in the ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī which describes
a ceremony held on the eve of Yaʿqūb’s campaign against his rebellious
brother-in-law, Shaikh Ḥaidar Ṣafavī, in 893/1488. According to Khunjī-
Iṣfahānī, Āq Qoyūnlū forces gathered near Ardabil and staged a military
review, after which auguries (fāl) were taken from the Qurʾān for the com-
ing battle. The ’qāżī al-qużat’ (i.e., Qāżī ʿĪsā) opened to Qurʾān 8:12 and
Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd followed by reading a similar verse from the Masnavī
(5:3677–89) of Rūmī.

Qāżī ʿĪsā’s Banishment from Court and His Tell-tale Poetry

The author of the Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī suggests that Qāżī ʿĪsā fell in
with “unorthodox” (bad maẕhab) individuals who caused him to neglect
his prayers, and thus necessitating Ibrāhīm Gulshanī’s intervention.
With the shaikh’s assistance, Qāżī ʿĪsā apparently regained his piety and

---

63 Gulshanī Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī, 81.
64 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 293. See also the prevalence of mystical themes
and terminology in the letters that Najm al-Dīn addressed to Jāmī, in Urunbaev and
Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 312–13 (letters no. 23, 24, 25, and 26).
65 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, 293–94. For the passages from the Masnavī, see
Rūmī, Mathnawī, bk. 5, lines 3677–89.
66 Gulshanī, Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī, 68. Discussed in Dunietz, “Qāḍī Ḥusayn
Maybudi,” 135.
developed a deep attachment to Gulshanī. Accordingly, this bond became so great that the qāżī began to neglect his official duties, preferring instead to isolate himself with Ibrāhīm Gulshanī while the two engaged in extended periods of fasting and prayer. Disturbed at his increasingly bizarre behavior, Qāżī ʿĪsā’s relatives appealed directly to Yaʿqūb, and claimed that he had “gone mad” (dīvāna). Gulshanī apparently acceded to the wishes of the Sāvaji family, tempering the zeal of Qāżī ʿĪsā and reportedly inducing him to return to his administrative duties by quoting to him the hadīth: “The justice (ʿadl) of one hour [of a just ruler] is better than seventy years of religious worship (ʿibādat).”

Despite his hostility to Qāżī ʿĪsā, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī never mentions the spiritual or personal crisis that supposedly consumed him. Likewise, the official chronicles of the Timurid and Safavid periods, which would have gained nothing by concealing Āq Qoyūnlū foibles, are silent on the failings of Qāżī ʿĪsā and his alleged relationship with Yaʿqūb’s sister. As a result, further indications of Qāżī ʿĪsā’s purported troubles can only be inferred from the masnāvī of Bīdlishī in the Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī and by fragments of poetry attributed to Qāžī ʿĪsā in the Hasht bihisht and the Tuḥfa-i Sāmī. For example, Bīdlishī, still addressing Qāżī ʿĪsā as “that one” and Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd as “this one,” suggests that a crisis led to the alienation of Qāżī ʿĪsā and Najm al-Dīn from the Āq Qoyūnlū court but that Yaʿqūb eventually forgave them:

That one became a martyr on the path of a friend,
Afterwards, the king did not at all draw near to this one.
That one found the station of the martyrs,
The other one became isolated like the guiding star (najm-i hudā).
As the vicissitudes of bad faith and the crooked wheel of fate passed,
My soul thought of their exile.
The shāh and the notables, in such a separation,
Turned life into sin (tāvān) right before my eyes.
Making a connection to the world of sanctity,
Idrīs is in prayer for the remembrance of those people.
In the sublime [Hasht] bihisht garden, Shāh Yaʿqūb
Found commanding power atop the throne of forgiveness.
That spirit is in every pillar of his sultanate,

---

67 Dunietz, “Qāḍī Ḥusayn Maybudī,” 135.
68 Gulshanī, Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī, 68; and Dunietz, “Qāḍī Ḥusayn Maybudī,” 136. In Arabic: ʿadlu sāʿatin khāruj min ʿibādati sabʿīna sanatin. This hadīth is found in such Perso-Islamic mirrors for princes as Ghazālī, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, 15 (trans. 14). It also appears in his Kīmiyā-yi saʿādat and the Iḥyāʾ ulūm al-dīn. For references, see Ghazālī, Ghazālī’s Book of Counsel, 14 n. 2.
Truth was conveyed in the shadow of his clemency. 
The wind of preservation opened their souls:
[in Arabic] “The lover does not reveal the beloved.”
May the mausoleums of both [worlds] be full of light:
[in Arabic] “The star (al-najm) does not appear to slumbering mortals.”
Thankful at this moment for the gracious patron,
I remember the justice from those assemblies.69

Glimpses of Ya’qūb and His Troubles

Qāzī ʻĪsā was not the only figure in the Āq Qoyūnlū court whose travails may have been expressed through the medium of poetry. According to the Majālis al-ʻushshāq, a collection of Sufi biographies compiled by the Timurid ṣadr, Kamāl al-Dīn Gāzurgāhī, Ya’qūb had himself acquired the “manner of an [ʻUmar] Khayyām” (taur-i khayyāmī) and the capacity to string “jeweled letters.”70 To substantiate his claim, Gāzurgāhī quotes a rubāʻī that he attributes to Ya’qūb, which also appears in the Tuḥfa-i Sāmī and the Taẕkira-i Raużāt al-salāṭīn:

I see little certainty in the world,
With all of its joy I see thousands of sorrows.
It is like an old frontier way station (ribāṭ), since from all its sides,
I see a path to the desert of non-existence.71

According to the Majālis al-ʻushshāq, Ya’qūb composed the verses after recognizing that his earthly love (ʻishq-i majāz) was in fact a sign of divine

69 Gulshanī, Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī, 81–82. If we accept that such samplings reflect actual events, then the following verses of Qāzī ʻĪsā, could be allusions to his marriage and the objections of certain members of the Bāyandur clan. Take, for example, the following māṭla‘ which is cited in the Hasht bihisht (p. 294):

In the tenth month of the solar year the friend gave [her] vow,
And I stitched my eyes to the path.
I made my heart like kabob,
But [she] did not come, so I burned.
The six other māṭla‘s quoted by Qazvīnī are similarly plaintive and reflect Qāzī ʻĪsā’s wish to be reunited with his beloved. See also this introductory verse from the Tuḥfa-i Sāmī (p. 118):

I do not bring [her] name to my tongue, but when I speak of my heartache,
Everyone knows that I speak of the injustice of that vow-breaker.

70 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʻushshāq, 324.

71 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʻushshāq, 324; Sām Mīrzā, Taẕkira-i Tuḥfa-i Sāmī, 25; and Fakhrī Haravī, Taẕkira-i Raużāt al-salāṭīn, 65. Kamāl al-Dīn Gāzurgāhī claims that the verses were originally his. Also note that since Sufis use ribāṭ in the sense of a “Sufi lodge,” there is a mystical significance to Ya’qūb’s wandering in the “desert of non-existence” (i.e., the annihilation of the ego-self).
or true love (‘ishq-i haqqi). Having discovered that this was his “real objective” (maqsūd) in life, he apparently shunned the affairs of kingship (umūr-i mulki) and became completely indifferent (bī iʿtibārī) to worldly concerns. It is not clear whether Yaʿqūb’s nonchalance was part of an ascetic Sufi doctrine, the result of his continued wine-drinking, or the deep despair that several sources agree incapacitated him after the deaths of his mother, Saljūqshāh Begum, and his younger brother Yūsuf in 896/1490. Whatever the cause, the entry by Gāzurgāhī on Yaʿqūb—which is replete with images of wine-filled goblets and decanters—suggests that the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler struggled with depression throughout his twelve-year reign.

Gāzurgāhī, who was personally acquainted with Yaʿqūb and was awarded the Azerbaijani village of Bayābāng by him as a suyūrghāl, hints at the psychological fragility of his patron by saying that many individuals reach manhood only to succumb to the pain (dard) and “bloody tears” created by their own jealousy (rashk). In a more direct reference, Gāzurgāhī claims that Yaʿqūb’s love for others, taken here to be earthly beloveds, had become an impediment because it hung a “noose around the neck of his heart.” The notice in the Majālis al-ʿushshāq indicates that Yaʿqūb’s distractedness (shīfta and āshufta) endured, even after the personal intervention of Gāzurgāhī.

The picture of Yaʿqūb presented by Gāzurgāhī is hard to reconcile with the image presented in the Taẕkira-i Raużāt al-salāṭīn by Fakhrī Haravī. Composed between 958–62/1551–55, the Raużāt al-salāṭīn contains a sympathetic notice on Yaʿqūb in a chapter entitled, “Explaining the conditions of the sultans of Iraq and Rum who at one time had wholly busied themselves by turning their respectful attention to composing poetic verses.” Fakhrī Haravī begins the entry by citing ‘Alīshīr Navāʿī whom he quotes

---

72 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʿushshāq, 324.
73 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʿushshāq, 324.
74 Woods, Aqquyunlu, 145–47.
75 For reference to an illustrated MS copy of the Majālis al-ʿushshāq, a miniature painting of which depicts a circle of courtiers weeping around Yaʿqūb, see B. W. Robinson, A Descriptive Catalogue of the Persian Paintings in the Bodleian Library (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1958), 102.
76 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʿushshāq, 323. See also Encyclopaedia Iranica, s.v. “Gāzurgāhī, Mir Kamāl-al-Dīn Hosayn” (by Shiro Ando). Kamāl al-Dīn Gāzurgāhī eventually left Āq Qoyūnlū territory for Herat where he lived as a dervish and studied under Jāmī.
77 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʿushshāq, 324.
78 Gāzurgāhī, Majālis al-ʿushshāq, 324.
as saying that Yaʿqūb was a youth who was distinguished by his praise-worthy essence (ẕāt), laudable attributes (ṣifāt), dervish-like qualities, and self-effacing disposition (fānī-mashrab). In addition to the morose rubāʿī quoted above, the Raużāt al-salāṭīn contains a ghazal attributed to Yaʿqūb which has a dramatically different tune. Yaʿqūb presents himself as ruler bent on conquest:

I will slay the army with a tear and raise the standard with a sigh,
I will seize the earth with these troops.
I snatched the belt from the King of the Egyptians (i.e., Mamluk sultan Qāyit Bāy),
Caesar is my page, and the Creator (khāliq) is my refuge.
As much as the shāh of Herat (i.e., Sulṭān-Ḥusain) is, with heart and soul,
our friend,
My desire is to strike at the throne of the Samarqand court.
If the kings of India and the sultans of Zanzibar
Are disobedient to me, their faces will be blackened with shame.

Brotherly Discord in the Āq Qoyūnlū Household

By far the most informative notice on Yaʿqūb is the Tuhfa-i Sāmī. In addition to the information it contains on Yaʿqūb’s brief tenure as governor of Diyar-Bakr and the date of his enthronement, the Tuhfa-i Sāmī emphasizes the high regard Yaʿqūb held for poets and their craft. For example, Sām Mīrzā asserts that during the reign of Yaʿqūb, the “star of poetry rose to the zenith of the Pleiades,” adding that poetry enjoyed a following much like the religion of the Sāmirī magician did amongst the ancient Israelites.

It is interesting to note that while the Tuhfa-i Sāmī does not contain information suggesting that Yaʿqūb was a drunkard or that he underwent a spiritual transformation, it does seem to suggest that fraternal tensions between him and his brother Yūsuf culminated in the death of the latter. According to the Tuhfa-i Sāmī, in 896/1490 the shāh (i.e., Yaʿqūb) became a “prisoner of his own actions” and was “blinded [to or by] the beauty of the life of Yūsuf.” At the time, Yaʿqūb would have been around

80 Fakhrī Haravī, Taẕkira-i Raużāt al-salāṭīn, 65.
81 Fakhrī Haravī, Taẕkira-i Raużāt al-salāṭīn, 66; and Sām Mīrzā, Taẕkira-i Tuhfa-i Sāmī, 25. For evidence that the Āq Qoyūnlū, particularly Üzün Hasan, held the Mamluks, specifically Qāyit Bāy, as inferior, see Melvin-Koushki, “The Delicate Art of Aggression,” 193–214.
twenty-eight, while Yūsuf was fourteen years his junior. It is therefore entirely likely that the jealousy intimated by Kamāl al-Dīn Gāzurgāhī is a veiled reference to an intense rivalry that existed between the uterine siblings—something the poetry of Fīghānī also hints at. That this rivalry may have culminated in bloodshed appears to be suggested by Sām Mīrzā, who in alluding to the Qur’anic story of Joseph and his brothers, mentions that Yūsuf was said to have been “bound to the tip of the claw of the wolf.”85

John Woods has observed how the historical sources give differing accounts of the deaths of Yūsuf and Yaʿqūb. While the ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī attributes their deaths to an outbreak of the plague, Woods has noted that the majority of foreign and later Iranian sources (Mamluk, Italian, and Safavid chronicles) agree that their deaths were unnatural and involved either drunken rages or poisoning.86 As if to indicate that Yūsuf was indeed felled in fratricidal rage, the entry by Sām Mīrzā on Yaʿqūb contains a poem, that if read with the understanding that the term for liver in Persian, jīgar, is a common epithet for an intimate or close relative, suggests that members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court were complicit in Yaʿqūb’s anger toward his brother:

Every treacherous thorn that the ill-wisher (bad-khvāh) places in your (Yaʿqūb) path,
Becomes a dagger that will not puncture anything but your own liver.87

Even Jāmī was aware of the brotherly plots and snares that appear to have strained Yaʿqūb. For example, the despair of the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler is readily apparent in a quatrain attributed to Jāmī which appears in the Lubb al-tavārīkh by the Safavid historian Mīr Yaḥyā (Ḥusainī Saifī) Qazvīnī. The verses, which can be read as a reference to the Biblical story of Jacob and Joseph and which were written after the death of Yaʿqūb, also speak to the intimate nature of their (Yaʿqūb and Jāmī) long-distance rapport:

---

84 Losensky, Welcoming Fīghānī, 67–68.
85 Sām Mīrzā, Taẕkira-i Tuḥfa-i Sāmī, 24.
86 One of the more salacious accounts is provided by the Mamluk chronicler Ibn al-Himsī, who alleges that a drunken Yaʿqūb killed the Queen Mother after she rebuked him for carrying on a homosexual affair. Wanting to avenge her murder, Yūsuf confronted Yaʿqūb but was slain as well. Woods, Aqquyunlu, 145–47.
87 Sām Mīrzā, Taẕkira-i Tuḥfa-i Sāmī, 24.
My heart throbbed a lifetime on account of the affection of Yaʿqūb, 
Yaʿqūb departed and [I] did not see the face of Jacob. 
The toil, which reached me through the sorrows of Yaʿqūb, 
Never wrenched Jacob from despairing over Joseph.88

Salāmān va Absāl as Art Imitating Life

As has been demonstrated, the taẕkira literature depicts Yaʿqūb and the Āq Qoyūnlū court in two different lights. On the one hand, Yaʿqūb and Qāżī ʿĪsā are presented as connoisseurs of Persian belles-lettres. They are thus statesmen whose fondness for poetry went beyond mere patronage and involved their own efforts as amateur poets. On the other hand, their appreciation for Persian poetry, which by the ninth/fifteenth century had reached the height of its rhetorical complexity, is contrasted in the taẕkira literature with the depths to which their own lives had descended. It is not unusual, then, that some of their poetry should have reflected these issues. What is more, the notices in the literary biographies seem to indicate that the characters in Salāmān va Absāl, as well as the implicit advice it contains, would have been recognized by members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court as reflections of the personalities and tumultuous events surrounding them.

Stated differently, Yaʿqūb’s capriciousness and addiction to wine is allegorically concealed behind the narrative and principal characters of Salāmān va Absāl. As the next chapter will attempt to demonstrate, Jāmī achieved this while simultaneously communicating a theosophical message by, in turn, allegorically concealing its religio-mystical significance behind the very same narrative and characters. Thus Salāmān, Absāl, the King, the Sage, and Venus, at once become symbols for speculative interpretations of Sufi mystical transformation and symbols of actual people and events that dominated the life of the Āq Qoyūnlū court.

88 Qazvīnī, Lubb al-tavārīkh, 365. It is interesting to note that the chronicle by Qazvīnī includes a eulogy to Yaʿqūb that does not reflect the pejorative line usually espoused by the official Safavid histories.
CHAPTER FIVE

A THEOSOPHICAL INTERPRETATION OF SALĀMĀN VA ABSĀL AND ITS RELEVANCE TO ITS HISTORICAL SETTING

There is, in the outer form of every tale,
A certain share of its meaning meant for those who are able to see fine points.
Given that the outer form of this tale has been completed,
You must now attain to that meaning.

—Jāmī, Salāmān va Absāl

In his study of the visionary tales of Ibn Sīnā, Henry Corbin points out that it is a mistake to read the Salāmān and Absāl cycle as a “simple and banal” allegory. He goes on to explain the potency of the symbolism of the tale by first arguing that the Greek version of the story is, in the truest sense of the word, an “autobiography of the human soul.” In other words, besides being a dramatic expression of the Neo-Platonic hierarchy of intellects, the tale of Salāmān and Absāl is really the story of the lonely efforts of the soul to return to the primordial abode from whence it came. As Corbin explains, this journey began in pre-existence, when the soul was torn from its roots and “born” into the material realm as a child of Reason, which is understood to be its father, and of Love, which is taken to be its mother. Conflicted about its dual nature, the soul struggles to recognize its unique position as the isthmus, or barzakh, between the realm of Reason, which is characterized by masculinity, logic, and deliberation, and the realm of Love, marked by the traits of femininity, premonition, and spontaneity. According to Corbin’s hermeneutics, the soul qua “mystical child” must reconcile these opposing traits if it is to recognize its noble origins and escape (temporarily at least) from a corporeal existence (al-ḥayāt al-dunyā), which Islamic tradition maintains is fraught with danger, illusion, and deception.

The union of these opposites (conjunctio oppositorum), namely the union of Reason and Love, is a major theme of Salāmān va Absāl, in that it describes the eventual absorption of all the characters in the tale

---

1 Jāmī, SA, 445, lines 1075–76.
2 Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 235.
3 Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 220.
into the person of Salāmān. The King and Absāl, for example, who could be theosophical symbols of Reason and Love (father and mother), and thus two opposing forces in the soul of every human being, disappear from the narrative as Salāmān is transformed from carnal to spiritual man. This transformation occurs when Absāl is consumed by the fire, and Salāmān inherits his father's throne. Another, more subtle transformation occurs when the Sage substitutes the memory of Absāl in Salāmān's heart with the image of Venus. Not only is Salāmān's loyalty to Absāl replaced by his newfound devotion to Venus, but his obedience to the Sage—who is none other than Salāmān's inner guide—is comparable to the Sufi aspirant who relinquishes all attachments and, as Sahl al-Tustarī (d. 283/896) is reported to have said, surrenders to his spiritual master "like a corpse in the hands of its washer."4 When Absāl, Venus, and the Sage amalgamate into Salāmān, who in turn absorbs his father, the King, during his investiture ceremony, Salāmān becomes the symbol of the perfect saint who has internalized his spiritual transformation. Not only does Salāmān become his own sage but also his own wet-nurse (dāya). The role of the wet-nurse in the attainment of enlightenment, though remarkable, is not a creation of Jāmī, and first appears in Persian poetry in a verse in book 1 of the _Masnavī_ by Rūmī, in which Rūmī refers to the Sufi saint as a dāya, the milk of whose spiritual knowledge nourishes the Sufi adept.5

This centripetal movement calls to mind the Sufi adept who transcends his sense of selfhood by embarking on an inner voyage, which is to say a personal journey in which he contemplates the true reality of the one-ness of God (tauhīd). According to mystical tradition, arriving at this "higher self" through the negation of the ego-self (nafs) usually involves the spiritual guidance of a Sufi shaikh, and in the case of _Salāmān va Absāl_, the shaikh is represented by the Sage (ḥakīm). The indispensible role of the ḥakīm, or shaikh in the spiritual transformation of an adept is a frequently discussed topic in classical Persian mysticism. In many cases, however, Sufi poets who wished to emphasize the esoteric nature of their knowledge or sought to shield themselves against the literalist ʿulamāʾ often avoided direct references to shaikhs. Instead, the shaikh was cast in the role of a Zoroastrian sage (pīr-i mughān), a prophet (usually Solomon or

---

4 For a discussion of how this utterance underpinned much of the pre-Mongol Sufi rhetoric on master-disciple relations, see Ahmet T. Karamustafa, _Sufism: The Formative Period_ (Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press, 2007), 117.
5 Rūmī, _Mathnawī_, bk. 1, line 422.
Khiḍr), or metaphorically portrayed as a mirror or emerald. In Rūmī’s Masnavī, the Sufi shaikh often takes the form of a divine physician or a saint (vali) who “heals the soul” through acts inspired by what Rūmī calls “the Divine Light.”

Salāmān va Absāl and the Maṣnawi of Rūmī

It is noteworthy that the “divine physician” (ṭabīb-i ilāhī) who facilitates the negation of the carnal soul of the adept is a central character in the first tale in book 1 of the Masnavī. As mentioned earlier, Reynold A. Nicholson was the first Western scholar to notice the similarities between this “peculiar” allegory (entitled as “The story of the king’s falling in love with a handmaiden and buying her”) and Salāmān va Absāl. The protagonists in Rūmī’s tale are similar to the main characters in Salāmān va Absāl, inasmuch as they can be understood to be symbols of the individual soul struggling to purify itself. The most obvious indication linking Salāmān va Absāl with the Maṣnawi lies in the fact that both masnavīs were written in the same metre, ramal musaddas maḥżūf. Another, more significant indication that Jāmī wrote his tale with an eye to Rūmī’s allegorical tale

---

7 On the subject of the Sufi shaikh or perfect saint in the poetry of Rūmī, see Schimmel, Triumphal Sun, 313.
8 Rūmī, Mathnawī, bk. 1, lines 236–46.
9 For a reference to these similarities, see Rūmī, Mathnawī 7:4. Jāmī, it is relevant to note, wrote a commentary, replete with terminology associated with Ibn al-ʿArabī and his followers, on the first two verses of the Masnavī, entitled, Risāla-i nāvīya, also known as Nay-nāma. For a study of the Risāla-i nāvīya, especially in its connection to Ibn al-ʿArabī and the Sufi conception of the Perfect Man, see Lloyd Ridgeon, “Naqshbandi Adorers of Rumi in the Late Timurid Period,” Mawlana Rumi Review 3 (2012): 146–56.
10 For a perceptive study of these peculiarities, especially as they “subvert” the mystical maṣnawi of Ḥakīm Sanā’ī (d. ca. 1130) and ʿAṭṭār, see Dick Davis, “Narrative and Doctrine in the First Story of Rūmī’s Mathnawī,” in Studies in Islamic and Middle Eastern Texts and Translations: In Memory of Norman Calder, ed. G. R. Hawting, J. A. Mojaddedi, and A. Samely (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2000), 93–104.
11 Maṣnawīs written according to the various ramal metres were typically Sufi-themed and/or didactic. See Johannes T. P. de Brujin, “The Individuality of the Persian Metre khaṭīf,” in Arabic Prosody and Its Applications in Muslim Poetry, ed. Lars Johanson and Bo Utas (Stockholm: Swedish Research Institute in Istanbul, 1994), 37. See also ʿAbbās Māhyār, ʿArūz-i fārsī: shīva-i nau barā-yi āmuzish-i ʿarūz va qāfiya (Tehran: Nashr-i Qaṭra, 1373/1994), 61–62. Salāmān va Absāl also bears many similarities to Nizāmī’s “Tale of Archimedes with a Chinese slave-girl,” which appears in the Iskandar-nāma in the section entitled Iqbal-nāma. According to Nizāmī’s tale, the incurable obsession of a king for his slave-girl is alleviated by a mysterious teacher (traditionally understood to be Aristotle), who administers a potion to the girl and causes her beauty to vanish, thus allowing the king to regain his
occurs at the very heart of *Salāmān va Absāl*: here, Jāmī quotes a line from Rūmī in order to announce that, like the *Masnavī*, his own tale is meant to be read allegorically. In other words, Jāmī invokes Rūmī in order to indicate (and justify) that the characters and events in *Salāmān va Absāl* are at once symbols of the process whereby a Sufi is spiritually purified and representations of actual historical figures. According to Jāmī, Rūmī’s tale was intended for (and was about) “the Sufi elect” (*khāssān*), who unlike the “common folk” (*ʿāmm*), could appreciate the fact that his story had a symbolical meaning reserved just for them. Jāmī explains that his tale, too, contains a deeper meaning, one which is likewise concealed (*pushīda*) from those who are not familiar with what Jāmī refers to as “the secret” (*rāz*):

> It is better to conceal the description of the elect from the common people,  
> May that gnostic (Rūmī), who said the following, be forever in his moment:  
> ‘It is better that the description of lovers (*vaṣf-i dilbarān*)  
> Be told in the garment of others (*dar libās-i digarān*).”

The line quoted by Jāmī varies slightly from the usual edited versions of the *Masnavī*. The original verse by Rūmī states that it is better that the “secret” of the lovers (*sirr-i dilbarān*) be told in the tales of others (*dar ḥadīs-i digarān*). Jāmī substitutes *vaṣf* for *sirr*, and *libās* for *ḥadīs*, a purposeful alteration which strengthens the notion that the so-called *khāssān* (elect) are at once an allusion to the Sufis and, as this study argues, to Ya'qûb and members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Since Jāmī employs this particular tale from the *Masnavī* to signal that *Salāmān va Absāl* has another (if not multiple) layer of meaning, it is necessary to explore how the two poems apparently relate to each other on the theosophical level.

The tale by Rūmī recounts the story of a king who enlists the powers of a physician-saint in order to cure his beloved of her love for another man.

---


The suffering of the love-sick king is brought on by his beautiful slave-girl, who routinely ignores his affection on account of her own ongoing infatuation with a goldsmith in Samarqand. The tale begins with a description of how the king, while on a hunting expedition, falls in love with the maiden and has her purchased. Once in the king’s possession, the girl is immediately stricken with a mysterious ailment. Desperate to see his beloved recover, the king runs weeping to the mosque, prays to God, and is visited in a dream (ruʿyā) by a saint, referred to as valī and pīr, who assures him that a sage (ḥakīm) will arrive to diagnose the girl’s illness and dispense a cure. A divine physician (variously referred to as ṭabīb, ṭabīb-i ilāhī, valī, and ḥakīm) enters the story and discovers the source of the slave-girl’s infatuation; he asks that the girl’s lover, the goldsmith, be brought from Samarqand so that they can be reunited. Once the health of the slave-girl improves, the divine physician gradually poisons the goldsmith in such a way that his beauty vanishes. The slave-girl eventually realizes that her beloved goldsmith is in fact “ugly, irksome, and deformed,” at which point the goldsmith dies.

Unsettling as the conclusion may be, on the theosophical plane it represents the dénouement to a personal spiritual journey like that depicted in Salāmān va Absāl. In fact, the characters in the tale by Rūmī and the symbolism they project closely resemble the purported intention of Salāmān va Absāl. To be more precise, the king, the slave-girl, the goldsmith, and the divine physician correspond to a certain degree to the King, Salāmān, Absāl, and the Sage in Jāmī’s tale. The king of the “spiritual and temporal realms” (mulk-i dīn va dunyā) in the tale by Rūmī may be understood to be a representation of the Divine Spirit in man, namely, the rūḥ, or in Neo-Platonic terminology, the Active or Tenth Intellect. Like Salāmān, the slave-girl may represent the Rational Soul, who, despite the love of the rūḥ, lusts after corporeal pleasure and is thus associated with the goldsmith; this in turn corresponds to the character Absāl in Salāmān va Absāl. Finally, as the apparent embodiment of the perfect saint (valī, murshid-i kāmil), the divine physician can represent Universal Reason (ʿaql-i kull), who thus corresponds to the Sage in Salāmān va Absāl; likewise, he embodies the attributes of a saint-shaikh and who, according to Jāmī, represents an emanation of the Divine (faiż-i ilāhī).

The correspondence between the two tales extends beyond their characters and encompasses the mystical symbolism of each major event. The most obvious agreement occurs when the divine physician in the Masnavī administers the poison to the goldsmith, thus achieving a spiritual goal similar to the process in Salāmān va Absāl whereby a fire kills
Absāl and the Sage effaces her memory from the heart of Salāmān and replaces it with the image of Venus.\textsuperscript{17} In both cases, the pleasure-seeking soul, represented by the slave-girl’s lust for the goldsmith, and Salāmān’s lust for Absāl, are superseded by a desire for noetic pleasures, and in both instances this transformation is achieved through the intervention of a figure resembling a Sufi master. Another similarity appears in the explanation that both poets provide at the conclusion of their stories. Rūmī explains that the murder of the goldsmith was carried out according to “divine command and inspiration” (\textit{amr va ilhām-i ilāh}; and elsewhere, \textit{az qaḍā} or “according to God’s will”). In a similar fashion, the epilogue to \textit{Salāmān va Absāl} explains the semiotics of the tale and emphasizes the role of the divine Agent in the destruction of Absāl, symbol of the carnal soul. Thus, both poets reveal the “secret” of spiritual transformation, namely that the purification of the soul of the adept, though reliant on his own determination (\textit{ʿazīmat}) and asceticism (\textit{zuhd}), is ultimately dependent on the will of God. While Jāmī based his version of Salāmān and Absāl on the Greek antecedents of the tale (i.e., the Arabic translation by Ḥunain b. Isḥāq and \textit{Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān} by Ibn Ṭufail), it would appear that he also patterned key aspects of it on the first tale in the \textit{Masnāvī}.

\textit{Love and the Imprint of the Theosophy of Ibn al-ʿArabī}

Fundamentally, these two tales are about the reciprocal love that Sufis believe exists between God and man, or between Creator (\textit{al-Khāliq}) and creature (\textit{al-khalq}). The ontological implications of this “higher” love were obviously developed by Ibn al-ʿArabī and the school of theosophy which emerged in his wake. Jāmī, himself a follower of the “Greatest Master” (\textit{al-shaikh al-akbar}), Ibn al-ʿArabī, is credited with effectively synthesizing in his writings the thought of Ibn al-ʿArabī and the love mysticism of Rūmī.\textsuperscript{18} Acknowledging this, we wonder if the meaning of love in \textit{Salāmān va Absāl} also reflects the theosophical writings of Ibn al-ʿArabī.

\textsuperscript{17} Fire is a pure and purifying element in Zoroastrianism. See Boyce, \textit{History of Zoroastrianism} 2:51–53.

Central to the Akbarian concept of love is the idea that the Breath of the All-Merciful, *al-nafas al-Raḥmānī*, was rather “a sigh” indicating the infinite loneliness of God and his longing to be known. Thus, the notion of a “pathetic” God formed the basis of what Ibn al-ʿArabī explained in his *al-Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya* as the three kinds of love: Natural (i.e., Physical) Love (*ḥubb ṭabīʿī*), Spiritual Love (*ḥubb rūḥānī*), and Divine Love (*ḥubb ilāhī*). These are also the three modes of being, or the very reason for creation, which reveal God to Himself through His creation and are instrumental to the mystical experience. For our purposes, Ibn al-ʿArabī’s typology of love is discernable in *Salāmān va Absāl*, whereby the symbolism of the characters and their actions reflect the Natural, Spiritual, and Divine types of Love. The path to Divine Love, in other words, which is the key to the mystical experience, and which Ibn al-ʿArabī described as the union or joining of Natural Love and Spiritual Love, is demonstrated in the transposition of Salāmān’s love for Absāl (Natural Love) by his love for Venus (Spiritual Love).

To understand this better, it is worth examining how each type of love is manifested in *Salāmān va Absāl*. Natural Love, or *ḥubb ṭabīʿī*, is a love in which the desire of the lover is simply to possess the beloved. Stated differently, the lover seeks the satisfaction of its own desires without concern for the satisfaction of the beloved. Being the lowest form of love, this profane adoration, as it were, is by definition “selfish” and is epitomized in the tale by the love of Salāmān, the symbol of the soul, for the material delights embodied by his beloved, Absāl. As the events in *Salāmān va Absāl* suggest, *ḥubb ṭabīʿī* is the love from which the Love for God proceeds, which is to say the path to mystical union necessarily starts with the love that is seated in the physical nature of the soul, i.e., Salāmān’s love for Absāl.

Contrasted with Natural Love is Spiritual Love, or *ḥubb rūḥānī*, which is situated in the adept who is always in search of the divine being whose image (*miṣāl*) or form (*ṣūrat*) he discovers in himself, or through which he discovers that he himself is the image/form. According to Ibn al-ʿArabī’s

---


paradoxical formulation, /Registered/ is love that has no other concern or
in other words, it is to negate the ego-self, to the extent that the temporal
lover becomes the means through which the love of the divine Beloved is
manifested as the love of the lover for the earthly (or spiritual) beloved.21
This kind of love appears to be depicted with Salāmān's love for, and his
complete identification with, the image of Venus, which, if we proceed
according to the doctrine of wahdat al-wujūd, is at once a sign of God
and man.

The third type of love (or being), namely Divine Love (ḥubb ilāhī), is
really the reciprocal love between the Creator and Himself.22 The first
aspect of this type of love is the initial act of love manifested in God's wish
that His Names and Attributes (of His unknowable Essence) be known or
discovered in created beings, a sentiment captured in a well-known hadith
qudsi in which God describes Himself as a "hidden Treasure who desired
to be known."23 This first act in the dialogue of love is reminiscent of the
King's longing for a son in Salāmān va Absāl. If we consider that the King
may be the embodiment of the divine wish "to be known," then his creat-
ing a son and losing him to Absāl, is akin to God's desire for Adam and His
creatures to resist earthly temptations and to acknowledge their divine
origin. It is interesting to note that Jāmī draws a parallel between the mel-
ancholy of the King and his dramatic intervention with an anecdote on
the jealousy of Khusrau Parvīz; here, he discovered that his beloved Shīrīn
had secretly fallen in love with Farhād.24 Keeping this analogy and the
concept of ḥubb ilāhī in mind, the following passage of Salāmān va Absāl
could be an indication that the King's sadness-turned-jealousy is in fact
a symbolic expression of God's own jealousy (al-ghaira al-ilāhiyya).25 The
Sufi belief that this jealousy is stirred when human beings usurp God's

---

21 Ibn al-ʿArabī, al-Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya 2:332; and Corbin, Alone with the Alone, 149. See also Chittick, “Divine Roots of Human Love,” 64–65.
22 Ibn al-ʿArabī, al-Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya 2:324 and 2:326; and Corbin, Alone with the Alone, 147 and 149.
24 Jāmī, SA, 435, lines 856–62.
25 On the paradox of God's jealousy (ghairat), out of which He smashes other objects
of worship while maintaining veils which prevent others from knowing His essence, see Chittick, Sufi Path of Love, 304–5. See also Mahdi Tourage, Rūmī and the Hermeneutics of Eroticism (Leiden: Brill, 2007), 47–51.
right to be the only object of worship is represented in Jāmī’s description of Salāmān’s veritable worship of Absāl:

The King of Greece saw how Salāmān
Was comfortable in his union with Absāl,
Lifetimes passed, and he did not refrain from this erring,
Nor did he turn the face of the heart away from his error.
His head remained empty of the crown of kingship,
He instead turned, high-headed, to her crown.
His fortune cast the royal throne beneath his feet,
So that it was the throne that kissed his foot.
Then, on account of his despair over this, a fire ignited within the King,
Time passed unhappily for him on account of this unhappiness.26

The second aspect of ḥubb ilāhī is the desire that the created entity experiences for God. According to Ibn al-ʿArabī, this desire is God’s sigh epiphanized as a physical form or figure, which is to say a theophany (tajallī), that occasions a nostalgia in created beings, specifically in those, i.e., Sufis, who recognize that the form or figure, along with the longing it provokes, are the means by which God “returns” to Himself.27 This second aspect of Divine Love, though outwardly manifested as the love of a being for God, is fundamentally the recognition that this desire is actually the sigh of God (al-nafās al-Raḥmānī).28 In other words, the being who sighs with longing is in fact the recipient of God’s sighs. As Corbin noted, this sympathy or con-spiration (ham-damī) is the reconciliation of Natural Love and Spiritual Love; it is the marriage of both facets of the soul (Reason/father and Love/mother), whose offspring, Divine Love, or true compassion, is the goal of the mystical quest.29

Aspects of the Visionary Experience in Salāmān va Absāl

According to Sufi theosophists, the synchronization between the three types of love occurs in the imaginal world (ʿālam al-miṣāl, the world of Idea-Images), rendered as mundus imaginalis by Corbin, which is the intermediate realm of mystical contemplation suspended between the physical world of sense-perception and the spiritual world of intellective

26 Jāmī, SA, 435, lines 863–68.
27 Ibn al-ʿArabī, al-Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya 2:324; and Corbin, Alone with the Alone, 147.
28 Ibn al-ʿArabī, al-Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya 2:331; and Corbin, Alone with the Alone, 115 and 161. See also Chittick, Sufi Path of Knowledge, 127–30.
29 Corbin, Alone with the Alone, 151.
intuition. This inter-world of esoteric speculation, often described by medieval cosmographers as the “Eighth Clime,” represents another dimension of time and space, a place without place that inspired the formula attributed to Shihāb al-Dīn Yaḥyā Suhravardi, Nā-kujā-ābād, i.e., “the land of No-place.”

The organ or faculty that enables a mystic to penetrate and perceive the ʿālam al-miṣāl is the heart (dil). Poised between sensory and intellectual knowledge, the heart is the place of “No-place,” the barzakh where the invisible-spiritual world and visible-sensible worlds meet and manifest their conjunction in the form of a theophanic image. According to the theosophists, this image can only be perceived by those, i.e., Sufis, who realize that the image present in their hearts is at once a sign or symbol of the desire of God to reveal Himself to Himself and the spiritualization or projection of a sensible being, such as an earthly beloved. In other words, only in a condition of ḥubb ilāhī is the image manifested and likewise this only with the soul which has risen from the level of inciting evil (al-nafs ammāra bi-al-sūʾ) and blame (al-nafs al-lawwāma) to a state of being at peace (al-nafs al-muṭmaʾinna).

This visionary experience of the heart is symbolically depicted toward the end of Salāmān va Absāl. It occurs after Salāmān subjects himself to a trial (balā) of forty-days of self-mortification and seclusion (i.e., arbaʿīn; chilla); in turn, he becomes obedient to the Sage, who promises to remedy his condition by bringing Absāl back to him and making her an eternal companion (dam-sāz). Using the image of the wine-cup (jām) as a metaphor for the heart, Jāmī describes how the Sage—who practices

---

31 For a discussion of the “Eighth Clime” and the central place its highest peak, the cosmic mountain Qāf, occupies in mystical visions, see Henry Corbin, The Voyage and the Messenger: Iran and Philosophy, trans. Joseph Rowe (Berkeley and Los Angeles: North Atlantic Books, 1998), 73–84.
32 Subtelny, Le monde est un jardin, 152.
33 Many Sufis associate the ʿālam al-miṣāl with the “meeting-place of the two seas” mentioned in the Qurʾān (18:60; 23:100; 25:53; and 55:20), while Twelver Shiʿites correlate it to the occult world (ʿālam al-ghaib) of the Hidden Imām. On this correlation, see Corbin, Voyage and the Messenger, 125; and Henry Corbin, Temple and Contemplation, trans. Phillip Sherrard and Liadain Sherrard (London: Islamic Publications, 1986), 266.
34 Corbin, Alone with the Alone, 151, 154, and 156.
35 A requirement discussed in the Fawāʾīḥ al-jamāl wa fawātiḥ al-jalāl by Najm al-Dīn Kubrā. For a reference, see Corbin, Man of Light, 67, 151 n. 69.
37 Jāmī, SA, 441, lines 989–90.
techniques reminiscent of a Sufi shaikh but ultimately acts on behalf of the Active Intellect and stands as a symbol for the archangel Gabriel—accesses the heart of Salāmān (i.e., the adept) in order to initiate the mystical experience.38 This event is conveyed by means of a well-known pun on the word ẕauq, which literally means “taste” but which in Sufism was a technical term for “direct mystical experience”:

[The Sage] poured the wine of good fortune into [Salāmān’s] cup,
He poured the honeycomb of wisdom onto his palate.
On account of the taste of that wine, his cup became rapturous,
On account of this honeycomb, his palate poured sugar.39

As the spiritual transformation of Salāmān ensues, Absāl, the symbol of the inclination of the soul for carnal pleasures, appears in his memory and he finds himself complaining of their separation. Recognizing the psychological state (ḥāl) of Salāmān, the Sage fashions an image (ṣūrat) of Absāl through the power of his spiritual concentration (ḥimmat) and holds it before Salāmān’s eyes, thus alleviating his grief.40 As Salāmān “perfected his speech” (i.e., engaged in ḥikr), the Sage would interpose a description of the beauty of Venus, until these repeated descriptions (aurād, i.e., litanies) made Salāmān forget Absāl and yearn after her:

When the Sage perceived the significance of this for [Salāmān]
He increased the effect of Venus on him,
Until she manifested her beauty completely,
And it made an impression on the heart and soul of Salāmān.
He effaced the image of Absāl from his mind,
And the imprint of the face of Venus was mended to it.
He saw everlasting beauty (ḥusn-i bāqī) and flew from the transitory (fānī) world,
He favored eternal rapture (ʿaish-i bāqī) over the temporal (fānī).41

That this penultimate event in Salāmān va Absāl is an allusion to the visionary experience in Sufism is supported by the juxtaposition of the words fānī and bāqī. In a non-mystical sense, fānī and bāqī simply mean “temporary” and “permanent,” but they also refer to the mystical states of

---

38 Jāmī, SA, 442, lines 997–1000.
39 Jāmī, SA, 442, lines 999–1000. This calls to mind the image of the parrot, a favorite symbol in Persian mystical poetry for the disciple whose master teaches him to speak (the language of the birds) by situating a mirror (i.e., the mirror of the heart of the shaikh) in front of him. On this image in the poetry of Rūmī, see Schimmel, Triumphal Sun, 116 and 119.
40 Jāmī, SA, 442, lines 1001–4.
41 Jāmī, SA, 443, lines 1014–17.
fanā’ and baqā’. Their appearance at the end of Salāmān’s dream-vision of Venus is an allusion to the final stages of the mystical path, when the ego-self of the adept is annihilated (fanā’) and the perfected Sufi abides (baqā’) in and through the knowledge of the one-ness of God. Further support for the idea that Jāmī alludes to the visionary encounter between Creator and creature is contained in the phrase, ḥusn-i bāqī dīd. Since al-bāqī, or “the Everlasting One,” is one of the ninety-nine beautiful names of God, the hemistich quoted above may also be read: “he (i.e., Salāmān) saw the beauty of the Everlasting One (ḥusn-i bāqī) and flew as one who had experienced fanā’.” Finally, it seems fitting that the allusion to fanā’ and baqā’ should be followed by the enthronement ceremony for Salāmān, since baqā’ has been described as the “station of vicegerency,” namely the state of the perfect Sufi who returns to the phenomenal world in order to act as the representative or deputy (khalīfa) of God. Considered in this light, the enthronement of Salāmān is a symbolic representation of the investiture of Adam, who according to Sufi tradition was created by God in His image (ʿalā širatihi) in order to reflect God’s qualities on earth. With the implication that the creation myth is associated with the investiture of Salāmān, and that this ceremony appears as the culminating event in his visionary experience, we find further evidence that Salāmān va Absāl is an allegorical expression of the transformation of the adept into the Adamic perfection characteristic of the Sufi saint (valī) and true vicegerent of God (khalīfat Allāh) on earth.

Salāmān va Absāl as an Historical Allegory

In addition to its theosophical significance, Salāmān va Absāl is also an historical allegory, which is to say that Jāmī intended the principal characters in his tale to be understood as representing actual historical figures at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Salāmān va Absāl therefore falls within the two basic types of allegory described by literary theorists. The first type, which has been described as an “allegory of ideas,” is a narrative whose characters are personifications or symbols of complex concepts, and whose

---

general plot represents or allegorizes an abstract doctrine or thesis. As Northrop Frye has observed, the characters and plot of this type of allegory contain an additional set of ideas that can at once possess moral, philosophical, and religious meaning.\(^{45}\) *Salāmān va Absāl* fits this first type of allegory insofar as the characters are a representation of the purification of the soul and the visionary mystical experience. Owing, however, to its multiple levels of interpretation, *Salāmān va Absāl* also falls into the second type of allegory, a sub-genre dubbed, “historical and political allegory.” This second type of allegory is a narrative in which the characters of a given story and their actions represent real historical figures and the actual events (usually political) associated with them.\(^{46}\)

While Corbin, whose intention was to explicate the mystical hermeneutics of the tale of Salāmān and Absāl, was correct in stating that it was not a “trite” allegory about body and soul, this study nonetheless maintains that the hermeneutics of *Salāmān va Absāl* are not just mystical but historical, and that to restrict the poem solely to a mystical interpretation is to fail to appreciate its depth.\(^{47}\) Granted, traditional historians, who, according to Hayden White, find it hard to accept that figurative discourse (read allegory), with its “ambiguousness” and “logical inconsistencies,” produces any genuine historical knowledge, would hesitate to ascribe any historical significance to *Salāmān va Absāl* for the simple reason that it does not contain literal statements of fact.\(^{48}\) But such an opinion, White argues, reflects the modern prejudice against allegory by traditional and socio-scientific historians who maintain that historical “truth” can only be expressed in literal language.\(^{49}\) By contrast, this study accepts the notion that it is precisely through such figurativeness that *Salāmān va Absāl* yields a significant amount of historical data.

The polysemy of Jāmī’s *Salāmān va Absāl* undoubtedly had a bearing on its audience. As Peter Heath noted in his discussion of Ibn Sīnā’s use of allegory, a tale like Salāmān and Absāl was designed to be “both inclusive and exclusive in semantic accessibility and audience appeal.”\(^{50}\)

\(^{46}\) On the prevalence of this type of allegory in the late Middle Ages, see Ann W. Astell, Political Allegory in Late Medieval England (Ithaca, NY: Cornell University Press, 1999).
\(^{47}\) Corbin, *Avicenna and the Visionary Recital*, 235.
\(^{48}\) Hayden White, The Content of the Form: Narrative Discourse and Historical Representation (Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1987), 48.
\(^{49}\) White, *Content of the Form*, 49.
\(^{50}\) Heath, Allegory and Philosophy, 193.
literal level of meaning, which is to say, the forbidden romance between a prince and his wet-nurse, is comprehensible to a wide spectrum of readers, its symbolism directs other levels of meaning, in this case mystical and historical, to select individuals or groups, which, this study contends, can be identified as the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler Ya’qūb and members of his court. The historical level of meaning in Salāmān va Absāl was therefore reserved for an elite audience who presumably were able to discern the text and recognize themselves in the characters and events depicted in the tale.

It is also important to mention that the poem itself provides clear indication that Salāmān va Absāl allegorizes persons and situations at the court of Ya’qūb. For example, just as the abovementioned line containing the phrase “in the garment of others” compels us to consider the theosophical interpretation of the tale, it likewise suggests that the “others” can be understood as historical figures, in this case, Ya’qūb and Qāżī ʿĪsā. The fact that Jāmī embedded this clue in a section of Salāmān va Absāl in which he praises Ya’qūb is another indication that the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler was supposed to recognize himself in the narrative, particularly in the person of Salāmān, and that the tale’s dramatic elements were really symbols of Ya'qūb's own struggle. In this way, Salāmān va Absāl fulfills the fundamental objective of the classic mirror for princes, namely, that the discerning ruler was supposed to internalize its contents to the extent that reading it was akin to holding a mirror up to himself.

**Symbols of Ya’qūb and His Court in Salāmān va Absāl**

The character of Absāl, who in the tale represents the “lust-worshipping body” (tan-i shahvat-parast), serves as a symbol for the libertine life of wine-drinking that Ya’qūb eventually abandoned. Moreover, the King and the Sage, who in the tale are associated with the Active Intellect (ʿaql-i faʿʿāl) and supernal emanation (faiż-i bālā) respectively, can also be interpreted as symbols of the ideal of kingship, and Ya’qūb’s vazīr, Qāżī ʿĪsā Sāvajī. Finally, the image of Venus, which is presented in Salāmān va Absāl

---

51 Jāmī’s inclusion of a clue alerting his audience to read Salāmān va Absāl interpretively (i.e., historically) is consistent with the rhetoric of some allegorists who “conspire” with their elite or initiated audience by invoking the need to conceal the “true” significance of the secrets concealed in the tale. On the frequency of this practice, see Heath, Allegory and Philosophy, 198.

52 Jāmī, SA, 419, lines 555–64.
as an object of mystical contemplation, can be interpreted as a symbol of the Sufi shaikh; and more specifically, as an allusion to rābiṭa, a technique employed by Naqshbandis (and other Sufis), according to which a spiritual master fixes the visual form (ṣūrat or naqsh) of himself in the heart of his disciple in order to effect his spiritual transformation. The contention that all the characters in the tale, i.e., Salāmān, Absāl, the King, the Sage, and Venus, appear to be symbolic representations of actual historical figures and events at the Āq Qoyūnlū court is thus another indication that Jāmī dedicated Salāmān va Absāl at a later date and under different circumstances from those generally acknowledged.

Two key instances in Salāmān va Absāl provide evidence that Jāmī intended Salāmān to be a symbolic representation of Yaʿqūb. First, there is a reference to the fact that it was in his fourteenth year that Salāmān became the king of the “dominion of excellence” (mulk-i khūbī) and that it was during this time that he made the “grandeur of kingship” (shaukat-i shāhī) his companion. These references to kingship are contained in a section concerned with descriptions of the “youthful radiance” of Salāmān and his “spear-like stature.” The overall impression they convey is that, once Salāmān turned fourteen, he was poised to become ruler. Yaʿqūb was in fact fourteen when in 882/1478 his supporters proclaimed—in defiance of Yaʿqūb’s older uterine brother, Sulṭān-Khalīl—that Ūzūn Ḥasan had designated Yaʿqūb to succeed him as leader of the Āq Qoyūnlū tribal confederation. Therefore, the decision by Jāmī to cast the fourteen-year-old Salāmān in the role of a worthy heir appears to have been a deliberate attempt to allude to Yaʿqūb, who was also fourteen when he came to the throne.

Another indication that Jāmī was alluding to Yaʿqūb by way of Salāmān occurs in a section entitled, “Pointing to the fact that the object of these panegyrics is to praise the majestic presence of the felicitous ruler.” It follows a series of vignettes, each of which praises certain aspects of Salāmān, namely, the sharpness of his intellect, his skill at poetry and prose, the delightfulness of his royal banquets, his prowess at polo-playing, his expert bowmanship, and his generosity. The fact that Jāmī’s
description of the virtues of Salāmān is followed by a section whose title states that the preceding praise was actually directed at Yaʿqūb, suggests that Jāmī's intention was that Yaʿqūb should recognize himself in the character of Salāmān and identify his own circumstances with the ethico-moral scenarios presented in *Salāmān va Absāl*. Any doubt that Salāmān was intended as a symbol for Yaʿqūb is dispelled by the fact that, in this connection, Jāmī quotes the abovementioned line by Rūmī, in which he states that his tale was meant to be read allegorically, thereby alerting readers to its symbolical meaning. Thus, the statement that the “description of lovers” needs to be told “in the garment of [tales about] others,” is an indication that the tale is also an allusion to Yaʿqūb and his struggle against his own failings. In other words, the lovers Salāmān and Absāl are actually symbols of Yaʿqūb and the object of his lustful appetite, namely wine. Salāmān's renunciation of his beloved Absāl is therefore a symbolic expression of Yaʿqūb's foreswearing the pleasures of the body, especially wine-drinking.

In order to support the notion that Salāmān is a symbolic representation of Yaʿqūb, it is necessary to establish that Absāl, who is cast in the role of a wet-nurse, is also a symbol of something irresistible to Yaʿqūb but unsettling for the Āq Qoyūnlū court. According to a theosophical reading of *Salāmān va Absāl*, Absāl, who, on an allegorical level, stands for the appetitive faculty, represents Love, which is to say the Love that is counterpoised by Reason in the dual-natured soul of man. In a contextual reading of the tale, Absāl would symbolically represent the libertinism that Yaʿqūb indulged in and that was viewed by his royal advisors as a threat to the long-term viability of his rule.58

The first indication that Absāl was meant to symbolize sensual pleasure occurs in the section of *Salāmān va Absāl* in which Jāmī describes how Salāmān, upon reaching the age of fourteen, saw the beauty of Absāl “unveiled” before him.59 According to the narrative, Absāl devises hundreds of stratagems (*makr va ḥiyal*) and uses “black magic” (*siyah-kārī*) in order to ensnare (*giriftār*) Salāmān and make him yearn for her.60 Despite Salāmān’s kingly glory (*farrkhundagī*), Absāl lures him from the “straight path,” which is to say, from the life of piety and abstemiousness, into the “collar of servitude to her.”61 On the verge of consummating his desire

---

58 See, for example, Kay Kāʾūs, *Qābūs Nāma*, 128 (trans. 218).
60 Jāmī, *SA*, 421, lines 590 and 601.
61 Jāmī, *SA*, 421, lines 590 and 596.
for Absāl, which is seen here as an allusion to the point at which Yaʿqūb began indulging his baser instincts, that is, his drinking habit, Salāmān ponders the possible consequences to his kingship of their sexual union:

God forbid that I should taste the meal of [sexual] union!
Its flavor will become unwholesome to my soul.
That taste will not stay with me, and for an entire lifetime
I will remain far from my lofty rank and majesty.62

The words “taste” and “meal” may be interpreted as referring to wine and they imply that Salāmān’s carnal union with Absāl is in fact a symbolic expression of Yaʿqūb’s addiction to drink. Continuing the extended metaphor, Jāmī describes how Salāmān held Absāl “tightly to his bosom,” much like a drunkard cradles a wine goblet, whereupon “[Salāmān] (i.e., Yaʿqūb) drank his soul’s desire.”63 So completely were they “rubbing lip to lip together, that the cup of rapture overflowed for both of them,” which beyond its sexual connotation with respect to Salāmān and Absāl, could also be read as an allusion to Yaʿqūb’s drinking wine and the state of inebriation it caused.64

Another indication that Absāl symbolizes wine is contained in the description by Jāmī of the after-effects of Salāmān’s physical union with Absāl.65 This account, which is set at daybreak, describes Salāmān as hung-over (khumār) and eager to cure his hangover with another “sip [of the dregs of]” (jurʿaʾī) of Absāl.66 The implication that Salāmān wanted to repeat the experience of the previous night with Absāl is clear; but the significance of Salāmān’s hangover and his desire to “drink” Absāl again, aside from its allegorical meaning, can also be understood on a symbolic level. It follows then, that the hangover and subsequent cravings


63 Jāmī, SA, 424, line 642.

64 Jāmī, SA, 424, line 644.

65 Jāmī, SA, 424, lines 650–62.

66 Jāmī, SA, 424, lines 653–54.
experienced by Salāmān could be allusions to Yaʿqūb’s alcohol dependency. Thus, the sexual innuendos used by Jāmī when he adds that “without interrupting” anyone, Salāmān summoned Absāl, “set her on the throne, opened her veil of modesty, and proceeded to repeat the pleasure of the previous night with her,” may in fact be allusions to Yaʿqūb’s habit of consuming wine at court without the “interference” of a royal cup-bearer, in order to satisfy his craving for drink.67

The illegality of Salāmān’s engaging in sexual relations with his wet-nurse (Absāl) may also have alluded to Qāżī ʿĪsā’s marriage to a sister (ḥamshīra) of Yaʿqūb, which was annulled by members of the Bāyandur clan on grounds that it contravened Turkish custom. Milk-relations (riżā’, riżā’a), that is, the custom whereby non-related infants were suckled by the same wet-nurse, served to forge ties between prominent families in the medieval eastern Islamic world, but it also created legal barriers to marriage.68 The sexual relationship between Salāmān and Absāl would thus have been regarded as incestuous according to Islamic law.69 It seems that the illegality of the relationship between Salāmān and Absāl, which is to say, between a boy child and his wet-nurse, may have been a trope utilized by Jāmī for its shock value. Although Salāmān va Absāl contains no vulgar words or coarse imagery, the sexual passion between Salāmān and his wet-nurse may have been exploited by Jāmī in order to capture the audience’s interest, the better to communicate his message of mystical and historical significance.70 Jāmī may therefore have used the trope of incest to refer to the extra-tribal relationship between Qāżī ʿĪsā and Yaʿqūb’s sister and to the fact that their union violated Āq Qoyūnlū customs that frowned upon marriages between members of the Turkic tribal elite and sedentary Persians (Tajiks).71

---

67 Jāmī, SA, 424, lines 655–56. Yaʿqūb’s habit of enjoying a “morning draught” (jām-i ṣabūḥī) is alluded to in Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, 322.

68 On the long and detailed discussions of Muslim jurists concerning breastfeeding, see Avner Giladi, Infants, Parents and Wetnurses: Medieval Islamic Views on Breastfeeding and Their Social Implications (Leiden: Brill, 1999), esp. 68–114.


70 On the subject of Sufi poets of medieval Persia utilizing bawdy tales and pornographic imagery to communicate ethical information and esoteric secrets, see Tourage, Rūmī and the Hermeneutics of Eroticism, 18–25 and 149–53.

71 Interpreting the trope of incest as an allusion to an embarrassing historical event follows the approach taken by Abolala Soudavar, who, in his study of the Abū Saʿūd-nāma, an illustrated copy of the Shāh-nāma written for the last Ilkhanid ruler, Abū Saʿūd Bahādur Khān (d. 736/1335), concluded that one of its images alludes to a “family secret,” namely
If we accept that Salāmān is a symbolic representation of Yaʿqūb, then it would be logical to suggest that Salāmān’s father, who is referred to as the King of ancient Greece, symbolizes the ideal of kingship. The King, who corresponds to the Active Intellect and to Love’s counterpart, Reason, is a symbol of what Jāmī probably hoped the conscience of Yaʿqūb would become. In other words, the King of ancient Greece is Salāmān’s inner conscience as it relates to kingship, which the tale of Salāmān va Absāl instructs Yaʿqūb to heed and which is expressed through the admonitions of the King. The function of this inner sense, which is to say the chief concern of the King of ancient Greece and his historical counterpart, Yaʿqūb’s inner conscience, is to convince Salāmān, i.e., Yaʿqūb, that his continued infatuation with Absāl, who is to be understood as the symbol of wine, will lead him to ruin and hasten the end of Yaʿqūb’s claim to the Āq Qoyūnlū throne. Thus, we find the King admonishing a repentant Salāmān in terms similar to those in which Yaʿqūb’s inner conscience might have been expected to admonish him:

Kingship is your private property, seize your kingship.
Do not pull kingship out of your lineage.
Remove your hand from the beautiful person you possess,
Kingship and worshipping the beautiful person do not go together.
Remove, from you hand, the henna of the beautiful person,
You must be either a king or a worshipper of beautiful people.72

The last character in Salāmān va Absāl that is a symbolic representation of a member of the Āq Qoyūnlū court, is the Sage (ḥakīm). In addition to representing a divine emanation (faʿż-i ilāhī, faʿż-i bālā), the Sage is a symbol of Qāżī ʿĪsā, who was Yaʿqūb’s preceptor, and whose official responsibilities as Yaʿqūb’s vazīr and ṣadr made him the de facto administrator of the Āq Qoyūnlū state.73 Because of his profound involvement in Yaʿqūb’s affairs, Qāżī ʿĪsā is represented in Salāmān va Absāl by the Sage who plays a decisive role in facilitating Salāmān’s spiritual transformation. Indeed,

72 Jāmī, SA, 437, lines 894–96.
73 On the multiple roles and titles ascribed to Qāżī ʿĪsā in the sources, including qāżī ʿaskar (chief Islamic law judge) and vakīl (deputy to the ruler), see Woods, Aqquyunlu, 269 n. 26.
just like Yaʿqūb, who was by all indications tutored by Qāżī ʻĪsā, Salāmān, upon hearing the good counsel (naṣīḥat) of the Sage, admits to him that “I am the lowliest apprentice (shāgird) in your court.” Salāmān adds that “I found the very essence of wisdom (ʻain-i ḥikmat) in everything you said.” Thus, Salāmān’s deference to the authority (ikhtiyār) of the Sage and his willingness to follow the Sage’s direction of his affairs (tadbīr) corresponds to the power Yaʿqūb granted Qāżī ʻĪsā to manage Āq Qoyūnlū affairs, and the willingness of Yaʿqūb to listen to the advice of Qāżī ʻĪsā on personal matters.

The corresponding roles of the Sage in the tale and of Qāżī ʻĪsā at the Āq Qoyūnlū court are best exemplified by the contribution each makes to Salāmān’s repentance in Salāmān va Absāl, on the one hand, and to the public repentance of Yaʿqūb at the Āq Qoyūnlū court in 893/1488, on the other. In other words, the Sage, who acts as the instrument of the King’s himmat by directing Salāmān to renounce his lust for Absāl, symbolizes Qāżī ʻĪsā, who, according to the ʻĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī, was the driving force behind Yaʿqūb’s renunciation of his licentious behavior. The equation of Qāżī ʻĪsā with the Sage follows if we accept that Salāmān is a symbol of Yaʿqūb and Absāl is a symbol of wine. The role of the Sage in Salāmān’s renunciation of Absāl is therefore akin to Qāżī ʻĪsā’s in ensuring that Yaʿqūb abandoned his wine-drinking. Khunjī-Iṣfahānī informs us that Qāżī ʻĪsā actually presided over the ceremony at which Yaʿqūb publicly repented and issued his prohibition against wine-drinking in Tabriz. The ceremony was held at the Naṣriyya tomb complex of Üzūn Hasan, named after Üzūn Hasan’s kunya, Abū al-Naṣr. The account even mentions that Qāżī ʻĪsā, who is characterized in other sources as having a melancholy disposition, was evidently buoyant at what must have been a somber occasion.

Allusions to Naqshbandī Spiritual Techniques in Salāmān va Absāl

Although not a character per se, Venus, who is referred to in Salāmān va Absāl as zuhra, is an important element in the historical symbolism of the tale. It will be recalled that the description of the image of Venus is
the object with which the Sage replaces the memory of Absāl as the focus of Salāmān’s devotion. Unlike the traditionally negative view of Venus in medieval Persian thought, which regards her as representative of the physical beauty of woman, carnality, and vanity, the image of Venus in Salāmān va Absāl is very positive. The positive depiction is consistent, however, with the significance of the planet Venus in the Zoroastrian tradition where she is associated with the deity Anāhītā, who was venerated by the Achaemenids. On a theosophical level, Salāmān’s adoration of Venus, who represents a divine theophany, is an example of Spiritual Love, which is to say ḥubb rūḥānī, which Ibn al-ʿArabī indicates will lead the adept to Divine Love (ḥubb ilāhī), which is the goal of the Sufi mystical quest.

Not unrelated to the theosophical significance of Venus is the symbolism of her image in terms of Sufi devotional practices, especially as this image relates to the mystical technique of rābiṭa, the process by which the sage, by means of his himmat, impresses the image of Venus on the heart of Salāmān, thereby leading him to the spiritual state of annihilation (fanāʾ). The concept of rābiṭa was first mentioned by Najm al-Dīn Kubrā, in his Fawāʾiḥ al-jamāl wa fawātiḥ al-jalāl and by Shihāb al-Dīn Abū Ḥafs ʿUmar Suhrawardī (d. 632/1234), in his ‘Awārif al-maʿārif. This spiritual technique, along with murāqaba (contemplation) and ẕikr, formed the basis of most Naqshbandī devotional regimens, especially during the ninth/fifteenth century. The Rashaḥāt-i ʿain al-ḥayāt indicates that the Naqshbandī shaikh Khvāja ʿUdaid Allāh Aḥrār, who was often engaged

---

78 Jāmī, SA, 442, lines 1007–16.
79 See Rūmī, Mathnawí, bk. 1, line 535, which reads: When a woman became pale-faced on account of her vile deed, God transformed her into [the planet] Venus (zuhra).
81 On the desire of the soul to assimilate itself with the Intelligence above it, just as a disciple seeks to assimilate himself with his shaikh, see Corbin, Avicenna and the Visionary Recital, 74.
82 See Meier, Zwei Abhandlungen über die Naqşbandiya, 111–52.
83 Le Gall, Culture of Sufism, 114.
84 Fritz Meier, Meister und Schüler im Orden der Naqşbandiya (Heidelberg: C. Winter, 1995), 11; Buehler, Sufi Heirs of the Prophet, 132. See also Dina Le Gall, “Kadizadelis, Nakşbendis, and Intra-Sufi Diatribe in Seventeenth-Century Istanbul,” The Turkish Studies Association Journal 28, no. 1–2 (2004): 13 n. 34. The first Naqshbandī figures to integrate rābiṭa (and thus himmat) into the order’s repertoire of spiritual techniques were Alā’ al-Dīn ʿAttār (d. 802/1400) and (to a lesser extent) Yaʿqūb-i Charkhī (d. ca. 851/1447). For a reference see Paul, Doctrine and Organization, 38–39, and 42–43. See also, Paul, “The Khwājagān at Herat,” 231.
in worldly affairs, relied heavily on rābiṭa and himmat, most probably because it allowed him to guide his disciples without being physically present. This penchant for using the techniques of rābiṭa and himmat is reflected in statements attributed to ʿUbaid Allāh Aḥrār in the Rashaḥāt-i ʿain al-hayāt. For example, according to ʿUbaid Allāh Aḥrār, when it comes to effecting the spiritual enlightenment of an adept, himmat is superior to the traditional methods, which is to say, doing good deeds, engaging in asceticism, realizing one’s powerlessness, and humbling oneself before God. When asked to explain the superiority of himmat, ʿUbaid Allāh Aḥrār purportedly replied:

Seeking assistance through the himmat of the pīr and [his] spiritual concentration (tavajjuh) is superior because it is through [the pīr’s] spiritual concentration that the disciple (ṭālib) realizes his own powerlessness vis-à-vis God. The pīr then becomes [for him] the means of tavajjuh and of obtaining proximity to God. Attaining this result is closer [than the other methods]. For whatever the goal of the tālib, this method produces faster results since it is continually derived from the himmat of the pīr.

According to Naqshbandī writers, rābiṭa (also referred to as taṣāvvur-i shaikh) involves the disciple impressing the visual form (ṣūrat) of the face of his shaikh in his mind. In so doing, the disciple annihilates his ego-self (nafs) and assimilates his entire being to the virtuous qualities of his shaikh, who at this stage and by way of his implanted image, becomes a conduit for the infusion of divine energy (faiż). The shaikh, according to ʿUbaid Allāh Aḥrār, becomes the “qibla” of the self-naughted disciple. This mutual concentration, which is referred to in Naqshbandī sources as nisba (literally, “relation”), produces a spiritual state (ḥāl) wherein the being of the disciple is transmuted into the perfect Sufi saint.

---

85 Buehler, Sufi Heirs of the Prophet, 131.
86 Fakhr al-Dīn ʿAlī, Rashaḥāt-i ʿain al-hayāt 2:500–501. See also Meier, Zwei Abhandlungen über die Naqshhandiyıyа, 256; and Buehler, Sufi Heirs of the Prophet, 131 n. 1. The superiority of rābiṭa (and thus himmat) is also attested to in a short treatise on the Naqshbandī order attributed to Jāmī. See Nūr al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Jāmī, Sarʾrishta-i ṭarīqa-i Khvājagān, ed. ʿAbd al-Ḥayy Habībī (Kabul: Intishārāt-i Anjuman-i Jāmī, 1343/1964), 15.
87 Buehler, Sufi Heirs of the Prophet, 134–38.
89 Chodkiewicz, “Quelques aspects des techniques spirituelles,” 71.
Jāmī’s allusion to this “televisual” Naqshbandī technique in *Salāmān va Absāl* indicates that, in addition to writing a Perso-Islamic mirror for princes that was a veiled account of *dramatis personae* at the court of Yaʾqūb, Jāmī was communicating a core Naqshbandī doctrine to his Āq Qoyūnlū audience in Tabriz.90 Considered alongside the personal letters and panegyrical odes that Jāmī addressed to Yaʾqūb, writings which are replete with terminology associated with Naqshbandī spiritual practices (e.g., *rābiṭa*, *nisba*, *ṣuḥbat*, *himmat*, *khalvat*), the tale of *Salāmān va Absāl* represents a subtle attempt by Jāmī to familiarize Yaʾqūb with some of the doctrines of the Naqshbandiyya. One could even construe the message implied throughout these writings, namely that the adept of the Naqshbandī path can progress spiritually without the physical presence of a shaikh, thanks to the concept of *rābiṭa*, as Jāmī’s invitation to Yaʾqūb to place himself under his spiritual guidance from a distance.91 Although there is no evidence in the sources to suggest that Yaʾqūb was a member of the Naqshbandī order, it does appear that *Salāmān va Absāl*, in addition to commemorating his public repentance, provided Yaʾqūb with a glimpse into the state of being a Naqshbandī disciple.92

The Date of Completion of *Salāmān va Absāl*

Until now, most scholars have held the view that Jāmī composed *Salāmān va Absāl* in 855/1480, and that he dedicated it to Yaʾqūb to commemorate his accession to the throne.93 There is, however, internal evidence in *Salāmān va Absāl*, as well as indications in contemporary sources that suggest Jāmī completed the work later than 855/1480 and that he dedicated it to Yaʾqūb in commemoration of his public repentance from

---


91 On the political implications of the Naqshbandī belief that a shaikh could direct his disciples without being physically present, see Paul, *Doctrine and Organization*, 75–76.

92 The notion that reading one of Jāmī’s *masnavīs*, in this case, *Yūsuf va Zulaikhā*, could provoke a mystical experience in the Sufi adept, is apparently attested to in the *Maqāmāt-i Maḥmūdiyya*, a hagiographical biography of Khvāja Khvānd Maḥmūd (d. 1050/1642), a Naqshbandī in Mughal Kashmir, written by his son, Khvāja Muʿīn al-Dīn (d. 1085/1674). For a reference, see David William Damrel, “Forgotten Grace: Khwâja Khâwand Mahmûd Naqshbandî in Central Asia and Mughal India,” (PhD diss., Duke University, 1991), 49–50.

93 For examples, see Ḥikmat, *Jāmī*, 190; and Afṣaḥzād, *Naqd va bar rasi-yi āsār va sharḥ-i aḥvāl-i Jāmī*, 210–11.
wine-drinking, which took place in 893/1488.\textsuperscript{94} This combination of internal and external evidence leads us to doubt that Jāmī’s interest in Ya’qūb’s spiritual and ethical development began with \textit{Salāmān va Absāl}. Instead, we may conclude that this esoteric mirror for princes was the culminating gesture of an aging poet whose blessings and good counsel Ya’qūb had repeatedly sought in the past.

As mentioned in chapter 2, the dominant theme of \textit{Salāmān va Absāl} is repentance (\textit{tauba}), which is generally understood to be contrition for the commission of a sin. It also has a technical meaning in Sufism, denoting the first necessary step in the initiation of an adept into the Sufi path.\textsuperscript{95} What emerges from our historical interpretation of \textit{Salāmān va Absāl} is that, besides its theosophical significance, \textit{tauba} has a profane meaning that clearly relates to Ya’qūb’s repentance from wine-drinking. In the section in which Jāmī praises Ya’qūb’s turning away from/renunciation (\textit{ijtināb}) of things prohibited by Islamic law (\textit{manāhī}), Jāmī is unambiguous in stating that Ya’qūb was a persistent drunkard:

\begin{quote}
For an entire lifetime you drank wine and were senseless,  
You became a slave of its good and bad edicts.  
From all that wine drinking and merriment,  
What have you gained, other than losses?  
If you spend another hundred years in such a way,  
You will arrive at something even more vexing than this.  
Acknowledge the concupiscence of last year,  
And compare the coming year with that previous one.\textsuperscript{96}
\end{quote}

The suggestion that Ya’qūb had renounced wine-drinking at the time \textit{Salāmān va Absāl} was completed is given several lines earlier when Jāmī says of Ya’qūb: “Though at first his lips were polluted with wine (\textit{bāda}), in the end, he washed his lips of that [wine] with the water of repentance (\textit{āb-i tauba}).”\textsuperscript{97}

\begin{footnotesize}
\textsuperscript{94} A view put forward but not developed in Woods, \textit{Aqquyunlu}, 274 n. 73. See also Māyil Haravī, \textit{Jāmī}, 173–77, who reckons that it was probably written sometime after 889/1484–85.


\textsuperscript{96} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 401, lines 212–15.

\textsuperscript{97} Jāmī, \textit{SA}, 401, line 200. As if to testify to Ya’qūb’s sobriety, the next two lines read: The wine-cup, with all its water of joy,  
Has remained dry-lipped and far from his assemblies.  
The wine-jug, its belly void of that which is forbidden,  
Betakes itself into a corner, just like ascetics of good repute.
\end{footnotesize}
Such backhanded praise, especially as it implies that Yaʿqūb’s wine-drinking lasted many years, hardly seems the stuff of a coronation gift, as has usually been assumed. The passage instead reads like a cautionary reminder of Yaʿqūb’s darker days, and its blunt accusation suggests that Jāmī and Yaʿqūb were not, at the time, recent acquaintances, but that theirs was a relationship cultivated over time.

In an earlier section of *Salāmān va Absāl*, there is another, albeit minor, indication of a later date of composition; here, Jāmī relates that “for many years” (*sālhā*) it had been his desire to be a panegyrist (*maddāḥ*) for Yaʿqūb. 98 Elsewhere, in a section entitled “The reason for composing the book and the motive for submitting this discourse,” Jāmī gives the impression that he wrote *Salāmān va Absāl* in order to praise Yaʿqūb “again,” that is, after he had already produced a sizeable corpus of literary works.99 He claims that, with his *Salāmān va Absāl*, he is “innovating” (*nauʾī mīdaham*) the art of praising a ruler and introducing a new way of delivering a panegyric, but that proper recognition of its novelty was unimportant, since, as he tellingly puts it, “I have [already] created the [other] *maṣnāvis*.”100 Adding to the sense that these other *maṣnāvis* belonged to the past, Jāmī adds, “my mind is finished with the likes of them.”101

Perhaps the most compelling indication that Jāmī composed and dedicated *Salāmān va Absāl* well after 855/1480, and thus during the twilight of his career, is his description of his own infirmity. Characterizing himself as toothless, blind, and hunchbacked, Jāmī, who died in 897/1492, sounds like a man at the end of his life. He says that his “life has passed,” that his “soul is diminished, and death is near”:102

My mother is the earth, and I am its suckling,
It is not strange that a mother’s inclination should be for her children.
Soon it shall be that, at rest from tribulation,
I will fall into my mother’s bosom in an intoxicating sleep.103

Jāmī’s lament provides further evidence that *Salāmān va Absāl* was written and dedicated to Yaʿqūb well after 855/1480 and closer to Jāmī’s death in 897/1492.

98 Jāmī, *SA*, 395, line 95. The couplet appears in a section entitled, “On praising the *pādshāh*, refuge of right religion, shadow of God in both worlds over the heads of the weak and dispossessed, may God, who is exalted, prolong his rule!”
100 Jāmī, *SA*, 400, lines 184–85.
101 Jāmī, *SA*, 400, line 185. See also, Māyil Haravī, *Jāmī*, 175.
102 Jāmī, *SA*, 398, line 141.
This is corroborated by other sources, namely the ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī and the Taẕkirat al-shuʿarā’ by Daulatshāh Samarqandī. In his notice for the events of the year 892/1487, Khunjī-Iṣfahānī does not mention Salāmān va Absāl in his albeit brief and rather vague description of Jāmī’s literary works. The entry, which proves that Yaʿqūb was acutely interested in Jāmī’s poetry, refers only generally to Jāmī’s qaṣīdas, his Dīvān, and his poems (ashʿār). This absence, together with the fact that Yaʿqūb dispatched a delegation to Herat in that same year in order to present Jāmī with 10,000 Shāhrukhī dinars, suggests that Jāmī had not yet completed Salāmān va Absāl at the time and that Yaʿqūb’s monetary offering may in fact have been an inducement to convince Jāmī to dedicate a work to him.

Daulatshāh does not mention Salāmān va Absāl either in his Taẕkirat al-shuʿarā. Completed in 892/1487, the work is a contemporary Persian biographical anthology of poets. It profiles seven generations (ṭabaqāt) of Arabic and Persian poets, including seven contemporaries of the author. Jāmī is among the living poets listed by Daulatshāh who were writing under the patronage of Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā. One would expect that, had Jāmī completed his Salāmān va Absāl at the time, Daulatshāh would have mentioned it in his notice on him. This, however, is not the case. Besides a qaṣida written in response to the Bahr al-abrār by Amīr Khusrau (d. 725/1325), the entry only mentions Jāmī’s Dīvān, Nafahāt al-uns, personal letters (munshaʿat), treatises on poetic riddles (muʿammā), and unspecified books on Sufism (taṣavvuf); he lumps the remainder of Jāmī’s poetical works into javābs, or literary responses, to the works of Niẓāmī, which are in the style of the Khamsa. It would therefore appear that the ṭaṣḥāvīs that Jāmī patterned after the Khamsa, namely, Tuhfat al-ahrār, Subḥat al-abrār, Yūsuf va Zulaikhā, Lailī va Majnūn, and Khirad-nāma-i Iskandarī, were all completed before Salāmān va Absāl, a tale which does not figure in Niẓāmī’s Khamsa.

---

104 Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, ‘Ālam-ārā-yi amīnī, 251.
Conclusion

Like earlier versions of the tale of Salāmān and Absāl, the rendition by Jāmī expresses, in the form of an allegory, the spiritual transformation of man. As this chapter has attempted to demonstrate, the characters and key events contained in Salāmān va Absāl are symbols of the purification of the soul and its attainment of its true, higher self. Accordingly, Jāmī’s version of the tale reveals this theosophical plane of meaning through its subtle, yet unmistakable, indication that each character collapses into and is absorbed by the person of the chief protagonist, Salāmān, who in reconciling the constituent parts of his aggregate self, achieves gnosis, that is to say, mystical knowledge of the reality of the one-ness of God.

Jāmī was not the first Persian poet to express this theosophical concept by means of an allegorical tale. In addition to its Hellenistic and Avicennan roots, Salāmān va Absāl was patterned after the first tale in the Masnavī of Rūmī. This contention is supported by two observations. First, Jāmī quotes a pivotal line from Rūmī’s tale in order to signal that Salāmān va Absāl, like the story of the king and handmaiden, is meant to be read allegorically. Second, and no less significantly, Salāmān va Absāl is written in the same metre as the Masnavī and plays on key words and concepts contained in it. Both tales describe the three types of love, which form the basis of the mystical quest and which were most extensively explicated in the speculative writings of Ibn al-ʿArabī. The culmination of this tripartite love is the visionary experience of the heart—an event captured at the end of Salāmān va Absāl and symbolically depicted by Salāmān’s accession to the throne—in which the spiritual adept actualizes the creation myth of Adam and becomes the true vicegerent (khalīfa) of God on earth.

In addition to explaining the theosophical significance of Salāmān va Absāl, this chapter also posits that the characters in the allegorical tale symbolize Yaʿqūb and prominent members of the Āq Qoyūnlū royal court. This assertion hinges on the premise that Jāmī intended Yaʿqūb to recognize that Salāmān was in fact a symbol of himself and that Salāmān’s love for and subsequent renunciation of his beloved Absāl was a symbolic expression of Yaʿqūb’s addiction to alcohol and his public repentance from wine-drinking in 893/1488. Thus, Jāmī’s citation of the line by Rūmī concerning the identities of “the lovers,” though ostensibly referring to Salāmān and Absāl, refers, according to an historical reading of Salāmān va Absāl, to Yaʿqūb and wine. It appears that Jāmī composed and dedicated his Salāmān va Absāl to Yaʿqūb sometime between 893/1488 and 896/1490, which is to say that the poem was written in commemoration of Yaʿqūb’s
repentance from wine-drinking, and not, as others have argued, as a gift honoring his accession to the throne in 855/1480. Support for this contention is found in Salāmān va Absāl, particularly the numerous allusions it contains to Yaʿqūb’s alcoholism. Yaʿqūb would also have recognized that the King of ancient Greece and the Sage, who direct Salāmān away from Absāl and toward his kingly duties, were symbols of the ideal of kingship and Yaʿqūb’s vazīr, Qāżī ʿĪsā, respectively. The vital role played by the Sage in convincing Salāmān to abandon Absāl appears to symbolize the role played by Qāżī ʿĪsā in securing Yaʿqūb’s repentance. Salāmān va Absāl was thus dedicated to Yaʿqūb after his public repentance in 893/1488 and it reflects the shaikh-like roles played by Jāmī and Qazi ʿIsa in maintaining the sobriety of the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler and in fostering his abiding interest in Sufi mysticism. Finally, this chapter suggests that the means by which the Sage guides Salāmān toward the image of Venus, in order to attain mystical enlightenment can be viewed as an allusion to certain Sufi, specifically Naqshbandi, spiritual techniques.
Salāmān va Absāl might appear to be a grotesque tale as described by modern scholars of Persian literature. However, if we recognize that the repellent features of the narrative, namely the affair between a young prince and his wet-nurse, deemed incestuous according to Islamic standards, are precisely the means by which Jāmī reveals key mystical concepts while also communicating Perso-Islamic ideals of kingship, then the tendency to dismiss Salāmān va Absāl as one of Jāmī’s lesser achievements is no longer tenable. This is even more the case if we acknowledge that Salāmān va Absāl also operates on the level of an historical allegory, which conveys valuable historical information about its addressee, the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler Yaʿqūb, and members of his court. Salāmān va Absāl should be appreciated as a complex allegory that contains multiple planes of meaning. It is a highly-crafted Perso-Islamic manual of moral advice, or mirror for princes, which by way of its symbolic allusions, explicates the Sufi path of self-purification while also referring to the personal quest of a medieval Islamic ruler for sobriety from drink.

As this study has attempted to demonstrate, Jāmī was not the first Muslim intellectual figure to write an allegorical romance whose main characters were named Salāmān and Absāl. Ibn Sinā’s Kitāb al-Ishārāt wa al-tanbīhāt contains a trilogy of visionary tales of which Salāmān wa Absāl is the third and culminating one. Although the original text is lost, synopses of Ibn Sinā’s Salāmān wa Absāl are contained in the commentaries written on it by Fakhr al-Dīn Rāzī and Naṣīr al-Dīn Ṭūsī. Implied in the hermeneutics of Ṭūsī is the notion that the Salāmān and Absāl story was originally Greek and that it entered Islamdom through an Arabic translation by Ḥunain b. Isḥāq.

While recognizing the Avicennan and Greek provenance of the tale, this study hypothesizes that Jāmī based his own version more immediately on the first narrative in the Masnavī-yi ma'navī of Rūmī. By examining the numerous parallels between Salāmān va Absāl and Rūmī’s tale about the king and his handmaiden, including the fact that they share the same masnavī form and metre, we posited that Jāmī uses the allegorical tale of Rūmī to indicate that his version of Salāmān and Absāl contains multiple levels of meaning. Evidence to support this claim is contained in Salāmān va Absāl itself, specifically in a line where Jāmī quotes Rūmī in order to suggest that the grotesqueness of the narrative is really a “garment” that
is meant to disguise its deeper meaning. As this study demonstrates, these other planes of meaning allow Salāmān va Absāl to operate simultaneously as a Perso-Islamic mirror for princes, a Sufi manual on the annihilation of the carnal self, and an historical account of Yaʿqūb’s repentance from wine-drinking.

In order to establish that these multiple meanings would have been recognized and appreciated by Yaʿqūb, this study argues that the patronage of Persian poets was quite extensive and literary tastes were sophisticated at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Moreover, by examining contemporary historical and literary sources, including poems addressed by Jāmī to Yaʿqūb, personal letters, official chronicles, hagiographies, and literary anthologies, we concluded that Sufi mystics (esp. members of the Khalvatī and Naqshbandī orders) were politically important to the Āq Qoyūnlū. Their esoteric writings and presence at court ensured that the mystico-political advice contained in Salāmān va Absāl would not have gone unappreciated. Indeed, by highlighting key passages from several classic Perso-Islamic mirrors for princes, especially the Akhlāq-i Jalālī by Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī, and comparing them with the “advice” (naṣīḥat) contained in Salāmān va Absāl, our contention is that the ideals of medieval statecraft were often communicated to the Āq Qoyūnlū in the esoteric and mystical writings of the Sufis. A tale like Salāmān va Absāl was therefore intended to be a manual for Sufi aspirants and princes, or better still, for a Sufi-prince.

This combination of spiritual and political counsel is evinced throughout Salāmān va Absāl. It is grounded, however, in Jāmī’s advice to Yaʿqūb on being the true shadow, or vicegerent, of God on earth, which is to say, the Perfect Man (al-insān al-kāmil) who combines all the attributes of a Sufi saint (valī) and the qualities of a just ruler (pādshāh-i ʿādil). According to Jāmī, attaining this degree of perfection requires that the ruler heed the prayers of the Sufis, which according to this study is an indication that the Āq Qoyūnlū court of Yaʿqūb was influenced by Sufi mystics whose spiritual insights and political opinions he seems to have coveted. Another requirement implied in Salāmān va Absāl is that the ruler must repent for his sins, just as an adept embarking on the first stage of the Sufi path is required to do. Part and parcel of this repentance (tauba) is the need for the ruler (i.e., Yaʿqūb) to subdue his carnal soul (nafs) by transforming it from one that commands to evil (al-nafs ammāra bi-al-sūʾ) into one that blames itself (al-nafs al-lawwāma) for its sins. As has been demonstrated in this study, the process by which the soul abandons evil acts and reaches the purified state of being at peace (al-nafs al-muṭmaʿīnna) is symbolized by the character of Salāmān, who, according to the commentary by Ṭūsī,
stands as a symbol of the rational soul (nafs-i nāṭiqa). Salāmān’s repudiation of his beloved Absāl thus symbolizes the enlightened soul’s renunciation of carnal pleasures. Although usually a prerequisite for mystical progress, the abandonment of base desires is also implied in Salāmān va Absāl as a precondition for the just ruler. As a result, we find that Jāmī puts a unique spin on the perennial Iranian idea about religion (dīn) and kingship (daulat) being twin-brothers. According to the implicit political advice of Jāmī, the true shadow, or vicegerent, of God is the ruler who unites dīn with daulat by having personally attained the rank of both a Sufi saint (vali) and a just king (pādshāh-i ʿādil).

The mystico-political significance of Salāmān va Absāl is reflected in the religious, which is to say, Sufi mystical atmosphere, and the political activities of the Āq Qoyūnlū court, which was its intended audience. The contemporary sources used in this study, including the ʿĀlām-ārā-yi amīnī, Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya, Akhlāq-i Jalālī, Menākib-i Gūlsenī, Rauzāt al-jinān wa jannāt al-janān, and the Rashaḥāt-i ʿain al-ḥayāt, indicate that itinerant dervishes and tariqa-affiliated Sufis exerted considerable influence over the Āq Qoyūnlū rulers Üzūn Ḥasan and his son Yaʿqūb. In spite of this, among the few investigations into prominent religious figures attached to the Āq Qoyūnlū household, most have tended to focus on the roles of the Khalvati Sufi shaikh Dada ʿUmar Raushanī and his spiritual heir, Ibrāhīm Gulshānī, at the expense of other influential Sufis. By utilizing the above-mentioned primary sources, this study demonstrates that, despite its reputation as the un-official Sufi order of the Timurid dynasty in Herat, the Naqshandī brotherhood and several of its representatives, namely Darvīsh Qāsim and ʿUnīr Allāh Kūzakunānī, propagated the order in western Iran (especially Tabriz) and were involved in the spiritual and political activities of the Āq Qoyūnlū royal court. Ironically, it was Jāmī, writing poetry and letters to Yaʿqūb from his residence in Herat, who appears to have exerted the most lasting Naqshandī influence over the Āq Qoyūnlū. By examining the personal letters exchanged between Jāmī and Yaʿqūb, it seems that the two had a virtual master-disciple relationship. In fact, we have argued that the Naqshbandi technique of himmat, coupled with the order’s doctrine that a Sufi shaikh could direct his disciples without being physically present, suggests that Jāmī may indeed have served as Yaʿqūb’s shaikh, or spiritual master. The culminating point of their rapport was Jāmī’s dedication of his Salāmān va Absāl to Yaʿqūb to commemorate the latter’s public repentance from wine-drinking in 893/1488.

It would therefore be appropriate to assert that the reception of Salāmān va Absāl capped a decade-long effort by Yaʿqūb and his vazīr,
Qāżī ʿĪsā Sāvajī, to cultivate Persian belles-lettres at the Āq Qoyūnlū court. Although Tabriz never eclipsed the literary output of the Timurids under Sultān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā, the patronage of accomplished poets like Ahli Shīrāzī, Kamāl al-Dīn Banāʾī, Shahīdī Qumi, and Bābā Fīghānī by Yaʾqūb, is another indication that the literary tastes of the Āq Qoyūnlū were highly sophisticated. As a consequence, Yaʾqūb and his retinue would no doubt have recognized Salāmān va Absāl as an esoteric work to be understood on several different levels. Evidence in support of this contention is contained in near-contemporary poetic anthologies written in Persian, namely the Hasht biḥisht by Shāh-Muḥammad Qazvīnī, which includes notices on some forty poets attached to the Āq Qoyūnlū court of Yaʾqūb. Along with the Tūhfa-i Sāmī and the Majālis al-ʿushshāq, the Hasht biḥisht yields valuable information on the personal lives of Yaʾqūb and Qāżī ʿĪsā, information which might explain why Jāmī addressed Salāmān va Absāl to the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler. For example, Qāżī ʿĪsā was banished from court because of his romance with Yaʾqūb’s sister, and Yaʾqūb himself, in addition to feuding with his uterine brother Yūsuf, was morose and constantly occupied with drinking.

As the final chapter of this study hypothesizes, the similarities between the narrative of Salāmān va Absāl and events at the Āq Qoyūnlū court can be interpreted as art imitating life. That is to say, in writing Salāmān va Absāl, Jāmī created an historical allegory whose characters symbolically represented Yaʾqūb and members of the Āq Qoyūnlū court, and whose plot symbolically recounted the renunciation by Yaʾqūb from his libertine habits and his apparent turn toward Sufi asceticism. In our reading of the text, Salāmān serves as a symbol for Yaʾqūb, Absāl is a symbol of wine, the King of ancient Greece is a symbol of the ideal of kingship, and the Sage is a symbol of Qāżī ʿĪsā. The killing of Absāl and the renunciation of her memory by Salāmān represents Yaʾqūb’s abandonment of wine-drinking and his public repentance. The pivotal role played by the Sage in the moral reformation of Salāmān reveals the pivotal role played by Qāżī ʿĪsā in the repentance of Yaʾqūb, a claim supported by the ʿĀlām-ārā-yi amīnī by Khunjī-Iṣfahānī. In recognizing the historical symbolism of Salāmān va Absāl, this study concludes that Jāmī dedicated his allegory to Yaʾqūb around 893/1488 in order to commemorate the public repentance of the Āq Qoyūnlū ruler and his prohibition of assorted vices in Tabriz. Our thesis maintains that the traditional wisdom that Jāmī dedicated Salāmān va Absāl to Yaʾqūb as a coronation gift in 885/1480 can no longer be supported by the available evidence, and that the historical symbolism of the tale indicates not only that it was written sometime between 893/1488 and 897/1492, but that it was one of Jāmī’s final and most complex works.
After the presentation of supplication and the expression of humility and meekness, the petition of the devotee of the lofty threshold of—He is still a refuge for the masses of created beings and for the entirety of creation—he who, this needy one, [which is to say, someone] deserving of anonymity and worthy of one's forgetfulness, praises and constantly calls to mind in an epistle, whose heart, like a point, turns into the center of the ambit of astonishment and the pivot of the circle of contemplation. If the lip of [this person’s] imprudence opens and appears in the form of a written reply, the sword of punishment will be drawn on account of the lofty awfulness of that side (Ya’qub) and the terror inherent in his majesty and propitious fortune. Verse:

When the brilliant sun becomes manifested,
How is it that a mere mote appears equal to it?

And if he pursues the habit of keen-hearing and sharp-wittedness, and retracts the tongue of weakness into the palate of silence, from this side (Jāmī), the entreaties of sincerity and allurements of affection and privilege will seize the collar of his soul, because:

When the cloud reaches effulgence, it is not pleasant for the lily,
Since all its petals, in their search of praise, do not retreat from the deluge.

Out of necessity then, the contemplation of both sides has come into view and the middle path [of inner vision] has appeared. Verse:

Like an echo from the mountain, neither silent nor spoken,
This good tiding is unceasingly exclaimed:
“May God always enjoin good fortune and divine assistance upon his soul, Peace!”

---

1 For the transcribed and edited version of the letter, see Urunbaev and Rahmanov, Nāmahā va munshaʾāt-i Jāmī, 281 (letter no. 422).
2 The phrase in Arabic, which is not Qur’ānic, is comparable to verses of the Hebrew Bible concerning Jacob (Ya’qūb), the Old Testament patriarch and Islamic prophet after whom Ya’qūb b. ʿUzūn Ḥasan was presumably named, specifically Psalm 46: 7 and 46: 11: “The God of Jacob is still our refuge.”
APPENDIX TWO

SALĀMĀN VA ABSĀL

Translation

In praise of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate.

Oh You, the memory of whom refreshes the souls of lovers,
The tongues of lovers are moistened by means of the water of Your grace.

From You, a shadow has fallen upon the world,
And become the very substance of the beautiful.

Lovers have fallen for that shadow,
They have remained melancholic, on account of that substance.

Only when the secret of Your beauty was manifested through Lailī,
Could the love for her kindle a fire in Majnūn.

Only when You made the lips of Shīrīn like sugar,
Could the two lovers suffer, livers engorged with blood.

Only when ʿAzrā became silver-cheeked, on account of You,
Could the eyes of Vāmiq cry mercury-colored tears.

All this talk of beauty and love is because of You, and nothing more,
The lover and the beloved are no one but You.

Oh You, for whom the beauty of the lovely ones is but the veil,
You have concealed Your face with the veil.

You nourish the veil through your own beauty,
From that, you give away the heart, like a veiled bride.

So completely is Your lovely face melded with the veil,
That one cannot differentiate the veil from Your face.

For how long then will You be a coquette in the veil?
A world love-plays with the form of the veil?

The time has come for You to loosen the veil in front of You,
To show Your own face, without the veil,
To make me selfless in my witnessing my true self,
And to free me from having to discern good and bad,
So that I may be a lover, made luminous for You,
My eyes sown shut and thus unable to gaze at others.
Oh You, the path to whom is manifested in all modes of divine reality,
There is nothing that concerns God’s creatures, except You.

Though I became a witness to every divine manifestation,
I do not see any other, except You in this world.

You unveil Yourself in the outer form of the world,
You are the All-Knowing One, wrapped in the garment of Adam.

Duality cannot enter into Your sacred precinct,
There is no talk there of particulars and universals.

My wish is that You will make me one out of this duality,
And thus give me a place in the spiritual station of unity,

So that, like the Kurd, I am delivered from duality,
And cry, “Oh God, am I me or You?”

If I am me, from where does this knowledge and power come,
And if it is You, from where does this impotence and weakness arise?

The tale of the rustic Kurd, who, in the midst of a crowded town, fastened a
gourd to his foot in order not to get lost.

There was a Kurd, who, on account of the vicissitudes of fate,
Traveled from the desert and mountain to the town.

He saw a city, full of clamor and loud cries,
Coming to a boil, on account of its throngs of people.

The restless of the world were everywhere,
Running here, there, and up against one another.

That one, on the outside, wanted to come in,
While that other one, who was inside, wanted to go out.

That one went from right to left,
That other one, thought it better to go to the right.

When the poor Kurd saw the toil and commotion,
He left its midst and betook himself into a corner.

He said: “If I made a place in the ranks of men,
I might lose myself in that place.

If I do not fashion a token for my sake,
How can I find myself again?”

There was, by chance, a gourd lying there for him,
He tied the gourd to his foot, so that it would be a token,

So that if he lost himself in the city and streets,
He could find himself again by looking at the gourd.
A clever person, one who quick to understood the importance of that secret,
Fell down in amazement, to the extent that the Kurd fainted right there.

At that moment he unfastened the gourd from the Kurd,
Tied it to his own body, and began to sleep.

When the Kurd awoke he saw the gourd
Tied onto the foot of the person in front of him,

He shouted at him: “Hey you weakling, get up,
For on account of you, I am confused by what I have done to myself!

Am I me or you? I do not know precisely,
If I am me, why is the gourd on your foot?

And if this is you, where am I? Who am I?
I am not being taken into account.

Oh God, I am the worthless Kurd,
My rank is lowlier than all Kurds.

Enlighten this poor Kurd through Your splendor,
Strain away these awful dregs through Your grace,

So that I am purified of that which contaminates vision,
And so that I become a salutatory draught for the People of the Heart,

Satisfying palates, one-by-one, like a wine cup,
If not by the jug, then at least by the cup.

And if this honor happens to befall me,
I will give praise to the Master of Both Worlds.

Praise of his Excellency, the Prophet Muḥammad, the ring of servitude to whom is like a string of pearls around the necks of the powerful, and the brand of slavery to whom is like a mark of the good fortune of the noble.

That master, for whom the cavalcade of kings are his servants,
And who have hung the earring of his law in their ear,

For those good-fortuned ones, His face is the qibla of the soul,
The dust of his laneway is the kaʿba of hope.

His laneway became the kaʿba of every pilgrim,
The kaʿba cannot do without a Zamzam well.

The Zamzam well is, in fact, his tear-soaked eyes,
The glistening of the Gnostics is on account of that Zamzam.

The cries of those who sprinkle Zamzam water on graves are, in fact, for him,
The cries of the waterwheels at the Zamzam well are, in fact, on account of him.
Before him, the *ka'ba* was full of stone idols,  
It was narrow for the seekers of God in His sacred precinct.

Through his striving, they were extirpated, root-and-branch,  
He cast them off into the desert of non-existence.

The path of religion was purified of its rocky terrain,  
That path became a broad parade ground for the seekers of God.

The stepping ground of Abraham became perfect for him,  
That station was exalted, on account of the auspiciousness of his arrival.

On the black stone of the *ka'ba* he placed the title, *Right Hand of God*,  
On the *Right Hand of God*, he gave kisses in veneration.

Never on earth has the hand been given  
A hand-kiss such as this for any person.

For all eternity he faced Marwa mountain near Mecca in purity,  
Carrying out his praiseworthy efforts on both mountain and plain.

He is the exordium of the manuscript of both worlds,  
All the people of the world are beggars, and he is the master.

We eat morsels from the banquet table of his generosity,  
We carry away leftovers from the bounty of his offerings.

An entire people, draught-stricken from a lack of devotion to God,  
Have hope that a bounty come from the palm of his hand.

Whomever gathers crumbs from the blessed banquet table,  
What despair is there, for him, from the misfortune of famine?

The tale of the proud slave, who, on account of the authority of his master, was not afraid, and who did not care about starvation and hardship.

A famine arose in the region of Egypt, so terrible  
That every person, on account of their fear, threw their belongings into the Nile river.

Since they were not aware of a path to bread,  
They threw the belongings of existence into water.

The value of each slice of bread was a life,  
They continually cried “bread” and were giving up life.

A wise man saw a handsome slave,  
Who was dragging the train of his hem in a glorious and coquettish way.

He had a mein, adorned like the orb of the sun,  
His face was full-moon-like, undiminished from eating very little.

He was fresh-faced, full of laughter, and completely joyful,  
Strutting proudly in every direction, like a cheerfully swaying branch.
The wise man said to him: "Oh slave of glory and coquetry, For how long will you be disobedient and arrogant? An entire world is abject and downcast, on account of their despair for bread, Why are you this way, so carefree from sorrow?" To which he said: "I keep a blessed master in my head, I am swimming in his benefits. His banquet table is full of bread and his house is full of grain, The word ‘famine’ is missing from his household. Why should I not be blithe and joyful in this way? And in the process, be free from the bite of starvation?"

In praise of the king, the refuge of right religion, the shadow of God in both worlds over the heads of the weak and dispossessed, may God, be He exalted, prolong his rule.

Within the vaulted roof and foundations of this lofty dome, What is the task of the one who has received His bounty? It is to dwell in the station of gratitude to Him, And in the bounties of the noble world-possessor. The special bounty, which is effected through His command, That bounty is the existence of the just king. The just king is nothing except the shadow of God, The shadow of God is a refuge for mankind. However much the essence of a person receives glory from this, In the eyes of the sages, there is something like it in the shadow.

This shadow is like the essence of the Master of the shadow, Be careful so that you do not look disdainfully on the shadow. The shadow is a reflection of the essence of the One who holds the shadow, And is full of substance from the attributes of His essence. Although in His essence He is concealed through His attributes, He is manifested in every direction of this world through His shadow. Through the majesty of kings, Divine effulgence is manifested. And if you require proof concerning this claim, Go look upon the king, who is the refuge of the world.

He is a prince who has the vast ocean, left and right, The entire purview of the kingship of Jamshīd is under his royal sealing-ring. Shāh Ya'qūb is that world-possessor, who, On account of his loftiness, humbles low the pinnacle of the heavens.
The dominion of existence is within the boundaries of his polo grounds, 
The ball of the world is within the curvature of his mallet.

The crescent moon kisses the dust kicked up from the horseshoe of his 
Rakhsh, 
Its humped back is proof of this very fact.

At the top of this garden canopy, far from misery, 
His strength became great from this act of supplication.

His hands revived the ancient Arabian custom of being noble, 
Raising even the fame of the generosity of Ḥātim.

His name is the exordium of the volume of justice, 
His decrees are the fulcrum of the scales of justice.

The light of his justice has imprisoned the darkness of tyranny and 
oppression
In the night-chamber of non-existence.

On account of the beauty of his character, he became the hero of the age,
This, he inherited from the good character of [Ūzūn] Ḥasan.

The cavalcade of his father left for the gates of eternity, 
On account of him, this beautiful nature remains as his inheritance.

The azure sky is but the foot of his throne, 
The kings bow down in prostration before his pedestal,

No one refuses to bow down in front of his throne, 
Whoever turns their head away from him would not find their head.

True cavalry-ship is to make one’s head the dust of his path, 
True excellence, is to turn one’s face towards his path.

Whoever’s head became dust on his path, 
His dust was the crown of the head of the heavens.

Whoever honored the dust of his door, 
In his eyes, every honor became a flowing watercourse.

My desire is to praise him, since, for many years 
I have said that I find years of good fortune by praising him.

But I will cut short this chapter, 
I will abbreviate this loquaciousness.

The body of the sun has arisen above the horizon, 
An entire world prospers on account of its radiance.

It is not within the purview of the mere mote 
To become a story-singer by praising him.

To sing his praises is not within the purview of just any person, 
I spoke his name, and this very praise for him is sufficient.
The tale of the poet who intended to praise the king, but who presented an abbreviated composition in the name of the king.

A poet came before a famous king and said:

“Oh you, whose exalted crown scrapes the heavens,

I have composed a fresh poem in praise of you,
I have threaded a pearl, bright as the Sirius star.

Although a circle of many people have strung pearls of praise for you,
Rarely have they composed a panegyric for you like this.”

At that moment he passed his composition into the hands of the king,
In it, he inscribed the name of the king, and nothing more.

The king said to him: “Oh you, who are empty of intellect and reason,
It is better that you be silent from this praise.

The imprint of your composition is the name, and nothing else,
Mentioning the name of the person is not praising the person.

You have not described me in terms of my kingship and justice,
You have not related news of my throne and crown.

Because you cited my name far away from these descriptions,
That is not an acceptable method of bringing praise.”

The poet said: “Oh king, by means of your fortunate name,
You will find fame in noble attributes.

Everyone who speaks your name, or who hears it,
What comes to his mind, except noble attributes?

Because your name points to these great attributes,
It becomes an entire ledger book of the noble attributes of perfection.

Although a book, other than this one, is not mentioned,
If I call that book “praise of you,” it is not far from those other attributes.

Demonstration of the inability to effect due praise and to raise the hand of humility in the pronouncement of the prayer for the king.

For the king, his excellence and virtue are without limit,
Which faculty of intelligence could calculate that?

It is better that I now acknowledge my weakness,
And that I raise an affirming cry for this inability.

This, in the eyes of the possessors of penetrating insight, is right religion,
This is the secret of I cannot count the praises (for you).

\[\text{la ahsî thanâ} \] is part of a canonical hadîth, the entirety of which reads: “Oh Lord I take refuge in Your good pleasure from Your wrath and in Your pardons from Your
Since I am unable to count the praises for Him,
It is better to be quiet and still in the act of my prayer—

Not a prayer that comes from any feeble-minded person
Limited to the power of this [temporal] palace.

On the contrary, a prayer of the people of the heart,
Filled with the blessings of God,

Which brings happiness and joy in this world,
And which brings a life of salvation in the next world.

It places religion on the face of the heart of the king,
It makes a pious form of Islamic governance his law.

His task is to become he who makes royal decrees obligatory,
And to become the origin of everlasting good fortune.

So that this azure dome
Becomes the place of manifestation for the eastern sun.

May the royal throne be the place of manifestation of the King,
May he always be mindful of the secrets of the Faith.

May he, at every moment, be succored by eternal grace,
So that he becomes worthy of the everlasting kingdom.

May those who wish him well be free of misfortune,
And may they be firmly established on the straight path.

_In praise of the jewel of the mine of manly virtue, the architect of the pillars of
brotherhood, the governor of the kingdom of grandeur and beauty, the Joseph
of the Egypt of excellence and superiority._

May God, who is exalted, make powerful his supporters and magnify his stature.

A good word, especially for he who is a helpful friend for Yaʿqūb,
And who was manifested from the same womb.

He has made a place in the shadow of his prosperity,
And fallen, like a shadow, in obedience to him.

Wherever the sun is, that one is the ray,
Wherever the leader is, that one is the follower.

Though he was born in the cradle of the caliphate,
He has not planted one step in opposition to him.
He is the prince of the Egypt of grandeur and magnificence, It was for that reason that they named him “Yūsuf.”

130 His beautiful countenance was the envy of Joseph, Like Zulaikhā, an entire world is enamored of him. Anyone who sets their sight on his cheeks, They will call out: This is no mortal²

Though he is one brother, among others, of the king, For the king, he is equal to a hundred souls. He became both the brother and friend of the king, This must be very rare in life.

The simple man once asked a sage: “Oh you, who, by virtue of your proximity to knowledge, are unique among the noble,

135 Peel away the skin from this concealed subtle point: Which is better, the brother or the friend?”

The one close to knowledge said: “Neither is better, Since that particular brother will also be the friend.”

Oh God, so many months and years have passed at the head of the celestial wheel, That separating the two bright stars of Ursa Major⁴ ought to be impossible. Keep these two stars shining together, And keep them firmly situated on the throne of honor.

*Description of infirmity, old age, and the inability to derive benefits from the senses.*

It has been many ages that, in this ancient abode, The strings of my verses were tied onto the lute of speech.

140 Every time I strike a new melody, I speak about ancient happenings. My life has passed, and this melody has not ended, So too my soul is reduced, but this happening has not finished. My back has become like the crooked harp, and yet, Each night, I am engaged in the tuning of my lute, till daylight. The lute is discordant, and time has made The hands of the musician tremulous with old age.

---
³ Q 12: 31.
⁴ The constellation referred to in Persian as “Seven Thrones” or *haft aurang.*
How can the melody of the lute be harmonious,
How can the intonation of the musician be as fine as the zither?

145 The time has come for me to gently break this lute,
And cast it into the fire, so that I might smell its sweet fragrance.

It would be crude to play the lute badly,
It is pleasing to set the unmelodious lute on fire.

May it be so that the fragrance of the unmelodious lute is dispersed,
And that from it comes the perfume of Reason and Faith.

It is good to fortify Reason and Faith,
For this body of mine is pointed in the direction of weakness.

If gaps appear in the row of one's teeth,
How can one's teeth chomp down on a morsel of food?

150 The incisors are too blunt to cut,
The molars are too worn away.

Now I must eat like a child,
Bread is first chewed with the teeth of other people.

My stature became bent, and my head remains slumped frontward,
I have become inclined in the direction of my own roots.

My mother is the earth, and I am its suckling,
It is not strange that a mother's inclination should be for her children.

Soon it shall be that, at rest from tribulation,
I will fall into my mother's bosom in an intoxicating sleep.

155 No use comes from my two eyes,
Even with Frankish glasses, which make them four.

So long as a foot-ache is my close companion,
My habit has been to sit on my knees.

My legs are too helpless for me to stand up,
Unless, that is, my forearm becomes a pillar for my body.

These failings are the unavoidable defects of old age,
Woe to that person who is afflicted with old age!

Every affliction that befalls the constitution from old age,
The power of the physician is not enough to cure that.

The tale of the octogenarian who came to a physician and asked him for a cure for his infirmity, and the physician answered: “Your remedy is that you should become young and that you should go back in age from eighty to forty.”

160 A certain aged man, his lifetime spanning eighty years,
Consulted a wise man, regarding the state of his infirmity.
He said: “My teeth have become too brittle to eat,  
They cannot perform properly the task of chewing.

Because the morsel does not soften in my mouth,  
Digesting it in the stomach becomes difficult.

Since digestion in the stomach is incomplete,  
How will bits of food bestow strength to my limbs?

You would do me a great favor,  
Were you to remove this weakness from my teeth.”

The learned sage said to the old man:  
“Oh you, whose heart has split in two, on account of the affliction of old age,

After eighty years, there is no remedy for your infirmity,  
Other than youth, and that is impossible.

The row of your teeth will be strengthened,  
If, from these eighty, you go back forty.

But you are not empowered with the ability to retrace them,  
If, however, you reconcile yourself to this weakness, you will not be far from that which you seek.

When the appointed time grants you a separation from the body,  
It will deliver you from all of your weaknesses.

*The reason for composing the book and motive for presenting this address.*

The weakness of old age has broken the strength of my constitution,  
It has closed down the path of contemplation in my mind.

The comprehension of eloquence has vanished in my heart,  
The eloquence of speech has disappeared from my lips.

It is better that I draw my head into the collar of silence,  
And draw my foot into the skirt of oblivion.

These two couplets from the *Masnavī-yi Maulāvī* [Rūmī]  
Have a powerful relevance to my state of being:

“How should verse-making and rhyming come to me,  
Especially after the foundations of my sanity are destroyed?

I contemplate rhyming, and my beloved says to me:  
‘Do not contemplate anything except the sight of me!’

Who is the beloved? It is He whose abode is in hearts,  
All of the souls are His treasury of secrets.

He is aware of His own abode,  
It therefore is better that you keep a dwelling vacant for Him,
So that when He sees that the stranger is far from Him, He will make that abode His place of manifestation.

For everyone with a share of this knowledge, How could any other meaning be acceptable?

However, kings are also shadows of Him, They are full of His attributes and His essence.

Mentioning them is, in reality, remembering Him, Thinking of how to describe their qualities is to contemplate Him.

Perforce, in spite of my deficient petition, By praising the king, I am seized by the buttonhole.

But to praise him, in the ancient palace of this world, It is necessary that it be done in a wide-open space.

I will make that vast space with this masnavi, I will employ a new method of praise for Him.

Otherwise, I have already created the other masnavis, My mind is finished with the likes of them.

In particular, the versification of this book is for His sake, It is the manifestation of the signs of His grace and might.

So that when a particular occasion arises, I will be engrossed in the remembrance of Him.

I will praise Him in the form of pure speech, I will pray to Him through lamentation and weeping.

Because I do not have, at hand, the hem of nearness to Him, I must sit in conversation with Him.

*The tale of Majnūn, who, while in the desert, made his finger into a pen and wrote a notation on a tablet of sand like the geomancers. They asked, “What is this writing, and for whom has it been written?” Majnūn answered, “This is the name of Lailī. By writing her name, I am engaging in love making because she is not present.”*

A certain vagabond saw Majnūn Seated alone in the middle of the wilderness.

He had made a pen out of his fingers, and in the sand, Was tracing a letter with his hand.

The traveler said: “Oh you, who are a frenzied lover, what is this, To whom are you writing this letter?

All that suffering you will endure by inscribing it, The blade of the cold autumn wind will, in a flash, erase it.
How long will it remain on the tablet of sand,  
So that another person, after you, reads it?"

195 Majnūn said: “I am giving a description of Lailī’s beauty,  
And I am setting my mind at ease.

First, I write her name,  
After that, I will write the book of love and fidelity,  
There is nothing but her name in my hand,  
And from that name, my lowly person finds loftiness,  
Though not having tasted a single drop from her cup,  
I am, nevertheless, making love-play with her name.”

Discourse on the success of his Excellency, refuge of the caliphate, in abstaining from certain prohibited things. May God, glory be to Him, bring success to him in piety and redemption in this world and the next.

Oh excellent is a king who, in the time of his youth,  
Finds benefits from repentance, just like the aged do.

200 Though, at first, his lips were polluted from wine,  
In the end, he washed his lips of that wine with the water of repentance.  
The wine cup, with all that water of joy,  
Has remained dry-lipped and far from his audiences.  
The wine jug, its belly void of that which is forbidden,  
Betakes itself into a corner, just like ascetics of good repute.  
Having been excluded from the inner sanctuary of his banquets,  
The pitcher, with its head in its hands, heaves hundreds of dry “alas-es.”  
Even though the flagon once raised its head for him,  
It has been forsaken, on account of his repentance, its hand on its neck.

205 How will the goblet again discover wine?  
Henceforth, may its only task be to measure the wind.  
For animals, it is all just eyes and ears,  
Intellect and reason are the property of man.  
Oh you, a person who is aware, wine is the enemy of awareness,  
Do not permit the friend to be conquered by his enemy!  
If fortune should sell half a barley grain’s worth of reason  
For two hundred ass-loads of pure gold.  
It is better for the wise man, since he spent a lifetime suffering  
To buy those two grains of reason and understanding,

210 Never taking one or two draughts of wine in his palm,  
And thus, all at once, squandering the coin of wisdom,
Never setting his foot outside the boundary of wisdom,  
And thus driving his prized possessions to the limits of madness.  
For an entire lifetime you drank wine and were senseless,  
You became a slave of its good and bad edicts.  
From all that wine drinking and merriment,  
What have you gained, other than losses?  
If you spend another hundred years in such a way,  
You will arrive at something even more vexing than this.  

215 Acknowledge the concupiscence of last year,  
And compare the coming year with that previous one.  

_The tale of the tailor who made a living patching Sufi cloaks and who bought a little bit of every type of fresh fruit, and bringing it to his wife and children to eat, said: “Be content with this and do not scratch the cheek of good intention with the thought of more, because the taste of this fruit is not like this all year, nor am I able to purchase more than this.”_  

A certain patch-maker was within the confines of Rayy,  
His mind contented with patch sewing.  
His back was bent under the burden of family matters,  
Since he had a fistful of tender-aged children.  
He was occupied, day and night, in mending  
The dervish cloak of his livelihood.  
When the fruits of the New Year ripened,  
He set his heart on every single fruit.  

220 For the benefit of his family, and with hundreds of types of stratagems,  
He acquired that fruit, bosom full, and underarms too.  
He proudly poured all of the fruit out in front of them,  
So that they were completely satisfied from eating all of it.  
After that, he said: “Oh you, who are lowly ones,  
Born upon the carpet of toil and despair,  
Even if a hundred loads of this fruit fell into your grasp,  
All of them have the same flavor, scent, and color.  
So renounce your concupiscence and your greed,  
And incline your nature toward contentment!  

225 Since I am lowly, like dust under the foot of poverty,  
Nothing more than this will ever come from my hand.”
On the fact that carrying through with the determination to renounce sin is dependent upon the will of God, glory be to Him. If it is fulfilled, gratitude must be given, otherwise one must beg for pardon.

Repentance is like a glass bottle, Divine decree like rock, How can a glass bottle do battle with a stone?

When Divine decree becomes the agent Repentance will be solidly founded;

And if Divine decree does not become its (i.e., tauba's) agent There is no happiness except in acquiescing to His judgments;

The repentance-granter and repentance-breaker are both Divine decree, Attributing these things to oneself is to sin.

If divine decree grants repentance, express gratitude, If not, run, like a person who sinned, and follow the path of contrition. For repentance is to be penitent over the past, And, for the present, to abandon acts of rebellion.

It is to also resolve that, in the future, You will overcome acts of disobedience. If, let us suppose, this determination of yours is not met— After all the choice to do so is not in your hands— Do not sleep for one moment, neglectful of rectifying it, Though you fell into the mire, do not sleep in the muck.

Resolve to again stand up to sin, Evermore to be in communion with repentance. May it come to pass that the bounty of God brings you back to the right path, And the good fortune of this resolution leads you away from sin.

The tale of the wine-worshipper who attained the ranks of perfection, and who, when asked the reason for that perfection, replied, "It is because I am so blessed that whenever I bring the goblet of spiritual wine to my lips, my intention in doing so is that I not stain them with a different, phenomenal goblet."

A wine-worshipper turned his face toward the path of repentance, And made a place, away from sin, in the refuge of repentance.

On account of repentance, he attained spiritual stations, And ensnared the quarry of sainthood.

A very insightful person asked him: "Oh you who have planted your foot on the highest frontier of perfection,
For many years you busied yourself with wine drinking, 
From which quality, did you attain this saintly grace?"

He answered: “Whenever I rest the cup of spiritual wine on my lip, 
For the sake of joy and rapture, 
Rarely does it ever pass through my mind that 
I would again raise my hand to a cup of phenomenal wine. 
Apart from this, no other desire comes into my heart, 
Except that I should wash my heart of the joy of phenomenal wine. 
The auspiciousness of this intention led me to success, 
It opened before me hundreds of doors of good fortune.

*Indication regarding a dream that this poet saw while composing this preface, 
and the interpretation of that dream in such a way that set his mind at ease.*

When, at night, I reached this very part of the discourse, 
And in the midst of thinking of You, sleep overtook me, 
I saw myself on a very long path, 
Pure and luminous, like the hearts of the People of the Secret. 
The dust of it was not stirred by the wind, 
The water on it did not mix with its earth. 
In short, it was a path without dust or clay, 
I walked upon that path peacefully. 
Suddenly, the noise of an army, full of tumult, 
Entered my ears from behind on that path.

The clamor of the heralds wrenched my heart from its place, 
And took wits from my head and strength from my legs. 
Seeking an escape, a way to avert calamity 
Entered my eyes in the form a lofty portal. 
When I took refuge in that direction, 
I was secure from the calumny of the army. 
From among them appeared the father of the King of the Age, 
That one most fair in name, character, and countenance, 
A mount as high as the heavens beneath his thighs, 
His face luminous, like the sun and the moon, 
Majestic vestments swaddling his breast, 
And a camphor-white turban bound to his head.

---

5 ḥasan: an allusion to Üzün Ḥasan.
He turned the reigns toward me, joyful and smiling,
With his smile the door of ease opened to me.

When he arrived in front of me, he alighted,
Kissed my hand, and showed sincere concern for me.

I was gladdened by those gestures, which were charitable,
Relived at his expressions of humility.

In speaking with me, he scattered an abundance of pearls,
But none of them remained in my ears.

At daybreak, when I rose from my pillow,
I asked my heart for the interpretation of this dream.

It said to me: “The favor and approbation of the king
Comes as proof of his acceptance of your poetry.

Do not sit quietly, because of this conversation, for even one moment,
Since you started it, endeavor to complete it.”

When I heard my heart disclose this dream interpretation,
Like a pen, I girded my loins for the task of writing.

May it be that, the source from which this dream sprang,
Be that same place from which this interpretation proceeds.

The tale of the interpretation of the dream for that simple man by way of mockery and derision, and that dream coming true without the slightest alteration or change.

A certain simple, having fallen from the path of reason,
Went before that interpreter of dreams.

He said: “At the crack of dawn, I saw myself in a dream,
Perplexed, and in a desolate and ruined village.

Wherever I looked, there was a house in the distance,
It was without walls and in a ruinous state.

When I set foot in one of the ruins,
My foot hit upon a treasure.”

Laughing, the dream interpreter said to the poor fellow:
“Oh you who have been made rich by way of the treasure, kuntu kanz.\(^6\)

Throw clogs made of iron on your feet,
Split granite in two and cleave the mountains.

Whenever you travel to a place of ruin,
Stamp hard upon the ground.

---

\(^6\) An allusion to the hadith qudsi: kuntu kanzan makhfiyyan.
Wherever your foot makes a depression in the soil,
Make a pit in that place with your fingernails.

When you break apart the earth in this fashion,
I have no doubt that a treasure will fall into your hands."

When, on account of the sincerity of his faith, the simple man
Departed and acted in accordance with the words of the interpreter,

He started his quest, and did not suffer in his search,
His foot found treasure in the very first step.

There must be sincerity in every one of your actions,
So that the hem of your desire remains in your hands!

If it so happens that your sincerity wavers, even the least bit,
All of your searching is for naught.

Beginning the story with the appearance\(^7\) of Salāmān and Absāl.

There was a King in the land of Greece,
Who, like Alexander, possessed the crown and royal sealing-ring.

During his reign, there was a certain Sage,
Who made firm the foundation of the palace of wisdom.

One by one, the people of wisdom became his students,
All of them sat in a circle around him.

When the King realized the eminence of his rank,
He consorted with him in private and in public.

He did not travel one step without consulting him,
He sought no other desire than his instruction.

Then he managed to completely conquer the world,
He subdued everything from Qāf to Qāf.

On account of his justice and munificence, the affairs of God’s creatures
were well ordered,
His kingship stood firm on that foundation.

If the king is not himself a sage,
Or if a sage is not his friend and boon-companion,
The foundation of the palace of his kingship is weak,
And rarely will the laws of his commands be correct.

Ignorant of the attributes and hallmarks of justice and tyranny,
He cannot distinguish justice from tyranny.

---

\(^7\) *sūrat-i ḥal*: the “appearance of the spiritual state” of Salāmān and Absāl.
He applies tyranny in the place of justice,
He treats justice as if it were disgraceful, like injustice.

The world is thus ruined through his tyranny,
On account of him, the wellspring of kingship and religion is a mirage.

290 That far-sighted one has spoken well:
“It is justice not religion that keeps kingship stable.
An infidel king who proceeds with justice
Is better for kingship than a pious king who is a tyrant.”

Pointing to what God, may He be praised and exalted, said to David, peace be upon him, about the ancient kings of Iran.

God said to the prophet David:
“Oh man of excellent discernment, tell your community
That when they mention the kings of Iran,
They should not utter their names, except with respect.
Although their religion was fire worship,
Their customary law was based on justice and rectitude.

295 For centuries the world flourished on account of them,
The darkness of tyranny was far from their subjects.
The servants, at ease from the torment of worry,
Knew only quiet repose, on account of their justice.”

The manifestation of the wish for a son, on the part of the felicitous King, and the discourse of the Sage on that subject.

When, in accordance with the counsel of the well-known Sage,
The world became stable under the King of Greece,
The world, from end to end, was subservient to him,
Making him the second Alexander.
No part of the surface of the world
Escaped the imprint of his royal sealing-ring.

300 One night, the King contemplated his situation,
He performed the duty incumbent upon a person with knowledge of God’s favor.
He found that the garment of good fortune suited him,
For whatever he sought from the stuff of dynastic fortune, he found it,
Except, that is, for a son, who, in glory and honor,
Would succeed him after his was gone.
When this thought appeared in the mind of the King,
The Sage spoke right to him.
He said: "Oh you, whose duty it is to be king,  
May you be congratulated for your thought!

There is no better blessing than a son,  
There is no deeper attachment for the soul, than for a son.

A man's wish is realized through a son,  
A man's name lives on through a son.

As long as you shall live, your eyes will be bright because of him,  
Because of him, when you die, your dust will become a rose garden.

When you fall down, he will take your hand,  
When you remain stuck in place, he will be your foot.

Your back becomes powerful through his support,  
Your life is renewed every time you see him.

In the ranks of battle, he is sharp, like a sword,  
Raining arrows, like a storm cloud, onto the heads of the enemies.

When he and your allies all rout the enemy,  
He strives, by way of the soul, they, by way of the body.

Your enemy trembles on account of his skills,  
You could say, in fact, that his very purpose is to vanquish the enemy.

_The story of the Arab who named his sons after beasts of prey and who named his servants after beasts of burden._

A certain traveler, in order to find good fortune,  
Passed the night in the home of an Arab.

He found that all of his sons, big and small,  
Bore the names of pack animals, like Lion and Wolf.

Everyone, from among his servants,  
Were named Sheep or Lamb.

The traveler said to him: "Oh warrior from among the Arabs,  
Tonight I am astonished on account of these names."

The Arab said: "My sons, who are a part of my cavalcade,  
Are well prepared for the task of defeating the enemy.

My servants, on the other hand, whose concern is domestic service,  
Are responsible for waiting on my guests.

Wolf and Lion are necessary to vanquish the enemy,  
That is, to be courageous in slaying the adversary.

For the sake of domestic tasks, Lamb or Sheep are better,  
Since no one suffers injury or loss from their deeds.
In condemnation of unworthy sons.

This, that I just said, is the state of the good son,
He, who is well and truly linked to his origin.

On the other hand, the one possessed of bad thoughts and evil nature,
There are thousands of ugly dispositions in his constitution.

It would be better for you to withhold from that son the thread of his lifetime,
So that you might prevent his wicked habits.

Noah, had an unworthy son,
His manner was vainglorious and ignorant of God’s will.

He suffered from the stigma of: “He is not of your people!”
He did not, in the end, see the way to escape the Flood.

Since the condition of every child is not perfect,
Do not seek just any son from God—but

Such a son that, in the end,
It is not necessary to pray and to seek from God his death.

The tale of a person who appealed for help from a saint, that is, through the saint’s himmat for the birth of a son, and who later sought assistance from the same saint in order to be free from his son’s wickedness.

A certain impertinent man went before a shaikh,
His heart vexed on account of his being without a son.

He said: “Oh shaikh, direct your himmat at me!
So that God, the Omnipotent, grants me good fortune,

A tender cypress, to grow from my water and clay,
From whose existence, my heart will be put at ease.

That is to say, a young boy to come to my side,
From whose beauty, my eyes will be brightened.”

The shaikh said: “Do not trouble yourself,
Leave this matter to God.

For, in every matter that you set your sight and mind to,
God knows your best interests better than you.”

The man said: “Oh shaikh, but I am a prisoner of this desire,
Do not withhold your favor from me!

Be, by way of prayer, the conduit of my wellbeing,
So that my desire is quickly realized!”

---

8 laisa min ahlika—Q 11: 46.
The shaikh, in a state of prayer, raised his hands, 
His arrow sailed from the archer’s thumbstall and struck the target.

A boy, redolent of musk, like the wild deer of China,  
And from the hunting ground of the Unseen realm, became his quarry. 

But when the sapling of lust and the branch of desire  
Sprouted in his water and clay, 
He took to drinking wine with cronies, 
He began to expend his energy in pursuit of every desire.

Intoxicated, he situated himself on the edge of the roof,  
He dishonored his neighbor’s daughter. 

The husband of the girl fled his presence,  
If not, he would have wanted to spill his blood with a dagger. 

They informed the local constable of the spectacle,  
He demanded cinch-purses of gold from the father of the boy. 

Night and day, these were his affairs,  
His conduct became notorious throughout the city and its streets.

Good counsel made no impression on him,  
Punishment bore no effect on him.

When his father became distressed, on account of these dealings,  
He again grasped at the skirt of the shaikh.

Saying: “Because I do not have a source of help, other than you,  
Be compassionate to me, and come to my aid.

Offer up another prayer regarding his deeds,  
And remove his torment from off my head.”

The shaikh said: “That day I said to you,  
‘Do not beg and then leave off of this prayer.’

Ask God for forgiveness and salvation,  
Since this will suffice you in this world and the next.”

When you pack your bags and leave this world,  
Neither son nor daughter will be of any service to you.
You are a slave, be unfettered in your servitude,  
Whatever may unfold, be content with that.

_The Sage’s condemnation of lust, without which, the bearing of children cannot occur._

When the perspicacious Sage heard  
The tale of the son from the King of Greece, 
He said: “Oh King, whoever does not purge their lust,  
Remains in the despair occasioned by being deprived of a son.
The eye of reason and knowledge is blinded by lust,
On account of lust, a demon appears as a ḥūrī in front of the eyes.

355 Wherever the tumult of lust rages,
It severs wisdom from the heart and light from the eyes.
Wherever the torrent of lust becomes a flood,
It demolishes the abode of good fortune.
The path of lust is full of the clay and mire of calamity,
Whoever falls into this quagmire will not rise again.
Whoever tastes a single dreg of the wine of lust,
Will never, for all eternity, see the face of redemption.
From that trifling bit of wine, the honorable man becomes contemptible,
Since, just a little bit of it, always demands more.

360 Whenever you taste even one drop of the wine of lust,
The pleasure derived from it sits on your palate.
That pleasure becomes a bridle ring in your nose,
It lures you to no end, night and day.
Until your soul is engaged with the [Sufi] path of non-existence,
It will not be possible for you to again stand up against it.

_The tale of a noble person who did not respond to the invitation of a base person, so that he would not become accustomed to associating with base people._

A certain scoundrel prepared a party,
He invited the rabble of the town.
He also invited a noble person,
So that he might trouble himself to approach his table.

365 The noble person said: “The carnal soul is abject and weak,
My heart is broken in two, on account of these two qualities it has.
If it draws near these wretches,
And consumes a few morsels of their food,
The taste of that meal, even far from its table,
Will remain in the roots of its teeth.⁹
So that when another lowlife invites me to him,
That pleasure will be my leader.
My name will be erased from the ranks of nobility,
I will forever remain in the company of the scoundrels.

---

⁹ This couplet does not appear in all MSS. See Jāmī, _SA_, 410 n. 1.
In condemnation of women, who are the locus of lust, the result of which is children.

The people of lust cannot do without women, 
Associating with women extirpates the roots of life.

What is a woman? A thing deficient in intellect and faith, 
Nothing in the world is as deficient.

Know, then, that it is quite unlike the proper conduct of the People of Perfection, 
To be, month and a year, the plaything of such deficient creatures.

In the eyes of the Perfect Man, who, by virtue of his knowledge, is a leader, 
The plaything of the deficient is lowler than the deficient itself.

There is nothing worse than the ingratitude of a woman, 
Who sits at the head of the table of a man given much by God.

If you give gold and silver to a woman for a hundred years, 
Smother her, from head to toe, in precious jewels,

Stitch robes for her with the brocade of Shushtar, 
Furbish a house for her with golden flatware,

Hang rubies and pearls from her ears, 
Fashion golden embroidered nightgowns for her,

Adorn her table with all different dishes of cuisine, 
At lunch time and during the dinner hour,

Bring to her water drawn from the fountain of Khidr 
When she becomes thirsty, in a jeweled goblet,

Bring pomegranates from Yazd and apples from Isfahan, 
When, as kings do, she wants fruit from you,

And when she becomes inflamed and twisted, on account of a quarrel, 
All of these aforementioned things amount to nothing in her eyes, absolutely nothing.

She will then say to you: “Oh you soul-melter, you life-shortener, 
Never have I seen a single thing from you.”

Although her countenance is a tablet of purity, 
That tablet is devoid of the word “fidelity.”

Indeed, who in the world ever saw fidelity from a woman, 
Who ever saw anything from a woman other than plots and stratagems?

For years she will hold you in her embrace, 
Then, when you turn away for a moment, she will forget you.
When you get old, there will, no doubt, be another friend for her,
A companion who will, most assuredly, be more vigorous than you.
As soon as she spies a young man,
She will want him, rather than you, to come to her service.

The tale of Solomon, peace be upon him, and Bilqīs, and how they spoke to each other with sincerity.

Bilqīs and Solomon were deep in conversation one day,
Bearing their innermost secrets.
The heart of each of them was set on equanimity,
Their minds were purified of the rust of arrogance.
The king of right religion, Solomon, spoke first:
“Though the royal sealing-ring of kingship was fitted to me,
Neither day nor night does anyone come to my threshold,
Without me first looking at his hands,
In order to see what gift he brings for me,
A gift that would increase my magnificence and nobility.”
Thereupon Bilqīs revealed her innermost secret,
And made this point regarding her own state:
“No young man on earth passes by me,
Without me gazing upon him longingly.
Such is the custom of women of good character,
Women of bad character should not even be discussed.

Master Firdausī, whose wisdom is known,
Heaped horrible curses on good women.
How is an evil woman to behave well?
In the eyes of good men, she is always worthy of curses.

The Sage’s plan for a son to be born without the medium of woman, and his hiring a wet-nurse to nurture him.

When the well-meaning Sage
Condemned the lust of women in front of the King,
He made a plan, by way of his knowledge,
Which bewildered the thoughts of wise people.

Without lust, he drew sperm from the King’s loins,
And deposited in a place other than the womb.
After nine months, there appeared, from that place,
An infant without defect, and a child without blemish,
A rosebud grew from the root of the rosebush of kingship,
A fragrance wafted from the dominion of awareness,
The royal crown was glorified through his essence,
The royal throne triumphed from his good auguries.
Without him, the plain of the earth and the eye of the heavens
Lacked, for the former, people, and for the latter, a pupil.

On account of him, that vast plain flourished with people,
And the eye was illuminated through the pupil.
Because they found him free of all blemishes,
They split his name from the word, “Salāmat.”
His name, Salāmān, descended from the sky,
His body and frame were free of any fault.
Because he had no part of mother’s milk,
They selected, for him, a wet-nurse,
A true heart-ravisher—in beauty, a full moon.
Her years were less than twenty, her name was Absāl.

Fine-bodied, from head to toe,
Every particle of her was fair and enchanting.
On the crown of her head was a line of silver
That parted, in two halves, like a harvest of musk.
Her tresses fell down on the nape of her neck,
From each hair a hundred calamities were hung.
Her stature was that of a cyprus from the garden of symmetry,
The crowns of kings were trampled in the path to her.
Her forehead was luminous, like a mirror,
Her eyebrows rested on it like verdigris.

When, mirror-like, its smoky-hue was polished,
The shape of an upturned letter nūn lingered.
Her eyes were like a drunkard, who, languid,
Reposed atop roses underneath a musk-scented canopy.
Her ears, attentive to subtle points,
Were silvery oyster-shells for the pearls of speech.
On her cheek was a beautiful line of indigo,
The splendor of the Egypt of her beauty, just like the River Nile.
Although that drawing of a talisman, was meant to ward-off the Evil Eye,
It brought endless calamities to the eyes of good people.

The rows of her teeth were watery pearls,
The casket containing those moist pearls were limpid rubies.
The path of thought became lost in her mouth,
Any talk about the art of thoughtful reason, was quieted.

From her lips, the palate drew nothing but sugar,
Which of those was her lips and which was sugar?

From the well of her chin, a sprinkling emanated,
And hung from a dimple.

Thousands of graces appeared through it,
Astute observers called it “her dewlap.”

Her body was of silver, just like a silvery doll,
Her neck held aloft like a long-necked flask.

The breasts on her body were like perfect bubbles,
Stirred by a zephyr, on the surface of water.

Beneath her breasts was a belly, shimmering bright,
White as ivory and soft as sable.

When the hairdresser beheld the grace of that belly,
She said: “This is nothing less than the petal of a rose.”

When she gestured by pointing toward it,
The tip of her finger made an impression,

A mark the describers called “navel”—
A navel, on which the heart of a musk-bag was emptied.

Whoever saw that waist, thinner than a hair,
Wanted nothing else but to embrace it.

Her thighs, a heap of eglantine roses,
Were concealed from the vulgar by a skirt.

Her two hands parted equally a treasury of grace,
From each sleeve, they hung like a silver purse.

The aggrieved found consolation in the palm of her hand,
It delivered a deluge of oblivion on the withered ones.

The desire of the People of the Heart was in her grasp,
Her finger was the key to their padlocked hearts.

Because of her hands, the insides of the lovers poured blood,
The color of her henna was drawn from the blood of lovers.

Each of her fingertips, dyed and un-dyed,
Was either a fresh filbert-nut or luscious jujube.

Her fingernails were moons of various phases,
Moons of hers that were only eclipsed by henna.

When the hairdresser decorated its shape,
A crescent moon fell from the tip of each.
When talk turns to her calves and thighs
One should, from such talk, draw the tongue back into the palate.

For I am afraid such speech will reach a place
Where those words will be unbearable to my delicate nature.

That is a secret concealed from the people forbidden to it,
No one, not any in the world, was privy to that secret.

Nevertheless, a thief penetrated that secret and seized it,
All that had been there was plundered.

He split open that silver-shelled one,
And, in doing so, found the pearl of his pleasure.

Whatever has been ravaged at the hands of another,
For it, the hand of rejection is better than the eye of its acceptance.

The tale of the whispering melancholic, who, on account of contamination by
the creatures of the sea, washed his hands of sea water and sought water that
was purer than the sea.

A whispering man once sat at the lip of the sea,
In order perform ritual ablutions for the sake of approaching God.

He saw a sea full of fish and serpents,
Frogs and crabs, thousands upon thousands, were within it.

The waterfowl swimming on every side,
Diving, seeking nourishment from the depths of the sea.

He said: “A sea that so many creatures,
Morning and night, circulate within it.

How am I to properly wash my hands and face in it?
Now I wash my hands of this cleansing.

I desire a wellspring in the style of a Zamzam well,
One in which the hands of the unconsecrated are cut-off from it.

With regard to that which has become defiled on account of the polluted,
Those who are of pure livers, care not for it.

Absāl’s assumption of the task of being wet-nurse to Salāmān, and the tucking
up of her hem for the nourishment of that pure being.

When the king took Absāl as a wet nurse,
So that the auspicious divination of Salāmān

Was delivered into the hem of her goodness,
And nourished from the sprinklings of her breasts.

When her eyes fell upon Salāmān,
She rent her collar on account of that sight.
Her soul grew infatuated with the subtlety of his essence,
She nestled him, just like a pearl, into a golden cradle.

In gazing at the cheeks of that heart-illuminator,
She could no longer sleep at night or repose during daylight.

From day until nightfall, all her labors and efforts,
Were engaged in loosening and tightening his cradle.

She would, at times, cleanse his body with musk and rosewater,
Then his sugar-lips took to her pure honey.

So firmly was her affection for that moon rooted in her soul,
That she closed the eye of affection to everyone other than him.

Without a doubt, were it possible for her,
She would have made a place for him in her eye, like a pupil.

When, after some while, he was weaned from her milk,
She commenced with another type of work.

At bedtime, she would prepare his bed cushion,
And burn like a candle over his head.

At daybreak, when he awoke from sleep,
She would adorn him, just like a golden doll.

She applied collyrium to his blue narcissus,
And bound firmly his garments upon him.

She cocked a golden cap atop his head,
And from it, hung a single black tress.

She encircled a girdle around his slender waist,
With bands of rubies and gold.

She would attend to him this way night and day,
Until he became a youth of fourteen years.

In terms of beauty, his moon-face was fourteen nights old,
His years, like his moon, were fourteen.

His beauty took on a rank so high
That desire for him took root in the heart of everyone.

His beauty became a hundred, and that hundred became a thousand,
Hundreds of thousands of hearts quivered with love for him.

That heart-pleaser had a stature like a spear,
He had turned into a sun, one spear tall.

When his spear-like stature was drawn upward,
A wound appeared on everyone's heart because of it.

From that height, wherever he cast his radiance,
The soul of an entire world burned on account of that sun.
475  His brow was a full moon, half of it hidden,
And half of it made conjunctive to eclipsed crescent moons.

His nose, beneath the eclipsed crescents,
Was a letter ālif in the center of a camphor moon.

His languid eye was a man-hunting deer,
Its place of manifestation was a bed of tulips.

Because of his cheeks, he was king of the dominion of excellence,
Kingly majesty was his companion.

The seal of his kingship was a fiery ruby,
A treasury of pearls and gems arrayed underneath its bezel.

480  His fresh apple was the fruit of the garden of Paradise,
Blessed be the hand that sowed this fruit!

The apple of his dewlap was a fountain of grace,
When the thirsty saw it, their soul came to their lips.

His neck raised the heads of the moon-like beauties,
He held in his lasso the necks of the world-conquering heroes.

The beautiful ones, seeking to repel misfortune,
Fastened amulets of prayer to his arm.

The might of all the strongmen was humbled before him,
The arms of the silver-breasted ones were under his hand.

485  On account of his arms, left and right,
Zealous people would scatter the coin of their life into his sleeve.

His grip shattered pure silver,
And twisted the hand of every steely-man.

In his fists, the coins of ease fell from his two palms,
The beauty of this inlaid work concluded at his fingertips.

Whatever may be said about the description of his beauty,
Is a pearl pierced from a sea of form.

Lend me the ear of your soul,
And hear a little bit more about his condition!

Description of the sharpness of Salāmān’s understanding and the excellence of his poetry and prose.

490  In speech, the sublety of his nature was such that it split hairs,
Even before hearing a pronouncement, it would hasten to the meaning.

Before the utterance even entered his ear,
Its meaning would come into the yoke of his understanding.

Whatever poetry came from the sea of his nature, was a single pearl,
Whatever prose, was a fruit from the orchard of his subtlety.
Like the Pleiades, the rank of his poetry was lofty,  
Like the constellation of the Bear, his prose was noble.  
In witticisms, his ruby lips were ready with an answer,  
In grasping fine points, his understanding was pure like water.  

His script was heart-alluring, like the facial down of the beautiful people,  
Calligraphists were like helpless lovers after seeing it.  
When he would grasp the musk-inscribing pen,  
The Celestial Tablet and Celestial Pen would heap praises upon him.  
His soul was blessed with every type of wisdom,  
He remembered all of the fine points of wisdom.  
In his execution of the philosophy of the Greeks,  
The Greeks would refer to him as: “He who is does well in expounding.”

Description of his enjoyable banquets and his delightful singing.  
At night, when his heart was liberated from all concerns,  
He would play the backgammon of delight with his cronies.  

He would decorate a banquet-hall like Paradise,  
And summon hūrī-faced singers.  
When his brain was warmed by wine,  
He would lift the veil of modesty off of the party.  
Sometimes he would harmonize with the singer,  
Accompanying the performer by becoming a singer himself.  
Keeping the melody with his sugar-lips,  
He would, like the Messiah, bring spirit into body.  
Sometimes he became the mate of the flute-player,  
Making a flute with his sugarcane lips.  

He would infuse the sound of the nay with sweet words,  
Pouring sugar into the skirt of the ear.  
Other times, he would seize the harp from the harpist’s hand,  
And sharpen its plaintive tune.  
He would pour moist filbert-nut onto its dry strings,  
Throwing off sparks onto the wet and the dry.  
Sometimes the lute was in his embrace, like a young child,  
And by having its ears boxed in chastisement,  
He would stir plaintive lamentations,  
Causing blood to pour from the eyelashes of the adults.  

At times he would become nightingale-voiced in reciting ghazals,  
Other times he would clap along to every word and movement.
This was what he would do each night, until daybreak, 
Passing time with companions in this fashion.

_Description of his polo-playing with his associates and how he snared the ball from the other players._

When his body was refreshed from the sleep of dawn, 
His intention, in the morning, was to go to the hippodrome.

At daybreak, when the king of this azure veil, 
Made his way to the parade-ground of the horizon.

Shāh Salāmān, still drunk and half-asleep, 
Would, foot in stirrup, track towards the hippodrome,

With a coterie, all of royal origin, 
And all tender-aged, fresh-faced, and in the prime of life,

Each one a commander in the cavalcade of beautiful people, 
Eah one the ruin of a kingdom, and the calamity of a realm.

He would gallop to the hippodrome, polo mallet in-hand, 
And hurl the gilded ball into the middle.

One by one, the polo players sought the goalpost, 
Like hundreds of crescent moons encircling one full moon.

Though all of them were struggling with the mallet, 
Salāmān was nimbler than all the rest.

With hundreds of agile moves, he would snare the ball from all comers, 
The ball was the full moon, and Salāmān was the sun.

With the crescent mallets trailing the full moon, 
He would say “ḥāl” all the way to the goalpost.

Even though the ball was returned a hundred times thereafter, 
Every time it was the same situation, and nothing more.

Indeed, that person for whom propitious fortune is his friend, 
And who is sustained by the sapling of good luck,

No mallet under this azure cupola 
Can snare the ball from his hippodrome.

_Description of his bowmanship and archery._

The _shāh_, after playing polo, would become 
Inclined, like a bow, to shoot arrows.

From the royal archers of the time, 
He would request an unstrung _Chāchī_ bow.

Without assistance he would anoint that bow with bowstring, 
The twang of the bowstring would leap from the corners.
He would briskly and nimbly rub his hands across it,
At first, in order to draw it to his earlobe.

Sometimes he would set a three-feathered arrow in it,
And it would fly off toward the path of the bulls-eye.

If the bulls-eye were the azure scroll of heaven,
Then, without a doubt, its center would be the bonze point of the sun.

And if the far-flying arrow were set loose from the archer's thumbstall,
Its alighting place would be at the limit of the horizon.

Had not the obduracy of the celestial orb become an obstacle,
It would have surpassed the circle of the horizon.

There would be no escape from the danger of his arrowhead
In the hunting grounds—not for the deer on foot, nor for the quail on wing.

Straight toward the goal it would swiftly go,
In the same way an upright constitution preserves one from sin.

*Description of his munificence and liberality, his generosity, and his gift-giving.*

In munificence and liberality his palm was like the sea,
On the contrary, the sea was mere foam from the ocean of his generosity.

On account of that cloud of effulgent generosity,
The surface of the world was full of dinars and dirhams.

Never relate him to the sea, for his palms
Would scatter pearls, whereas the sea only scatters shells.

The hand of his munificence was more open than a cloud,
For a cloud is a drop-giver, he, on the other hand, is a cinch-purse thrower.

When I adorn the banquet of his liberality,
My desire is to relate him to Ma'n and Ḥātim.

But next to him, Ma'n is indisputably worthless,
And Ḥātim, a miser.

So much was his hand accustomed to openmess,
His fingers would frown from the act of constriction.

If he wanted to clench his palm,
His fingers would not bend their backs into his fist.

If a beggar passed in front of his door,
His heart, pained from the cruelty of privation,

Would so thoroughly heap a load of favor upon him,
That he would flee from his court, running.
The tale of the escape of the poet Qaṭrān from the superabundance of gifts that Faẓlūn, the object of his praise, showered upon him.

Qaṭrān was an enchanter, knowledgeable of fine points, One ink drop from his reed-pen produced a sea of mystery. For the sake of Faẓlūn's honorific title: “Sea-Bestowing." He recited a panegyric graceful and polite from start to end. Because Faẓlūn's temperament accepted that praise, He made Qaṭrān's hem overflow with riches. The next day Qaṭrān sung his praises, Faẓlūn showered twice as much gold and silver upon the poet. He did the very same thing the following day, For days thereafter he repeated this conduct.

So completely did that gift multiply, That his interest in it disappeared. When night fell he sprung upward like a lightning bolt, And bundled his goods, fleeing from the sanctuary of Faẓlūn's bounty. At dawn Faẓlūn sought him, but did not find him, Saying: “The poor fellow renounced this good fortune.” Since my hand would give dirhams liberally, This, to him, was my generous custom. But he was unable to support this gift, Therefore, he labored in journeying from this threshold.

Indication that the object of these panegyrics is praise of the felicitous king, may God make his kingship and dominion eternal.

At night Intellect, that sweet-speaking counselor, Began, like a blazing sunset, to reproach me. It said: “Jāmī, for how long will you engage in idle thought, For who long will you keep scraping a reed-pen that cannot wear out? Any thing that is not victorious over the kingdom of subsistence, If it, by necessity, existed yesterday, today it is not. Do not lose the purpose of your true goal, Utter less the praises of non-existent kings." I said: “Oh you who are the wellspring of wisdom, And you, On whose head you are the seal of intelligent thought,

My object in making this eulogy is a different king, Other than the one on whose head currently rests the crown of good fortune.
The seven climes are subservient to his royal command,
The seven seas are sprinklings from his bounty.

It is better to conceal the description of the elect from the common people,
May that gnostic (Rūmī), who said the following, be forever in his moment:

‘It is better that the description of lovers
Be told in the garment of others.’

Truly, not everyone will be privy to this secret,
The door will not be opened to this secret, even to those privy to it.”

The tale of a lover who dispelled the suspicions of his rivals by describing the qualities of his beloved in terms of the sun, the moon, and the like.

A lover was sitting in a corner,
Engaged in conversation with himself.

At each moment he would construct a new tale,
And would tell a tale never heard before.

At first he would speak about the full moon, at another moment about the sun,
At another moment, about the petal of the rose, veiled by the hyacinth,
At another moment he would make subtle points about the stature of the cypress,
At yet another moment about the grass which rose from the dust of his feet.

A heedless person heard him from afar,
His mind startled on account of the lover’s inanities.

He said to the lover: “Oh you, for whom the name of your love has departed,
A real lover utters words about his beloved.

Which people then, oh lover, are you talking about,
What pearl of a description about vile people is being pierced?

The lover said to him: “Oh you who are far from the signs of true lovers,
You are incapable of understanding the language of true lovers.

By way of the sun and the moon, the real intention was my beloved,
This secret is evident to those knowledgeable of fine points.

When I spoke of the rose, my intention was the delicateness of her face,
The hyacinth went mentioned, and my intention was her hair.

What is the cypress? Her graceful stature,
Me, I am grass that springs from the dust of her feet.

If you become well-acquainted with my language,
You will hear nothing from me except talk of my love for her/him.
Salāmān’s beauty reaches perfection and Absāl’s love for him manifests itself, as she devises stratagems to seduce him.

When the stuff of Salāmān’s beauty
Gathered, by way of maturity, the utmost level of perfection,
The cyprus of his elegance took on a certain freshness,
The garden of his graciousness took on another brilliance.

At first, he was an unripe fruit,
But when that fruit became completely ripened,

Absāl’s mind wished to pluck it,
And, immediately after the plucking, desired to taste it.

But that fruit was atop a lofty branch,
The lasso of that desire was too short.

Absāl was also a beautiful person, full of coquetry,
Lacking nothing in the stuff of her beauty, not a single thing.

She made ready to unveil her loveliness for Salāmān,
She commenced with the craft of prancing horse-like.

At times, by means of coiled locks before her face,
She would weave a chain of moist musk,

So that with that chain, admired even by a sage,
She might bind tightly the bottom of the heart of the prince.

At times she would divide her musky hair,
To make a part she would curl it into two forelocks—

As if to say: “How is it that my heart’s desire for him is not attained, For how long will he make me twist them in this fashion?”

At times she applied, like heart-illuminating idols,
Dust of indigo leaves onto the bow of her eyebrows.

So that she would, by dint of those rust-colored bows,
Chase his soul away from surety and tranquility.

She would make her eye black with coal,
In order to make him, by means of her black deeds, veer from the Path.

She would beautify the rose petals of her cheeks with rouge,
By means of that make-up, she would rob his heart of patience.

She would plant a musky grain beauty mark onto her cheeks,
By means of it, she would trap the bird of his heart.

At times she would loosen the bonds of her narrow sugar-lips,
And other times, break the seal on the casket of her pearl teeth.

By means of that, she would become sweet, like sugar, to his heart,
And he would gather pearls from the lip of her elocution.
At times she would display a golden ball from beneath the collar of her garment,
Under it was a waist, ringed with encrusted jewels.
So that, despite all his kingly glory, she would draw His neck beneath the collar of servitude.
At times she would engage her silver hand in a task, And with that excuse, she would roll up her sleeve,
By means of that, he would behold her henna-embellished forearm, And thus paint his cheeks with blood.
At times she would rise up for the sake of serving him, And forcefully step up from her place.

By means of that, his crown-worthy forehead would be trampled By the jangle of her ankle bracelet.
In short, by way of a hundred ruses and stratagems, She would, at every opportunity, unveil herself to his eyes.
Morning and night she would keep his face fixated on her, Not allowing him to neglect her, even for a moment.
For she knew that by way of gazing, Love leaves an impression on the heart of the lover.
Only through the sight of heart-wrenching beauties, Does love become firmly-rooted in hearts.

The tale of Zulaikha who put pictures of her beauty everywhere in the house so that everyplace he looked Joseph would see her face and be inclined toward her.

Behold Zuleikha who, with heart full of hope, Built a palace, white, like the heart of a Sufi.
No painting, nay, not a single color was in it, Like the face of a mirror, nary a spot of rust was in it.
Then she summoned a skilled painter, In order to hang her portrait in every place.
No place remained empty of her portrait, She sat contended and summoned Joseph.
She removed the veil from her gorgeous face, And engaged in telling a tale about her desire.

10 “Yūsuf” in some mss.
11 Naqshbandī.
When Joseph turned his head away in order to avoid the conversation, he saw her visage in every direction he turned. Because he saw her image, one after another, a yearning to join her came to him. He was on the brink of giving into his wish, of planting the sugar of his desire on her mouth. But from the unseen world, a proof manifested itself to him, and divine protection intervened quickly for him. It kept his hand from attaining its desire, and with that his need to accomplish his desires passed.

*The effect of Absāl’s stratagems on Salāmān and his inclination toward her.*

Despite all Salāmān’s forbearance and dignity, Absāl’s coquetry worked its way into him. The thorn of her eyelashes pricked its way into his heart, and like a snake, the lasso of her tress bit him. His endurance buckled under the vaulted arch of her eyebrows, on account of her lips, honey became bitter to his taste. Her magic narcissus-eyes cut into his sleep, and like a snake, the lasso of her tress bit him. On account of her cheeks, his tears became rose-colored, on account of the memory of her mouth, his enjoyment of life narrowed.

He looked at the black mole on her cheek, his condition, on account of that dark impression, turned ruinous. He saw restless ringlets on her cheek, He grew restless on account of the need to unite with her. He brought his longing out from behind its veil, but inwardly, his thoughts were still good: “God forbid that I should taste the meal of [sexual] union! Its flavor will become unwholesome to my soul. That taste will not stay with me, and for an entire lifetime I will remain far from my lofty rank and majesty.”

The man for whom good fortune is not everlasting is not, according to the sages, an altar of hope.

*The tale of the crow on the shore of the salty sea, to whom the pelican offered fresh water, but who did not find it acceptable.*

There was a crow, day-blind just like an owl, that had taken a place on the shore of the salty sea.
His watering place was in that salty sea,
But to him that salty water tasted like sugar.

By divine decree a bird, its name: “pelican,”
And its crop, the wellspring of His bounty,
Cast the shadow of good fortune the crow’s forehead,
The brackishness of the sea was not pleasing to him.

The pelican said: “Oh you, who lament that which is bitter, come here,
For I will give you sweet water from my crop!”

The crow answered: “I am afraid that when I drink fresh water,
The taste of salty water will be unpleasing to me.
Were I to subsist with sweet water,
My nature would be averse to the watering place of the salty sea.

Seated on the seashore, day and night,
I would remain in the middle of both, thirsty-lipped.

It is better that I make salty water my companion,
So that I am not confronted with the agony of being waterless.”

In solitude, Absāl goes before Salāmān and they discover enjoyment from each other’s company.

When Salāmān became Absāl’s desire,
Absāl’s “star” was in the ascendant.

That ancient affection found newness,
Her hope of joining him grew in strength,
To the extent that night and day she sought an opportunity
To find a way to be alone with that moon,
To satisfy her heart’s desire for his rubies,
And join her soul with his sweet lips.

Then one night she discovered the way to be alone with him,
Coin of the soul in hand, she hurried toward him.

Like a shadow, she fell at his feet,
And out of humility, placed her face atop his feet and kissed them.

Shah Salāmān, with hundreds of endearments and niceties,
Extended the hand of mercy to her,
Holding her, like a qabā shirt, tightly to his bosom,
He drank his soul’s desire from the fountain of life.

For both of them it started with a kiss,
Since kissing would be the guide to embracing.
So completely were they rubbing lip to lip together, 
That the cup of rapture overflowed for the both of them.

645 Though their lips rubbed together again and again, 
That which is at the heart of the business of lovemaking, remained undone. 
Then, on account of the madness of the heart, which now boiled their heads, 
They removed the veil of modesty from their midst. 
The only knot that divided them was loosened, 
The desire that existed between them, to unite, became stronger. 
One had sugar, the other one milk, 
Milk and sugar mingled together. 
The palate of their souls was brimming with milk and sugar, 
Until, that is, the sweetness of the sleep of dawn was upon them.

Salāmān awakes from the night's sleep and summons Absāl to the assembly of joy.

650 In the morning, those musky beauties, 
Covered themselves, for the sake of impurities caused by sleep, with pure gold, 
Drawing back their collyrium-pins to the verdigris arches of their eyelids, 
And applying the collyrium of wakefulness onto their eyes. 
The prince rose from his bed, gratified, 
Eyes still half-asleep from the wakefulness of the night before. 
The previous night's hangover itched inside him, 
Agitating within him the desire for a taste of his nocturnal friend. 
His mind, in order to dispel that hangover, 
Desired a sip of the dregs, but a sip from the ruby lips of the friend. 
Without the interference of others, he called out for the friend, 
She sat beside him atop the throne. 
He unwrapped the veil of modesty from her beauty 
And renewed with her the previous night's pleasure. 
Another day passed in a similar manner, 
The evil eye of fate was far from them. 
A day became a week, a week became a month, and a month became a year, 
A year and a month passed, free of any pain or boredom. 
His himmat was that that pleasure and rapture 
Should not be separated from each other, either day or night.
But the revolving wheel of fate, lying in ambush, declared:
“It is not my habit to allow matters to pass in such a fashion.
For I have excited so many companionships each day,
And when night came, I snapped those threads.
Alas, I have given so many good fortunes each night,
And at daybreak its turn came to an end.”

*The tale of the Bedouin Arab who praised the caliph’s table and said:
“Henceforth I shall always come here,” and the caliph’s response: “Perhaps you will not be allowed.” To which the Arab said: “If you do that, the shortcoming will be yours, not mine.”*

A certain Bedouin Arab headed to Baghdad,
In the hope that he would find some benefit there.
After several days patiently looking for admittance,
He gained entrance to the Caliph’s table.

Set down before him, bereft of any deficiency,
Was a platter of *pālūda*, made of rose-flavored syrup,
Smooth and sweet like the poetic speech of the People of the Heart,
Delicate and elegant like the lips of every heart-ravisher,
Safe from the torments of the foul-mouthed—
The moment it drops onto the lip, it makes a place in the stomach.
When, having cleansed his mouth by consuming it,
He said to the Caliph, without a shred of fear or timidity:
“Oh you, for whom the cradle was on the summit of the celestial spheres,
I have now made a covenant with my God,
So long as I am under the firmament of this place of hospitality,
For the sake of breakfast, or in hope of dinner,
I will not set my foot except in the direction of your table,
So that I may satisfy my need of this *pālūda*."

The Caliph laughed at such talk, and said:
“Oh you, for whom the hidden secrets are veiled,
You might not even get another opportunity to be here,
Do not trouble yourself with coming and going.”

The Bedouin said: “When that time comes, the loss will be yours—
Oh you *qibla* of safety and security—not mine.

For I shall, through my own strength, make a meal myself,
What then is my sin, if you do not even allow me in?”
The Sage and the King learn of the state of Salāmān and Absāl. Salāmān is called to account and things become difficult for him.

When Salāmān became Absāl's intimate,
His union with her consumed a year and a month.

He stopped being in service to the King and Sage,
Both of their hearts were split in two on account of him having deserted them.

When they sought reports of his situation,
His confidants made them aware of the secret.

They summoned him in order to question him,
They recounted stories for him from every respect.

The spoke of subtle points, old and new,
Until, from all the questioning, the talk met its desired goal.

It was certain that the tale spoken about him was true,
Since the story was told without embellishments or understatements.

Each one rendered an opinion on his case,
Each one took great pains in order to save him.

In the end, it was agreed upon to give him good counsel,
Since no deed is better than dispensing good counsel.

Through good counsel, deficient people become perfect,
And through good counsel, those who retreat become hard-chargers.

Through good counsel, every heart is enlivened,
Through good counsel, every predicament is solved.

In the beginning, the givers of good counsel were Prophets,
Because of them, matters of reason and religion were made right.

He who drew the breath of prophecy, for him,
Nothing descends from heaven except good counsel.

The King's good counsel to Salāmān.

The King said to him: “Oh you, who are the soul of your father,
You, who are the feast-illuminating candle of your father's palace,
On account of you, the eye of my prosperity is illuminated,
On account of you, the courtyard of my hopes is a rose garden.

For years my heart bled, like a rosebud,
Until I held in my hand a rose like you.

Do not, as the rose does, draw your hem away from my hand,
Do not draw the dagger of the thorn of cruelty on me!

It is on account of my affection for you that the crown rubs my forehead,
And it is for your sake that my throne is beneath my feet.
Do not turn your face toward foolish beloveds,
Do not remove the diadem of good fortune from your head,
Do not set the hand of your heart upon a delicate beauty,
Do not kick the throne of kingly majesty with your foot.

695 What is your job? To play polo,
To gallop into the arena, Rakhsh under your thighs,
Not to take a tress into the hand, as if it were a mallet,
Not to repose astride the silver-breasted ones.

Were you to always shoot an arrow into the hunting-ground,
You would fell a fawn once, a wild beast another time.

It is better that I not see you, like wild game,
Become the target of these gazelle-like lion-tamers.

Go into the rows of heroes, sword-striking,
And be the one who severs necks from the bodies of great heroes.

700 It is better that you gird yourself among men worthy of the title 'real man'
Than to lay your neck before the sword of womanhood!

For God’s sake abandon this behavior,
Otherwise, I shall collapse on account of my pain!

It has been years that, for your sake, I have not sat down and rested my feet,
Shame on you if you now knock me off my feet!”

A cautionary tale about the murder of Khusrau by Shīrūya and the misfortune that brought.

As Khusrau slept, drowning in blood on account of Shīrūya,
He uttered a subtle point with regard to Shīrūya.

Know, that a branch which was watered from its root,
Withdrew its head from the water and made a break for its root.

705 When it uprooted its trunk, and became a empty plain,
The branch fell to the ground, withered and fruitless.

Salāmān’s response to the King.

When Salāmān listened to the good counsel,
The sea of his nature effervesced with pearls of good speech.

He said: “Oh Shāh, I am a slave to your judgment,
I am the dust beneath your throne-scrapping foot.

Whatever you command, I accept, heart and soul,
But I am wearied by my own impatience.

Because of my long-suffering heart,
My fate will not wait for your commandments.
Many times I have deliberated with myself,
Twisted in thoughts of liberating myself from this calamity.

But when the thought of that moon comes to me,
My heart starts to lament and sigh,

And if my eyes fall upon her face,
I turn my face away from the two worlds and towards her.

After seeing the cheeks of that heart-pleaser,
No good counsel remains in my memory, no wise advice."

*The story of the fox and the fox-cub.*

The mother of the fox-cub said to him,
As she guided him to the fruit orchard:

“Eat as much fruit as will allow you to run
And quickly escape from the dog’s malice.”

The cub said: “Oh mother, if I see fruit,
How can I carry out this plan?

My greed for fruit will be like a veil, blanketing my awareness,
And I will be neglectful of the danger of the dog’s bite."

*The Sage’s counsel to Salāmān.*

When the King fell silent after giving advice to Salāmān,
The Sage then, with much determination, engaged him in good counsel.

He said: “Oh you, who are the sprout of the primordial garden,
The most recent image from the pen of ‘Be!’

Letter-reader of the ledger book of the seven [heavens] and the four [elements],
Decipherer of the pages of night and day,
It is you who are the keeper of the treasure of Adam,
It is you who are the comprehensive book of the cosmos;

Realize your worth and do not count yourself foolishly,
For you are superior to whatever I speak of!

He whose almighty hand mixed your clay,
And who transcribed the word ‘wisdom’\(^{12}\) onto your pure heart,

For His sake, purify your breast of the image of external forms,
And turn that mirror toward Reality,

---

\(^{12}\text{ḥikmat}.$$
So that your breast may be the treasure of inner meanings,
Your mirror flooded with the light of gnosis!

Veil your eye from the face of the beautiful one,
After this, do not strive to keep company with the beautiful one.

What is a beauty? An outer form full of shame and imperfection,
Neither its hem nor its collar cleansed of lust.

Do not be seduced by such defilement,
And do not go beyond the sanctuary of salvation.

The sperm in your body is your substance-giving life,
It nourishes your limbs and strengthens your bodily foundations.

Oh you, who struggle with body and soul on account of lust,
Whether you wish to preserve it or spill it.
In the beginning, you were of lofty rank,
Your star was in the highest heaven.

But now the lust of your carnal soul has dropped you low,
It has fettered you tightly in the nadir of the Earth.

*The tale of the rooster and the crier who calls the faithful to prayer.*

At the time of prayer, the crier said
To the rooster, that high-headed crown-holder:

“No sage knows time like you do,
Or fears the passage of time like you do!

Oh you chanticleer, with this type of wisdom,
You must always make for yourself a place atop the divine Throne,

For how long have you grieved over a hen,
For how long have you circumambulated the bottom of every dung-heap?”

The rooster replied: “At first, there was a lofty rank for me,
But the lust of the carnal soul cast me down to this lowliness.

If I were able to pass by the carnal soul and its lust,
Why would I saunter into the pit of every dung-heap?
I would be admitted to the gardens of Paradise,
I would be a companion of the Celestial Cock.

*Salāmān’s response to the Sage.*

When Salāmān heard these things from the Sage,
The fragrance of wisdom wafted into his nose.

He said: “On account of you, Plato’s soul is contented,
May a hundred Aristotles submit to your every command!
From the beginning, the Intelligences were Ten,
You have made the Ten now Eleven.

I set my face upon your path,
I am the lowliest pupil in your court.

In whatever you said, I found the very essence of wisdom,
I hurried to accept that wisdom in my very soul.

But it is surely clear to your enlightened view
That free will is beyond me.

The power of the agent depends on the ability of the recipient,
Its agency is not the product of the producer.

Whatever it is that I have had a capacity for from the beginning,
How can I break from it in the end?

Nay, it is outside the power of the agent
To have an effect contrary to that."

The story of the old villager and his son.

A certain rustic was travelling with his son,
Both of their travel-packs loaded onto one little donkey.

Their feet were sore from all the hardships of the path,
On top of that, a mountain now appeared in front of them,

A mountain so majestic, on account of its lofty stature,
That a sea billowed beneath its peak.

Along the mountaintop, there was a path so narrow,
That the foot of imagination grew lame traversing it.

No one was able to pass through that place,
Except he who, like a snake, made feet out of his belly.

Whatever fell from that narrow path,
Its final place of repose was the bottom of the sea.

Suddenly, the little donkey slipped at that very place,
The boy, who was behind it, cried out: “Oh God!

My donkey strayed from the path—do not forsake him,
Wherever he may be, keep him safe!”

To which the old man said: “Oh son, quit your crying,
Since the power of choice slipped out of his hand as well!

If you want the right opinion, get up straight away—
Since it is a sin to believe that there is choice in this world.”
How things became difficult for Salāmān on account of the numerous reproaches of the King and the Sage, and how Salāmān escaped with Absāl.

Whenever a soul, on account of love, is entangled,
It is a trial within a trial, and pain upon pain,

Especially a love that is accompanied by the reproaches
And talk of those who give plenty of good counsel.

On account of reproach, the business of love becomes hard,
And through the one who reproaches, the attention of love increases.

Love nourishes the soul, without reproach,
When reproach becomes its friend, it is painful.

When Salāmān heard those reproaches,
His sweet soul, out of sheer pain, reached his lips.

They did not uproot the affection of Absāl from within him,
Rather, they infused bitterness into his heart.

The pleasurable drink of union became bitter to him,
The new moon of his joy waned.

Not a single breath arose from within him,
Rather, a wail of reproach fell upon him.

His soul was wounded from the arrow of reproach,
The grief that was in his heart increased.

Through reproach the soul of a man wastes away—
For how long can a man possibly endure it?

It is possible to absorb a single blow from a sharp sword,
But when it becomes continuous, what choice is there but to escape?

For days he immersed himself in deep reflection,
Many times he contemplated his situation.

After a thousand thoughts about how to solve the problem,
He ultimately found solace in the decision to flee.

He severed his mind from its homeland,
And, in order depart, fashioned a camel litter.

When night came, he bound his soul to the litter,
And nestled close to Absāl inside the litter—

Salāmān, the beautiful, and Absāl, who was beautiful too,
The litter, with both of them, was like an almond with two kernels.

When the time to leave had come, their heads rested on the other's shoulder,
When the time to sleep came, they slumbered in each other's embrace.
Both of them were closely joined, side-by-side,  
As they went, the litter grew tight—but not their heart.

When the Friend is within your embrace, and strangers are gone,  
However tighter the dwelling becomes, the better it is.

Indeed, wherever it might be that the Friend dwells,  
How can it be tight for the heartsick lover?

_The tale of how Zulaikhā’s narrow prison became broad on account of seeing Joseph, peace be upon him._

When Joseph of Canaan sat in prison,  
Zulaikhā, on account of their separation, was broken in spirit.

780 Her entire house became narrow to her, like [Joseph’s] prison,  
Each night she set her mind toward the prison.

A certain person, exempt of the brand of love,  
Someone who never tasted fruit from the orchard of love, said to her:

“For how long will you, in this delightful palace-garden,  
Sit like a sinner in jail?”

She answered: “Being far from the beauty of the Friend,  
The distance of the horizon is like an ant’s eye for me,

And were I to sit with him in the eye of an ant,  
That would be more pleasing to me than a hundred palace-gardens.”

_How Salāmān and Absāl set out to sea and reached the island of delight,  
where they reposed and dwelled_

785 Because Salāmān drove the litter for a week,  
The admonishers now had no hold on him.

Secure from reproach and free of admonition,  
He cast his burdens on the shore of a sea.

He saw a sea as unbounded as the firmament,  
The eyes of its sea-creatures as abundant as the stars.

Its circumference stretched from Qāf to Qāf,  
Its depth reached the back of the Bull and Fish.

Waves, mountain-like in appearance, out of agitation,  
Turned the surface of the water into a chain of mountains.

790 It was as if Bactrian camels, on every side,  
Foamed at the lip in a fit of anger.

In it there were innumerable fish,  
Glittering, like a gem that has been faceted by a sword.
Indeed, to the eye which perceives minutia,
It looked like the Cathay embroidery on Chinese brocade.

Everywhere they went, they clove apart the surface of the water into
two halves,
In the same fashion that silver scissors slice indigo cloth.

If the Leviathan of the sea emerged from these depths,
Draco would be terrified of these heights.

795  When Salāmān gazed upon the sea,
He made preparations to cross it.

He found a skiff, shaped like a new moon,
Going swiftly along the shore of the green sea.

In a state of tranquility, both went inside it,
The crescent moon became a mansion for the moon and sun.

It flowed with sails made of wings,
Pressing its breast against the water, like a duck.

With its breast, it split apart a path for itself,
And with its breast, it hurried in the direction of its destination.

800  It was shaped like a bow, but it moved more swiftly than an arrow
Dropped in a catchment basin.

After they had sailed the skiff for a month,
And had lost their beauty, on account of the sea breeze,

There appeared a wooded island in the midst of the sea,
The description of which would surpass the imagination of anyone.

There was no bird (Sufi), in the entire world,
Who was not in that felicitous pleasure-place.

On one side they paraded, troop by troop,
Crowned like a partridge and ringed like a turtledove.

805  On another side they trilled, rank by rank,
Making their beaks melodious reed-flutes.

Inside it, stood saplings, branch upon branch,
Wherein the impudent birds engaged in song.

Fruit was strewn at the foot of the trees,
Dry and fresh, they all mingled together.

A spring of water beneath each tree
Turned sun and shade into slices and slivers.

On account of the wind, each branch was a tremulous hand,
Its fist was full of dinars for the sake of scattering.
Because its fist was not well-grasping,
They poured through the gaps of its fingers.

You could say, like the Garden of Iram, the concealed face
Had the rosebud of its manifestation bloom there.

Or that the Garden of Eden, without a Day of Reckoning,
Stripped the veil from its face there.

When Salāmān saw the graciousness of the woods,
He cut short any thought of going further.

With a heart free of every hope and fear,
He became a denizen of the forest with Absāl.

Both of them were as contented as body and soul together,
Both of them were as delighted as rose and lily together.

Their companionship was far from the clutches of others,
Their tranquility was far from the meddling of concerns.

There was no reproach-monger to war with them,
No two-faced hypocrite for them to fear.

A rose was in the bosom—not a pricking thorn,
A treasure was near—not the bite of a snake.

All the while, they slept in a place abounding with birds,
Drinking, at every moment, water from a flowing spring.

At times, they would speak with the nightingale,
At other times, they ate sugar with the parrot.

At times, they paraded about with the peacock,
At other times, they walked elegantly with the partridge.

In short, the heart was full of merriment and delight,
As both of them spent days and nights there.

Indeed, what is better than for you and the Beloved,
To be in each other’s midst, and fault-finders off to the side?

There is nothing in your breast other than the goal [of creation],
There is no denying that your goal exists.

_The tale of Vāmiq’s explanation to the one who asked: “What is the goal of all your searching and seeking?”_

A certain perspicacious observer said, in private, to Vāmiq:
“Oh you, who are melting on account of the branding-iron of love for ‘Azrā!

You have spent a lifetime searching to and fro—
Tell me, what is your goal from all this seeking?”
He said: “My intention is that together with ‘Azrā,
I will set my face upon the desert,
Make a home in the wilderness,
And pitch my tent at the head of a spring,
Friends, as well as enemies, would be far from that place,
My soul, as well as my body, would be at ease from God’s people.

Were I to venture two hundred farsangs or more in any direction,
I would not encounter a single person, not anyone.
My limbs, hair by hair, would turn into eyes,
My ‘Azrā, would be the qibla to which I turn,
In order to face her with a thousand eyes,
So that I might gaze forever upon her face—
No, on the contrary, I will stray from gazing as well,
And be liberated from duality, I will become her.”
So long as duality lingers, there is distance,
For the soul is the prisoner of the brand of exile.

When the lover sets foot upon the laneway of union,
Nothing will be contained there, except oneness, peace!

The King’s becoming aware of Salāmān’s departure, but not having any news of Salāmān’s whereabouts, and how the King employed his world-displaying mirror to find out.

When, after some time, the King became aware
Of that soul-melting, life-diminishing separation,
His cries of lamentation reached the skies,
And he began to drip bloody tears from both eyes.
He said they should go again and search everywhere for news,
Since no one was aware of that hidden secret.
The King possessed a world-displaying mirror,
Rending the veil of all the secrets of the world.

Like the heart of the Gnostic, nothing was concealed from it,
Not a single situation, good or bad, in the entire world.
He said: “Bring that mirror to me,”
So that he could see the face of the person for whom he was searching.
When his gaze fell upon the mirror,
He got news of his lost ones.
He saw both of them pleasing each other in the woods,
He saw both of them unconcerned with the passing of the days.
Together, they were far from any thoughts about this world,  
And together, they were fleeing from the people of this world.

Each one of them contented with the face of the other,  
Neither of them caring for anyone else.

When the King saw their intercourse,  
He was overcome with sympathy for them.

Without making any heart-stabbing reproach,  
He came to know everything about how they lived.

He did not ignore a single hair-tip,  
He kept it all arranged from where he was.

Oh blessed is he whose heart is illuminated by pure thought,  
Who brings to bear the conditions of true manliness.

Everywhere he looks, there are two companions together,  
Quaffing together the cup of joy and pain,

Whose souls are purified of the rust of separation,  
And whose cups are secure from the stone of separation.

He shows sympathy to them in their good fortune,  
And assists them in their propitious fate,

Far from breaking-off their union,  
He throws a lasso around their joined souls.

Whatever befalls the people afflicted by misfortune,  
Comes all of a sudden and by way of recompense.

Do good, so that good begets good for you,  
Do not do evil, lest it wear you down.

The tale of Parvīz getting his just dessert for what he did to Farhād at the hands of Shīrūya.

The mountain-piercer, who made a partnership with Parvīz,  
Turned his face toward Shīrīn, that maker of tumult.

Shīrīn saw his heart inclining in her direction,  
She also yearned after him for the reason you know.

The jealousy of love lit a blazing fire,  
And engulfed the harvest of Khusrau’s restraint.

Without delay, he devised a stratagem so that the Old Hag of Fate Poured poison into Farhād’s goblet.

That hapless person, his soul full of love, departed,  
Only Parviz remained with Shīrīn, and nothing else.

The revenge-bearing wheel of fate, though, applied the same rule,  
And placed the sword of vengeance in the palm of Shīrūya,
So that, with one smite of the sword, Parviz was separated from Shīrīn, Casting him far away from the throne of his life.

*How the King become melancholy, on account of the continued infatuation of Salāmān with the company of Absāl, and how, by means of his himmat, he was able to prevent Salāmān from further enjoying her.*

The King of Greece saw how Salāmān Was comfortable in his union with Absāl.

Lifetimes passed, and he did not refrain from this erring, Nor did he turn the face of the heart away from his error.

His head remained empty of the crown of kingship, He instead turned, high-headed, to her crown.

His fortune cast the royal throne beneath his feet, So that it was the throne that kissed his foot.

Then, on account of his despair over this, a fire ignited within the King, Time passed unhappily for him on account of this unhappiness.

So he applied the power of *himmatt* on Salāmān, Until he completely separated him from Absāl.

Every moment he hurried toward her, But he was unable to enjoy her.

He could see her face and his heart would throb, But he was unable to unite with her.

On account of this deception, he fell onto a rough path, The donkey died, and its burden fell to the ground.

What despair is worse for the bankrupt man Than having treasure at his side but his coin-purse empty of *dirhams*?

What punishment is more severe for the thirsty Than having a fountain before his eyes but his lips deprived of the water?

What trial is worse for the inhabitants of hell Than having their soul in the fire but Paradise in their sights?

When this torment lingered long inside Salāmān, The door of ease slammed in front of his face.

It then became evident to him that it was all on account of his father, And that only he could extricate him from that whirlpool.

Fearful, he turned his face to his father, Repenting, begging pardon, and seeking forgiveness.

Indeed, that bird, which is of excellent fortune, Will, in the end, bring its earthly prey back to its origin.
The tale of the dialogue of the Sage, who was asked: “Who is a legitimate son, and what is the mark of his legitimacy?”

An apprentice once asked a sage:
“Oh you skilled person, who is the legitimate son?”

He said: “That child who, in the end, is similar to his father, Whether he be wise or foolish.
If, for several days, he does not resemble his father, In the end, he will bring himself back to his father;
If not, his situation is in this respect, clear— Wash your hands of such a person, for he is a bastard.
That dry hay, which has sprouted from green wheat, Will adorn itself with wheat.
Though, in the beginning, it resembles wheat, When harvest season comes to the field,

Its grain will reveal that it is not wheat, The qualities and name ‘wheat-ness’ are far from it.”

The arrival of Salāmān before the King and the demonstration of the King’s compassion for him.

When the father saw the face of Salāmān, And delivered him from his life-diminishing separation,
He laid kisses of mercy upon his head, And gently placed the hand of affection upon his shoulder.
Saying: “Oh you, whose existence is salt for the table of beneficence, Your beauty is the pupil of the eye of humanity,
A sapling in spring for the garden of the soul, To the heavens, you are another sun,

A newly-sprung rose for the garden of good fortune, An unwaning moon for the zodiac of kingship.
The broad plain of the horizon is your parade ground, The would-be obstinate ones all have their faces toward your royal court.
Head to toe, you are well-suited to the royal crown and throne, Without you, crown and throne lack currency.
Do not countenance the crown being atop the head of the lowly, And the throne being beneath the feet of the unworthy.
Kingship is your private property, seize your kingship, Do not pull kingship out of your lineage.

Remove your hand from the beautiful person you possess, Kingship and worshipping the beautiful person do not go together.
Remove, from your hand, the henna of the beautiful person,
You must either be a king or a worshipper of beautiful people.

*Explanation of the four characteristics that are prerequisites for the sultanate.*

The conditions of kingship are of four things:
Wisdom, chastity, courage, and generosity.

Wisdom is not that which, following the abject carnal soul,
Turns the noble man into the plaything of a woman's orders.

It is not on account of chastity that the conscientious man
Defiles himself for an unworthy lover.

It does not belong to courage that he is rendered a captive,
Dragged by a whore outside the collar of manliness.

It is not a mark of generosity that he is not able to pass
Around his circle nothing except meanness.

Whoever is not a friend of these four conditions,
Is not entitled to the fruit of the bride of kingship,

For the one who happens to be deficient in all four,
How will the King give him a place in his heart?

I have finished with this talk of wisdom,
I spoke on that which is necessary, peace!

*Salāmān, becoming heart-sick his father’s reproaches, turns his fate in
the direction of the desert, kindles a fire, and together with Absāl, enters the
inferno. Absāl is burned and Salāmān remains intact.*

Who, in the world, is more afflicted than the lover?
There is no undertaking more difficult than this job.

Never does the pain caused by the friend leave his heart,
Nor is the desire of his heart ever fulfilled.

The pay-off of his affliction, day and night,
Is the criticism of those who wish him ill and the good counsel of the
well-wisher.

When Salāmān heard this good counsel,
He rent the garment of ease from his body.

The thought of living vexed him,
And he became bent on annihilation.

When a life is deserving of death,
Dying is better than living.

He headed with Absāl into the wilderness,
And set his foot onto the plain of self-sacrifice.
He cut heaps of kindling sticks from every place,  
He gathered them together in one spot.  

With that kindling, he assembled a lofty mountain,  
He set fire to heap and mountain.  

Both of them rejoiced at the sight of the fire,  
Having taken each other’s hand, they then went into the fire.  

The King secretly knew about the situation,  
His himmat was set on killing Absāl.  

He committed his himmat to his own will,  
He burned her and left him.  

That one was alloyed gold—this one was pure gold,  
Pure gold remained intact—alloy became dross.  

When dross falls into a fire,  
If a split is going to occur, it will happen to the dross.  

The power of real, that is, spiritual men, comes from God,  
It does not come from men of this world, that is, exiles from the spiritual world.  

The person who is the possessor of himmat knows this,  
Only he who is without himmat would deny this.  

The tale of the hypocrite and the sincere believer and how the hypocrite rolled the cloak of the sincere believer inside his own and cast both into a blazing furnace, whereupon the cloak of the hypocrite burned up and the cloak of the believer remained intact.  

There was a furnace of fire in front of a certain sincere believer,  
He was hot as the fire on account of his labors.  

With him was a hypocrite, skilled at being two-faced in matters of religion,  
Who engaged him in a battle, one that would confirm the truth of the religion.  

The hypocrite said to the sincere believer: “Come on,  
If you have some proof, produce it!”  

First he asked for the cloak of the hypocrite,  
Wrapping it tightly inside his own cloak;  

Then he placed them inside the blazing furnace,  
Fire immediately engulfed the cloak of the enemy of religion,  

The cloak of the religious man remained untouched,  
Whereupon he said: “Behold the quality of the divine light of faith!  

For, the one inside burned like woodchips,  
But the one outside remained completely intact.”
Salāmān’s being left alone after the death of Absāl and his lamentation on account of being separated from her.

The struggle of day and night is,
For the hapless lover, a strange condition.

Whatever arrows of affliction strike him,
Come incessantly from the bow of the wheel of fate.

No sooner has an arrow-head slit his throat,
That another one follows behind it.

If the friend should raise his hand on account of oppression,
Destruction will come to him from the stone of the Guardian.

And if the stone of the Guardian misses his head,
He will get what is due to him by way of the reproaches of the accusers.

And should he escape from these,
The viceroy of exile will shed his blood on a sword, with a hundred pains and sighs.

When Salāmān kindled the mountain of fire,
And burned Absāl in it, like dross,

His partner was gone and he remained alone,
Like a body without a soul, he was isolated from her.

He sent soul-burning lamentations unto the skies,
And drew the hem of his eyelashes with the blood of his heart.

The smoke of his sighs pitched its tent in the heavens,
Morning rent its collar on account of his anguish.

He was so completely involved in tearing at his breast, out of pain,
That his breast became all claws, like the talons of a falcon.

So thoroughly did he go at himself with his nails, out of grief,
That no single fingertip remained intact.

He would strike stones upon his heart, and without any doubt,
That was the touchstone for the coin of his faithfulness.

When, from those stones, dust settled on his heart,
Its coin came out completely assayed.

When he sat down from all this, empty handed,
He would dig into the back of his hands with his teeth in despair.

When he did not see the fist of the friend within his grasp,
He would wound his own five fingers with his teeth.

When he saw his fist empty of that jewel,
He would tear apart his fingertips with his teeth.
When he did not see those sugar lips beside him,
He gnawed at his fingers as though they were sugarcane.

Absent her, with whom he sat day-and-night,
He made his knee blue by beating it.

Each night he would face the corner of the house,
And tell fairytales to the image of his friend,

Saying: “Oh you who burned my soul by deserting me,
Who, through your beauty, stitched my eyes shut.

For ages you were my soulmate,
The one who bestowed light on the eye of sacrifice.

My house was in the laneway of union with you,
My eye was constantly focused on the candle of your beauty.

Both of us were contented with the sight of the other,
On account of our union with each other, we fulfilled a hundred wishes.

Both of us were with one another, and there was nothing more,
No one mattered to us, and we did not matter to anyone.

The hand of the injustice of heaven was short,
Affairs were in accordance with the desire of our heart.

At night we always slept in each other's embrace,
By day our heads were in each other's ears, whispering secrets.

No one passed in between us,
Nor was anyone aware of our state.

Oh if only it were so that when I kindled the fire,
You had been spared, and that it was I who was burned.

But it was you who were consumed, while I remained. What was this?
What was this injustice of fate that befell lowly me?

Oh if only I were still with you,
I would have traveled the path of non-existence with you.

I would have escaped from my miserable existence,
I would have attained eternal bliss.”

_The tale of the Bedouin Arab who lost his camel and said: “If only I too had been lost with my camel, so that whoever found him would also find me.”_

A certain Bedouin, one eye drunk with sleep,
Fell from his camel as it quickened its stride.

When the camel, now unencumbered, saw a friend,
It began a pleasant pace.
At daybreak, when the Bedouin awoke,
He could not at all find his camel.

He said, with despair: “My camel is lost, now
My mind is full of her image.

Oh if only I too would have been lost with her,
This cruelty would not have fallen on my head.

Wherever she went missing, I would have gone with her,
Side-by-side, so that I might escape this distance,
And so that whoever would find that lost one,
Would find her in the same place as poor, lost me.

The King’s hearing about the state of Salāmān, his inability to order the affairs
of Salāmān, and his referring the resolution of the matter to the Sage.

When Salāmān lingered, in this manner, without Absāl,
His state, day and night, was thus.

The King’s confidants related the matter to him,
His soul melted, on account of pain.

With Absāl, he had more than a hundred concerns,
Without her, anguish confronted him like a mountain.

With and without her he was aggrieved,
The anguish did not leave his mind.

Verily, the cupola of the firmament is a house of pain,
To exist in it without pain is a lie, like a fairy tale.

In the primordial age, when the clay of Adam was kneaded,
The garment of outer form was stitched to his stature.

For forty mornings, the cloud of trial
Poured down onto him, head to toe.

One day, at nightfall, when the forty days had passed,
The rain of rapture showered onto his head.

As a consequence, no person has ever found freedom from anguish,
Nor have they discovered any contentment, except after forty days of
despair.

Since the shower of rapture is what seals the ordeal,
The matter is ultimately settled through happiness.

But the wise one knows that,
This place of ease is in the other abode.

When the King witnessed Salāmān mourning,
A hundred stabs of pain and grief struck his heart.
Nothing was able to remedy that affair;  
The vein of his soul, twisting and coiling, withered.

He therefore consulted the opinion of the learned Sage,  
Saying: “Oh you qibla of the world’s hopes and fears,

Whenever a desperate person is in trouble,  
A solution to that trouble is found through the thought of an illuminated heart.

In today’s world, you are that illuminated heart,  
You are the loosener of the lock of every problem.

Absāl burned, and Salāmān, through his pain,  
Has dedicated his time to mourning for her.

I am unable to convey Absāl back again,  
And incapable of being Salāmān’s remedy-maker.

I have spoken, this dilemma of mine is now before you,  
Seek a remedy through your far-sighted intellect.

Show compassion, since I am thoroughly weary,  
I am constrained in the palm of a hundred strangulations.”

The learned Sage gave him an answer:  
“Oh you whose judgment has not wavered from the path of rectitude.

If Salāmān does not break his oath with me,  
And comes inside the collar of my command,

I shall soon bring Absāl back to him;  
I will effect the unveiling of this state for him.

In several days I will fashion a remedy for his condition;  
I will make Absāl his eternal companion.”

When Salāmān heard this from the Sage,  
His soul submitted to his command.

He took to sweeping the thorns and underbrush of his door,  
He accepted, with all his heart, everything the Sage said.

How wonderful it is to be dust at the door of the Perfect Man,  
To be a slave to the commands of he who is a master of the heart.

Listen to this subtle point, which a learned man has spoken,  
Threading a pearl, which is very beautiful:

“Be wise, do not quarrel or brawl,  
That, or escape under the shadow of a learned man.

The harm that besets temperament, on account of ignorance,  
Is cured through the learned man and wisdom.”
Salāmān's obedience to the Sage and the Sage’s ordering of his affairs.

When Salāmān submitted to the Sage,
He situated himself under the shadow of his care,
His resignation amazed the Sage,
Who applied magic in instructing him.
He poured the wine of good fortune into his cup,
He poured the honeycomb of wisdom onto his palate.

On account of the taste of that wine, his cup became rapturous,
On account of this honeycomb, his palate poured sugar.
Whenever Absāl appeared in his memory,
He started to bewail his separation from her.
When the Sage recognized that condition,
He fashioned the form of Absāl.
He held it in front of his eyes for one or two hours,
He sowed the seed of setting his mind at ease.
When his grief and distress found solace,
The image left for the frontier of non-existence.

When the himmat of the Gnostic becomes powerful enough,
The Gnostic creates whatever he wishes, undiminished.
If, however, himmat is aimless, even for one instant,
The existent form disappears from the Gnostic.
From time to time, as he perfected his speech,
He would interpose the description of Venus.
“Venus,” he said, “is the candle of the assembly of stars,
In front of her, the fairness of all of the stars vanishes.
When she shows her beauty,
She throws the sun and the moon into a frenzy.

There is no one sharper in song than her,
Or more able to arouse the cheers of the banquet of pleasure.
The ear of the firmament is brimming with the melody of her harp,
Rapt in perpetual movement, on account of her song."

When Salāmān heard these words,
He discovered a yearning for her within himself.

\[13\] samā’.
When these words were repeated several times,
He found that the yearning within him was great.

When the Sage perceived the significance of this for him,
He increased the effect of Venus on him,

Until she manifested her beauty completely,
And it made an impression on the heart and soul of Salāmān.

He effaced the image of Absāl from his mind,
And the imprint of the face of Venus was mended to it.

He saw everlasting beauty and flew from the transitory world,
He favored eternal rapture over the temporal.

*The King and the pillars of state swear allegiance to Salāmān, and hand the throne over to him.*

How excellent a thing is the crown of kingship,
How lofty a degree is the throne of the sultanate.

Not just any head is worthy of that fortunate thing,
Not every foot is suited to this rank.

Only a firmament-scraping foot is worthy of this dignity,
Only a divine, throne-rubbing head merits this rank.

Once Salāmān was delivered from the pain caused by Absāl,
He bound his heart to the beloved that augers well for royalty.

His hem was purified of all defilements,
His himmat faced the heavens.

The top of his head became worthy of the crown,
His foot was now suitable for the ascension\(^ {14}\) to the Throne of the celestial sphere.

The King of Greece called upon the princes,
Summoned the grandees and champions.

He prepared a feast, the likes of which
No king of kings in the course of world history had ever seen.

Every commander and every soldier,
From every clime, was present at the feast.

With that, all the commanders and armies,
Whoever was there, swore their allegiance to Salāmān.

---

\(^ {14}\) *miʿrāj*. 
All of them removed the thought of leadership from their hearts,
And lifted their heads into the collar of servitude to him.

The King settled the jeweled crown atop his head,
And placed the golden throne of kingship beneath his feet.

He placed the seven climes under his control,
The King taught him the custom of commanding an army.

He, at this very an assembly,
Composed for his sake, a final will and testament.

At the head of the audience, and thus not secretly,
He threaded a hundred pearls of diamond thoughts.

*The King’s final testament to Salāmān.*

“Oh my son, kingship of this world is not everlasting,
It is not the hoped for end of men mature in spirit.

Take religion-acquiring Reason as your guide,
Realize that today is the seed-field of tomorrow.

Before this seed-field comes to an end,
Sew the seed of everlasting good fortune.

Every task is possessed of the need for science,
Efforts always gain value through knowledge.

That which you know, keep proceeding according to it,
That which you do not know, ask learned men about it.

Whatever you get and give away,
Observe well how you get it, and how you give it.

Whatever you attain, take it in accordance with religion,
Not according to some irreligious regulator.

Whenever you acquire a motive in accordance with religion,
Dispense with that motive according to religion.

Do not empty the purse of the oppressed,
Do not thereby elevate the rank of the tyrant.

The former falls into want and festering poverty,
And the latter squanders it on debauchery and tyranny.

In the end, this conduct turns into your misery,
Your neck buckles under the burden of both.

Go, Do not turn away from the straight paths,
For this is the rule of the ancient kings.

The tyrant went to hell, you must not follow him,
Do not become, as he did, the kindling of hell.
Strive so that every error and every defect, 
On account of your justice, is exchanged for its opposite. 

Not so that justice, on account of you, acquires the color of oppression, 
And the wineglass of real justice is shattered with the stone of tyranny. 

You are a shepherd, and the subjects are like a flock of sheep, 
In your shepherding, keep far from trouble. 

In your shepherding, do not adopt other customs, 
And regard your own ability as superior to actual shepherds. 

You yourself be equitable, like those who follow the right religion, 
What is the principal concern of the shepherd for his flock? 

It is necessary that you have commanders within the flock 
So that the obedience of the flock to you is sincere, 

Like a sheep dog, their heads on a leash for you, 
But a dog to confront the wolves, not the sheep. 

It is a great and utter calamity for the flock, 
When the fierce dog is a friend of the wolf. 

There is no escape for kings from the need for vazīrs, 
But the vazīr must be one who is knowledgeable and trustworthy. 

He must know the affairs of the realm completely, 
So that he may order them in the best form. 

He must know that he is trusted with the wealth of the king, 
And is not preparing an ambush for seizing more than his rightful share, 

That he does not take more than what he needs from the subjects, 
And that which is the rightful portion of the king and his retinue— 

One benevolent towards all of God’s creatures, 
Pitying the state of the poor and the beggar, 

His graciousness applying a salve to every wounded breast, 
His severity delivering vengeance upon every oppressor, 

Not one of wicked disposition, who, with the appearance of a wild beast, 
Betrays his foolishness in front of the wise, 

All filthy, like a mongrel dog, 
And at ease with having his paws defiled, 

Craving for a hapless cow to sacrifice, 
So that he may defile his mouth with its blood. 

Nay, you must have an admonisher to guide you wherever you go, 
Who is straight-sighted, disposed to sincerity, and possessed of excellent discernment,
The one who can convey to you the hidden of everything, 
And the date of the good and bad deeds of everyone.

1065 As for that person who is afraid of the vazîr, 
Do not leave his interrogation up to the vazîr, 
Investigate the matter yourself as well, 
And you will make the rank of good fortune lofty. 
As for he who acts competently on your behalf, 
But who tyrannizes the cities and districts, 
That is not being competent, that is causing calamity, 
It is bundling together the kindling of hell. 
Competence indeed! And it is not beyond him, 
In the end, to convert his ten into two hundred.

1070 When the extent of this ‘competence’ increases, 
His carnal soul will rebel, and he will become an infidel. 
In the eyes of intelligent and distinguished men, 
It is not recommended that an infidel exercise authority over Muslims. 
In short, whoever makes tyranny their custom, 
And who therefore abandons religion in pursuit of lowly things, 
There is nothing in the entire world stupider than he; 
No one will eat fruit from the property of the ignorant. 
Entrust, therefore, all of your religious and worldly affairs 
To learned men, and no one else, peace.”

An indication of the fact that the intention of this tale is not its outer form, 
but that it has an altogether different meaning, which will be explained.

1075 There is, in the outer form of every tale, 
A certain share of its meaning meant for those who are able to see the fine points. 
Given that the outer form of this tale has been completed, 
You must now attain to that meaning. 
This has been exposited by a “Knower of the Path,” 
Since it is he who has brought you to the secret business of “the way.” 
The goal of this story is not concerned with talk of “We” and “you,” 
It is the unveiling of the spiritual secret state of “We” and “you.” 
Who is intended by the King and his Sage? 
And Salâmân, who was he born of a King without a mate?

1080 Who is Absâl, through which Salâmân obtained his true desire? 
What is the mountain of fire and the sea of water?
What is that kingship which came to Salāmān
When he withdrew his hem from Absāl?

Who is Venus, that, in the end, seized his heart,
Thereby scouring the verdigris of Absāl from his mirror?

Listen to me for an exposition of these things, one-by-one,
Be an ear from head to toe, and be understanding!

*Explanation of what is meant by all of the aforementioned.*

When the incomparable Creator made the world,
He created, before all else, First Intellect.

**1085** Oh you knower of subtle points, the chain of intellects is comprised of ten,
And the Tenth is the one that makes its effect known in this world.

Because it is the one that is the effecter,
They named it Active Intellect.

It is the one that emanates good and evil in the world,
It is the one responsible for abundance and deficiency on earth.

It is not fettered to the corporeal realm, nor to the body,
Its essence has no need of this talisman.

In its essence and activity, it is separate from these things,
It does whatever it wants, without the fetters of these things.

**1090** The spirit of man is born of its effect,
The animal soul is the plaything of its plan.

All of these things are under its command,
All of these things drown in its favor.

It is the *shah* of the commanding king,
And the others, that is, the commanding or temporal *shahs*, are under its command.

Since it is adorned with the epithet “kingship,”
The guide intended it when he spoke of the King.

The emanation, which flows through it onto this world,
Is constantly falling upon him, that is, the temporal *shah*, from above.

**1095** In the opinion of the guide, who is experienced in the wonders of the world,
The supernal emanation was to be given the title, “Sage.”

His pure spirit was named, “Rational Soul,”
It is born of this Intellect, without the fetters of corporeality.

Its existence without bodily connection, is Jāmī’s intention
When he says that it is “born of a mate-less father”—
A human soul that came into being completely clean-skirted,
The name of this offspring, which means “unblemished,” is “Salāmān.”

Who is Absāl? The lust-worshipping body,
That became low under the laws of nature.

The body lives by way of the soul, and through the body,
The soul derives pleasure through things perceptible to the senses.

For that reason, they are lovers of one another,
Only compulsion keeps them from mingling together.

What is that sea that both of them were in,
And from being in it, they were happily united?

It is the sea of sensual lusts,
It is the abyss of carnal pleasures.

An entire world drowns in its waves,
And in its being submerged, they are far from the Truth.

What is that Absāl, who was so close in company,
And that Salāmān, who was to remain deprived of her?

That is the consequence of the age of decline,
The age at which the tools of lust are rolled up like a carpet.

Having made a place for the beloved of his true nature in his embrace,
The tool of lust remains low.

What is that inclination of Salāmān toward the King?
And that turning toward the throne of glory and dignity?

It is the inclination toward noetic pleasures,
The result of which is to be brought to the kingdom of Intellect.

What is that fire? Ascetic discipline,
In order to set fire to the stuff of human disposition,
The result of which burned Salāmān’s true nature, leaving pure spirit,
And which shed his skirt of animal lusts.

Even though he grew accustomed to a life in the fire,
From time to time, the pain of his separation resurfaced.

For that pain the Sage described to him the beauty of Venus,
The Sage made a yoke, joining [Salāmān’s] life to his affection for Venus.

Until, gradually, he reposed with Venus,
And escaped from the anguish and affection for Absāl.

Who is Venus? Those lofty perfections
With which, by way of union, the soul becomes truly noble.

From that beauty, Intellect becomes luminous,
Thus becoming the king of the kingdom of man.
I have given you a summary of these secrets,  
I have given you a précis of this speech.

If you must have the details, then meditate,  
So that the ancient secrets come to you in great detail.

This discourse, as well as this summary, is finished,  
*And God knows what is best.*

*Conclusion of the book.*

1120 Oh Jāmī you have rolled up the carpet of life,  
For how long will you be in the image-laden realm of poetry?

How long will you be unskilled, and like the reed-pen,  
Writhing, letter-like, in the blackness of poetry?

In doing black deeds, your hair became white,  
But there is scant hope your face will turn white from this art.

The time has come for you to apologize for what you said here,  
It is time to make your mantra, “*astaghfiruʾllāh,*”

To dedicate soul and breath to seeking forgiveness,  
To bring life into this very moment, and nothing else,

1125 When you rinse your mouth with the water of seeking forgiveness,  
Recite a prayer and praise the king of the world!

Praise the king of good fortune, Yaʿqūb Beg.  
He has come, like a pouring raincloud, and I am parched sand.

How can parched sand ever be satisfied with water,  
How can it ever be brave enough to bid it farewell?

Since it is impossible for me to be satisfied with this water,  
It is better to close this discourse with a prayer:

May the world be enlivened from the effusion of his beneficence,  
May the turn of his justice become well-known to all,

1130 May, at every moment, he gain new glory and majesty,  
And may the duration of his kingship be beyond all measure!

---

15 *Allāh aʿlam bi al-ṣṣawāb.*

16 I.e., The supplication, *istighfār Allāh* (“I seek God’s forgiveness”), invoked in the form of a litany (*vīrd*) by Sufis, including Naqshbandīs, during *zikr.*


— —. Practical Philosophy of the Muhammadan People… Being a Translation of the Akhlak-i Jalāly, the Most Esteemed Ethical Work of Middle Asia, from the Persian of Fakir Fārīdūn Muhammad Aṣāād. Translated by W. F. Thompson. London: Oriental Translation Fund of Great Britain and Ireland, 1839.


INDEX

ʿAbbasid(s), 35, 43
ʿAbd Allah Khan (Timurid), 37
ʿAbd al-Vahhāb sayyids, 123
ʿAbd al-Vahhāb, Siraj al-Din, Mir, 84, 95, 96, 97, 123n58
Abivardi, Amir Kamal al-Din Husain, Sayyid, 119n38
abjad, 85
Absal, 9–10, 11, 40, 131, 147, 161
abandonment of by Salamān, 2, 143
as corresponding to corporeal/appetitive faculty, 12, 148
as corresponding to goldsmith (in Masnavi-yi maʿnavi), 4, 137
as full moon, 74
as representation of gnostic, 15
as representation of lust-worshipping body, 67, 68, 73, 146
as sibling of Salamān, 13
as signification of Paradise, 11
as speculative intellect, 14
as symbol of carnal soul, 138, 143
as symbol of libertinism, 22, 146, 148
as symbol of Love, 134, 148
as symbol of sensual pleasure 2, 69, 139, 148, 163
as symbol of wine (= wine-drinking), 3, 4, 22, 146, 148, 149–50, 151, 152, 159, 164
consumed by fire, 134, 137, 138
etymology of name, 11n10
image of, 10, 143
in al-Nawadir, 12n15
incestuous affair between Salamān and, 65, 150
in Hayy ibn Yaqqān, 14
in Ishārat wa al-tanbihāt, 11, 12
in Kitāb al-asfār al-arbaʿa, 12n15
in Risāla fi al-qadar, 11n10
made Salamān’s eternal companion, 142
memory of in Salamān’s heart, 134, 138, 153
renunciation of by Salamān, 2, 22, 39, 148, 152, 163
Salamān freed from despair over, 69
Salamān leaps into fire with, 69
Salamān separated by King from, 72
Salamān’s love for, 73, 139
Salamān’s lust for, 3, 77, 138, 148, 151, 152
Salamān’s preoccupation with, 74, 140, 141
stratagems used by, 148
transformation of into Venus, 13n19, 134
union/carnal union between Salamān and, 69, 141, 149–50
Absalom and Solomon, 14
Abū al-Muḥsin Mīrzā (Timurid), 23n59, 70
Abū Bakr, 37, 89
Achaemenid(s), 13n18, 153
Active Intellect, 73, 137, 143
King associated with, 12, 67, 68, 146, 151
adab, 44, 74n202
Adam: adept actualizes myth of, 159
as Perfect Man, 65n50, 76n209
as vicegerent of God, 65
creation of, 75, 225
fall of into corporeality, 78
God wrapped in garment of, 168
in relation to Yaʿqūb, 108
parallel between rooster and, 78
perfect ruler God’s investiture of, 64
Qur’anic story of, 10n7, 108n128
recreation of drama of, 79
Salamān custodian of treasure of, 76, 210
Salamān descendant of, 76
Salamān signification of, 11
Salamān equates self to, 108
similarities between Salamān and, 77, 140, 144
Adamic perfection, 144
ʿadl (= ʿadālat). See justice
Afshāzād, A’lā-Khān, 25
Ahli Shirāzī, 26–27, 112–3, 115, 164. See also Sham’ va parvāna
Ahrār, ‘Ubayd Allāh, Khvāja, 28
aphorism attributed to, 38
as advocate of associating with rulers, 40
disciples of in Tabriz, 95
influence of over Timurids, 36, 37n11, 95
interventions of with Sultan-Abū Sa’īd, 37
Maulānāzāda ‘Abd Allāh Utrārī disciple of, 42n32
on activisim of Naqshbandīs, 38
reliance of on rābiṭa, 153–4
Siraj al-Din ʿAbd al-Vahhāb disciple of, 96
akça, 92n45
Akhísqa (= Akhal-Tsikhe), 94n53
akhlaq, 17, 44
Akhlaqq-i Jaláli (Jalál al-Dín Davání), 81, 119, 163
accordance between Saláman va Absál and, 1, 18
des as dedicated to Úzún Hasan and Súltán-Khalíl, 20–21, 59
as Persian mirror for princes, 21, 162
at Mughal court, 86n20
emphasis on Sufism in, 86
esoteric elements of, 21
legitimizes Úzún Hasan, 85n15
on conditions for good kinship, 49–50
on need to effect justice in body, 47
on Sufis influencing dynastic fortune, 59
pervaded with Sufi ethics, 21
role of, 86–89
ruler as “shadow of God” in, 55
ruler compared to shepherd in, 51
spirituality and court service in, 38
statement on just infidel in, 48
statement “religion and kingship brothers” in, 60n127
vasáyás of Plato and Aristotle in, 51
Akhlaqq-i Muḥsiní (Ḥusain Vāʿiẓ Kāshīfī), 23n59, 45n43, 45n49, 70
Akhlaqq-i Náṣirí (Naṣīr al-Dín Ṭūsí), 21, 49, 50, 52, 55n102, 61
accordance between Saláman va Absál and, 1, 18
Akhlaqq-i Jaláli based on, 21
and correlating Saláman va Absál to works of advice, 19
as synthesis of Aristotelianism and Indo-Iranian ideals, 20
conceptualization of society in, 20
dissimilarity of with Saláman va Absál, 61
on virtues ruler must possess, 49
ruler as “shadow of God” in, 55n104
ruler compared to shepherd in, 51
statement “religion and kingship brothers” in, 60n127
vasáyás of Plato to Aristotle in, 51
Alaqq-i Muḥsiní, 83n6
‘álam al-ghaib, 63, 142n33
‘álam al-mísá, 141–2
alcohol, 3, 16, 107, 150, 159. See also wine
Algar, Hamid, 37–38, 40n52, 95, 96, 115
Alexander the Great, 95–51
‘Ali al-Ḥádi, Imám, 104n100
‘Ali al-Rižá, Imám, 116
allegory: about king and handmaiden/slave-girl, 4
“historical and political,” 145
Ibn Siná’s use of, 11, 145
Ibn Siná’s version of [Saláman and Absál], 13–14, 145, 159
modern prejudice against, 145, 161, 164
mystical, 21
Neo-Platonism in medieval, 67n159
“of ideas,” 144–5
provenance of Saláman va Absál, 11–13
Saláman va Absál (complex), 1, 46, 65, 66, 111, 144–5, 159, 161, 164
Saláman va Absál historical, 3, 22, 65, 112, 131, 144–6, 161, 164
Saláman va Absál not “trite,” 145
Saláman va Absál “peculiar,” 135
Saláman va Absál romantic, 17
Saláman va Absál “simple and banal,” 133
two types of, 144–5
allegorists, 146n51
Amin al-Dín al-Balyáni, 38
amir-i díván, 121
Amir Khusrau, 158. See also Bahr-i abrār
Anahítá, 67, 153
andarz, 17, 35
andarz-náma, 44
Anšári, ‘Abd Alláh, 32n100, 50. See also Šaβagat al-ṣāfiyya, Tulfat al-mulūk
Anšári Qumí, 120
anthology(ies): hagiographical, 29–32, 99n75, 127, 155n92, 158n106, 162
literary (= poetical), 3, 24, 32–33, 111, 116, 131, 158, 162, 164. See also taẕkira
Anushírván (Sasanian), 43, 49, 50
Advices of, 35
al-‘aql al-naẓarí, 14
‘aql-i avvál, 67
‘aql-i fá‘ál, 12, 67, 146. See also Active intellect
‘aql-i kull. See Universal Reason
‘Aql-i surkh (Shiháb al-Dín Yaḥyá Suhravardí), 68n68
Áq Qoyúnlu: administration, 121
administrative elite, 88, 93, 94, 98, 130
and mirrors for princes, 21, 34
armed forces, 104, 125
as audience of Saláman va Absál, 2, 5, 21, 34, 79, 111, 123, 146, 155, 162, 163
as foes of Qará Qoyúnlu, 83n6
as patrons of Persian belles-lettres, 24, 26, 32–33, 164
as solicitors of advice from Sufis, 29, 162
disintegration of, 99
household, 112, 129–31, 163
influence of Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī on, 90n34
influence of Khalvatīs on, 82, 90–93, 93–95, 162
interest in Jāmī’s poetry, 29, 118–9
literary tastes of, 117, 162, 164
marriage practices, 41, 123, 150
poets affiliated with, 26, 33, 111, 112–20, 162, 164
receptiveness to Sufis/Sufism, 1–2, 30, 59, 80, 82–86, 87n24, 111, 130, 162, 163
relations with Mamluks, 129n81
relations with Ottomans, 102, 103
relations with Timurids, 85n16, 119
role of Naqshbandīs and, 4, 90, 95–100, 100, 101–2, 162, 163
royal court, 1, 3, 4, 16, 21, 22, 26, 31, 32, 34, 80, 90, 91, 95, 102, 105, 111, 112, 114, 117, 118, 119–20, 126, 127, 130, 131, 136, 144, 146, 147, 148, 151, 152, 159, 161, 162, 163, 164
sources for study of, 3, 23–24, 27–28, 31–32, 117, 126
Sunni orientation of, 86, 114
territory, 30, 31, 42, 98, 113, 119n40
(tribal) confederation, 7, 16, 82, 86, 147
use of suyūrgāl grants, 83n8.
See also Īyīna-nāma

Bahārīstān (Jāmī), 40, 43, 48
Baharī (Mengüçek), 88n26
Bahārīm va Bihārīz (Kamāl al-Dīn Banāʾī), 27, 113
Bahir-î abrār (Amir Khusrau), 158
Banīqī, Al’ā̀l-Dīn ‘Ali, Sayyid, 91
Bākharzī, ʿAbd al-Vāṣiʿ Niẓāmī, 24, 30. See also Maqāmāt-i Jāmī
Bala, 52, 74, 75n204, 142
Banāʾī Haravi, Kamāl al-Dīn: addressed Bahārīm va Bihārīz to Yaʿqūb, 27, 113
affiliation of with Āq Qoyūnlū, 26, 112
in service to Yaʿqūb, 164
reputation of at Herat, 114. See also Bahārīm va Bihārīz
bāqī, 143–4. See also bāqī
Barbaro, Giosafat, 105–6
Bardaʿa, 94n53
Barmakīd(s), 43
Barzakh, 133, 142
Bayābang, 128
Bayandur (clan), 16, 101, 113, 123, 127n69, 150
Bāyazid II (Ottoman), 42, 86
Bāysunghur, Abū al-Fatḥ (Āq Qoyūnlū), 27
Bear, constellation of, 24n62
Beğerbegi, 103
beloved: 136, 137, 139, 140
Absāl as, 2, 9, 13, 39, 139, 148, 159, 163
divine, 10, 139–40

āyīna-nāma, 44
Azerbaijan, 16, 84–85, 91n39, 97, 98, 123n58, 128
ʿAẓrā, 167, 216, 217
Bābā Fighānī, 26, 112, 155–6, 119, 130, 164
Bābā Maḥmūd hospice, 83n7
al-Bābur, Abū al-Qāsim (Timurid), 40
Baghdad, 31, 46n53, 104n100
Bāgh-i Shamāl, 91
Bahāristān (Jāmī), 40, 43, 48
Bāghistān (Jāmī), 40, 43, 48
Banīqī, Al’ā̀l-Dīn ‘Ali, Sayyid, 91
Bākharzī, ʿAbd al-Vāṣiʿ Niẓāmī, 24, 30. See also Maqāmāt-i Jāmī
bala, 52, 74, 75n204, 142
Banāʾī Haravi, Kamāl al-Dīn: addressed Bahārīm va Bihārīz to Yaʿqūb, 27, 113
affiliation of with Āq Qoyūnlū, 26, 112
in service to Yaʿqūb, 27n76, 114, 115n21
patronage of by Yaʿqūb, 164
reputation of at Herat, 114. See also Bahārīm va Bihārīz
bāqī, 143–4. See also bāqī
baraka (= barakat, pl. barakāt), 62, 64, 101, 102, 107
as legitimating ruler, 61
as part of reciprocal relationship, 59
in connection with Bahāʿ al-Dīn Naqshband, 62
in connection with Jāmī’s prayer, 64
of Darvish Qāsim, 102
of Khvāja ʿUmar, 101
of Sufis and dynastic fortune, 59
request by Yaʿqūb for Jāmī’s, 107
Barbaro, Giosafat, 105–6
Bardaʿa, 94n53
Barmakīd(s), 43
Barzakh, 133, 142
Bayābang, 128
Bayandur (clan), 16, 101, 113, 123, 127n69, 150
Bāyazid II (Ottoman), 42, 86
Bāysunghur, Abū al-Fath (Āq Qoyūnlū), 27
Bear, constellation of, 24n62
Beğerbegi, 103
beloved: 136, 137, 139, 140
Absāl as, 2, 9, 13, 39, 139, 148, 159, 163
divine, 10, 139–40
beloved cont.
earthly/temporal, 74, 128, 142
of Qāżī ʿĪsā, 127
spiritual, 140
Yaʿqūb as, 81, 112
Bertel’s, E., 26
Bidlīsī, Ḥakīm al-Dīn ʿĪdrīs, 94, 121n48, 124–5. See also Hasht bihisht, Qānūn-i shāhanshāhī
Bidpāi. See Kalīla wa dimna
Bījan, Sulaimān Beg, 92
Bīlqīs, 191
Bitlis, 98n72
Blue Mosque in Tabriz, 91n39
breast-feeding: juridical discussions of, 150, 161
Browne, Edward G., 7
Bukhara, 98
Buldānī, Muḥammad Amīn, Khvāja, 95, 97
Buzurjmihr, 49n69, 52n83
Advices of, 35
caliphate, 35, 84, 87
carnal soul. See nafs
Celestial/divine Pen, 76
Celestial/primordial Tablet, 76
Chaghatay [Turkish], 32, 37n12, 114, 119
Chahār maqāla (Niẓāmī ʿArūżī), 42
China, 188
Chinggis Khān, 89n29. See also yāsā
¡Corbín, Henry, 12, 133, 141–2, 145
Daēnā, 13n19
daulat, 2, 8, 57, 60–61, 163. See also kingship
Damascus, 42
Darvishābād, 97
Dashtakī, Ghiyās̠ al-Dīn Manṣūr, 63n139
Dashtakī, Ṣadr al-Dīn, 63n139
Davānī, Jalal al-Dīn: as Āq Qoyūnlū poet, 119
as chief qāṣī of Fars, 122n52
as chief religious figure of Āq Qoyūnlū, 86
assertion of that ruler dependant on Sufis, 87
association with Murshidiyya, 38
as teacher of Qāżī Ḥusain Maibūdī, 96
as teacher of Rūzbihān Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, 28
cardinal virtues according to, 49–50 “circle of justice” according to, 45
citation of Syriac rock-inscription by, 60n127
commentaries on Ḥāfiz by, 59n125
description of Sulṭān-Khalīl by, 89
disputations between Dashtakis and, 63n39
equates Üzūn Ḥasan with Khidr, 88
influence of over Āq Qoyūnlū, 90n34
introduction of Ibrāhīm Gulshani to, 90n37
on need to effect justice in body, 47
on preeminence of shaikhs, 86–87
on spirituality and court service, 38–39
regard for Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Lāhījī, 113
treatise on justice by, 90n34
treatise on speculative theology by, 90n34
treatise on “There is no god but God” by, 89n29. See also Akhlāq-i Jalālī, ʿArz-nāma, Ḥāshīya qadīm bar sharḥ-i tajrīd
David, prophet, 49–49, 185
dāya, 9, 134
Sufi saint as, 134. See also breast-feeding, wet-nurse
dervish(es): Akhlāq-i Jalālī instructs ruler to support, 21
as responsible for Üzūn Ḥasan’s power, 84
associations with Üzūn Ḥasan and Yaʿqūb, 28, 86
attendance of at Darvishābād khānaqāh, 97
Bābā ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī as, 82
eradication by Üzūn Ḥasan of heretical, 84
hostility of Naqshbandis to antinomian, 37
influence of over Āq Qoyūnlū, 163
interest of Āq Qoyūnlū in, 81
Kamāl al-Dīn Gāzurgāhī as, 128n76
Murshidiyya circle of, 38
ruler finds refuge in hearts of, 87
DeWeese, Devin, 30
dīn, 2, 19, 39, 45, 46, 48, 58, 61, 62, 163
al-Ghazālī’s “circle of justice” begins with, 45
as epitomized by praising ruler, 58
as obligation, 61n131
construed as dain or “debt,” 61
does not ensure kingship, 46, 48
made right by prophets, 39
placed in ruler’s heart through Sufi prayer, 61, 62
Qāżī ʿĪsā elevated affairs of, 125
relationship between kingship and, 19
Sufi-ruler supported by, 2. See also kingship
dinar(s) (Shāhrukhī), 117
Divine Names and Attributes, 57, 140. See also al-asnāʾ al-husnā
divine physician, 22, 137
as Sufi shaykh, 135, 136, 137. See also Sage. Universal Reason
Divine Spirit, 77n217, 137
dream (= dream-vision), 3, 31n97, 84, 85n6, 89, 137, 144
al-Durra al-fākhira (Jāmī), 42
ego-self (= ego-soul), 2, 127n71, 134, 140, 144, 154. See also nafs
Erzinjan, 88n26
faʾīz, 87, 88, 97, 110, 154
faʾīz-i bālā, 67, 68, 146, 151
faʾīz-i ilāhī, 12, 137, 151
Fakhrī Haravī, Sulṭān Muḥammad, 24, 32n101, 33, 120, 128–9. See also Laṭāʾif-nāma
falsafa, 42
fanāʾ, 144, 153. See also fānī
fānī, 143–4
Farābī, Abū Naṣr, 20, 67. See also Madīnat al-fāżila
Farḥād, 140, 218–9
farmān, 22n58, 68, 84
farr (= farra, khvarna) 56
farr-i ilāhī, 57
farr-i Īzadī, 56n105. See also Jāmī, Sulṭān Abū al-Muẓaffar Yaʿqūb
Farrukh Yasār (Shīrvān-shāh), 41
Fars, 59n125, 87, 89, 90n37, 91n42, 113. See also Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī
Fawāʾiḥ al-jamāl wa fawātiḥ al-jalāl (Najm al-Dīn Kubrā), 142n35, 153
Fazlūn (Shaddadī), 200
Firdausi, 26n74, 191. See also Shāh-nāma
fox and its cub, parable of, 75, 79
Fraytī, 1319
Frey, Northrop, 145
Fussūs al-hikam (Ibn al-ʿArabī), 91, 94n51, 96. See also Dada ʿUmar Raushanī
al-Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya (Ibn al-ʿArabī), 64n143, 119, 139
futuwwat, 74
Gabriel, archangel, 143
Gauhar-Sulṭān Khānum, 41n30
Garden of Eden, 216
Garden of Iram, 216
Gāzurgāhī, Sayyid Kamāl al-Dīn Ḥusain, 216
Amīr, 24, 32, 111, 127, 128, 130. See also Majālis al-ʿushshāq
ghazal(s): attributed to Yaʿqūb, 129
composed by Qāżī ʿĪsā, 120–1, 122
dedicated by Jāmī to Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā, 40
dedicated to Yaʿqūb, 112
of Hāfiz, 59n25, 71n88
Ghazālī, Abū Ḥāmid Muḥammad:
attrition by of maxims to Prophet, 48, 51–2, 55
circle of justice" according to, 45
compares ruler to shepherd, 51
explanation of farr by, 56n105
Naṣīḥat al-mulūk (wrongly) ascribed to, 19
on precondition of justice, 47
on ruler as "shadow of God's awe,“ 56n104
recommendation of that ruler emulate Sasanians, 35–6
use of revelation about Iran, 49. See also Iḥyāʾ ʿulūm al-dīn, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk
Ghāzān Khān (Ilkhanid), 43
ghāzī, 94n53
Ghazi Khān, 41n30
Ghaznavi(d), 43
Ghīḍavānī, ʿAbd al-Khāliq, 28n81, 89, 98
ghuluvv Islam, 98n72
Gīlānshāh (Ziyarid), 18
God's sigh, 139, 141
Gross, Jo-Ann, 30
di Guasco, Pietro, 105
Gudara, 95n58
Gujarat, 115n21
Gulistān (Saʿdī), 40
Gulshanī, Muḥyī, 24, 31, 125. See also Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī
Gulshanī order, 31
Gulshanī, Ibrāhīm, Shaikh, 31, 96, 97
acquainted with Jāmī, 90
administrative responsibilities of, 90
as disciple of ʿUmar Raushanī, 91
as focus of modern scholarship, 82, 163
association with Āq Qoyūnlū, 90
as Ūzūn Ḥasan’s envoy to Sulṭān-Khalīl, 90n37
at court of Yaʿqūb, 31–32, 92–95, 124
part of power matrix, 32. See also Qāẓī Ṣafī al-Dīn ʿĪsā Sāvajī, Shaikh Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd Sāvajī
Gulshan-i rāz (Mahmūd Shabistarī), 94n51, 96
Gurgan, 18
Hābīb Bargshādī, Maulānā, 120
Hābīb al-sīyār fī akhābār-i āfrād-i bashar
(Ghiyās al-Dīn Khvāndamīr), 24, 29, 100
ḥadīth, 63n138, 71n85, 78
and writings of Ibn al-ʿArabī, 140n23
equating religion to good advice, 35n1, 36
maxims classified by al-Ghazālī as, 51–2, 55
stating “I cannot count Your praises[,]” 58
stating justice better than worship, 126
stating just infidel preferable to unjust
Muslim, 1, 48
ḥadīth qudsī, 64n144, 76, 108n127, 140
Hāfiẓ, Shams al-Dīn, 27n74, 59n125, 71n188
Haft aurang (Jāmī), 24–26, 40
Hāidār b. Junaid, Shaikh (Safavid), 123n58, 125
Hāidāris, 86
Haiṣarī, Qāżī Muḥammad, 42
ḥajj, 30, 42, 99
ḥakīm, 8, 68, 134, 137, 151. See also Sage
ḥāl, 8, 143
as spiritual state of Sufi, 46, 87, 117, 154
as spiritual state of “We and You,” 66
Ḥalīma Begī Āghā (= ʿĀlamshāh Khātūn), 123n58
Hamadānī, ʿAlī Shihāb al-Dīn, 17.
See also Ḣūṣnī ṭakhrīj
hamshīra, 123, 150
Haravī, Najīb Māyil, 26, 156n94
Ḥasan al-ʿAskarī, Imām, 104n100
Ḥasan ʿṢadr, Qāżī.
See Maulānā [Qāżī Ḥasan] ʿṢadr
Ḥāṭefī, ʿAbd Allāh, 112
Ḥātim, 172, 199
Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān (Abū Bakr b. Ṭufail), 14–15, 138
Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān (Ibn Sinā), 118
Ḥaẓrat-i Bābā Mazīd, 106
heart, 8
as divine Throne, 63
as organ/faculty of perception, 142
image of shaikh in (see also ḥimmat, rābiṭa), 4, 62, 66, 107, 147
mirror metaphor for, 76
of ruler, 61, 62–63, 108n127
of Salāmān, 62n133, 77, 134, 138, 143, 153
of Sufi(s)/dervish(es), 58, 59, 87
of Yaʿqūb Jāmī’s focus, 57, 109
visionary experience of, 3, 76, 159
wine-cup metaphor for, 142–3
Yaʿqūb on transformation of, 108
Heath, Peter, 145
Herat, 4, 23n59, 25, 30, 37n14, 40n72, 41, 50, 70, 81, 90, 98n72, 99, 100, 112, 113, 114, 116, 118, 120, 128n76, 129, 158, 163
Hidden Imām, 142n33
Ḥijaz, 85
ḥikmat, 49
ḥimat (pl. himam), 4, 21, 61, 84n9, 107
association with saint(s), 91–6
familiarity of Yaʿqūb with, 107, 117
of Jāmī sought by Yaʿqūb, 28, 117
of Sage, 143, 153
relevance of to Jāmī, 87, 163
reliance on by ʿUbaid Allāh Aḥrār, 153–4
use of by King, 9–10, 72, 152
hospice(s), 60, 83n7, 87, 91n39, 98, 102, 103, 105. See also ʿkhānaqāḥ(s), zāviya
ḥubb ilāhī. See love: Divine
ḥubb rūḥānī. See love: Spiritual
ḥubb ṭabīʿī. See love: Natural
Ḥujvīrī, ʿAlī b. ʿUthmān al-Jullābī, 70, 71, 73, 110n140. See also Kashf al-maḥjūb
Ḥülegū (Ilkhanid), 20
Ḥunain b. Isḥāq, 8n4, 12, 138, 161
Ḥurūfī, 84n12
Ḥusain b. ʿAli, Imām, 104n100
ʻibādat, 48n63, 126
Ibn al-ʿArabī, Muḥyī al-Dīn, 66n154, 91, 92
himmat and theosophy of, 91–6
influence on of Jāmī, 3, 57, 72n189, 135n19, 138
interpretation of tauba by, 72
Jāmī proponent of, 2–3, 138
love and theosophy of, 138–41, 153, 159
modes of being according to, 2
Naqshbandīs interpreters of, 38, 102n91
on being true deputy of God, 64
writings of and Salāmān va Absāl, 138.
See also Fuṣūṣ al-ḥikam, al-Futūḥāt al-Makkiyya, al-Nawādir
Ibn Sinā, 67, 133
as originator of Salāmān and Absāl tale, 11, 159, 161
use of allegory by, 11, 15, 145
version of [Salāmān and Absāl] by, 13–14, 15, 34, 118. See also Hayy ibn
Yaẓān, Ishārāt wa al-tanbīḥāt, Risāla fī al-qadar, Risālat al-ṭair, Salāmān wa Absāl
Ibn Taiymiyya, 35
Ibn Ṭufail, Abū Bakr, 14–15, 138. See also Ḥayy ibn Yaẓān
Idrīs, brother of Üzūn Ḥasan, 91
ʿiffat, 49
Iḥyāʾ ʿulūm al-dīn (Muḥammad Ghazālī), 70n179
īlchī, 90n36, 102
Ilkhanid(s), 20, 43, 52n83, 150n71
Illuminationism, 12–13, 63, 66n157
ʿilm-i jafr, 84n12
incest: and Zoroastrian consanguineous marriage, 13
as literary trope, 150
union of Salāmān and Absāl example of, 8, 15, 150, 161
India, 91, 45n49, 115n21, 129
conceptions of statecraft from, 44
al-insān al-kāmil (= insān-i kāmil):
as saint, 64
as true vicegerent of God, 17, 162
in Salāmān va Absāl 162
Jāmī’s interpretation of, 20154
ruler as, 64. See also kamāl-i insān
intellect, 47n57, 73
advice on illuminating, 66–69
hierarchy of, 133
of Salāmān, 147
Iran, 91, 16, 18, 19, 20, 23n59, 36, 37n13, 38, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51n124, 60n128, 63, 67n61, 70, 78n219, 84n12, 92, 97n68, 120, 163
Iraq, 16, 82, 104, 128
ʿIrāqī, Fakhr al-Dīn, 96. See also Lamaʿāt
Ishārāt wa al-tanbīḥāt, Kitāb (Ibn Sinā), 11, 14n28, 161
allusion to in Yaʿqūb’s letter to Jāmī, 118
Iskandar-nāma (Nizāmī Ganjavī), 135n11
Islamic law, 27n78, 86, 153n73, 156
addressed in Sīsīlat al-zahab, 42
incest according to, 150
revivification of by Qāẓī ʿĪsā, 125
tamghā not in accordance with, 37. See also sharīʿa
Ismāʿīl I, Shāh (Safavid), 96, 98n72
Israelites, 129
Istanbul, 27n74, 41, 42, 91
Ivanov, W., 26
Jacob, Biblical story of, 130–1, 165n2
Jahāngīr (Mughal), 86n20
Jahānshāh (Qarā Qoyūnlū), 41, 101, 108n133
al-Jāḥiẓ, 45n49
Jahri brotherhood, 28
Jāmī, ʿal-ʿulām (Fakhr al-Dīn Rāzī), 60n127
Jāmī, ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, Khvāja, 97
Jāmī, Nūr al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Raḥmān, 1, 24, 34
ʿAbd Allāh Ḥātifī nephew of, 112
acquainted with Ibrāhīm Gulshānī, 90
activities of in Damascus, 42
advice of to Yaʿqūb, 2, 28, 31, 43, 64–65, 71, 107, 109–10, 117, 118, 156, 162
allusion to al-ʿamāl bi al-ʿazīma by, 70–71
allusion to Day of Covenant by, 75
allusion to rābiṭa by, 155
allusion to visionary experience by, 144
allusion to Yaʿqūb by, 147
and Bāyazīd II, 42
and conscience of Yaʿqūb, 117, 151
and Farrukh Yasār Shīrvān-shāh, 41
and Jahānshāh, 41
and Meḥmed II, 42
and Naqshbandī tradition of advising rulers, 40
and Nizāmī’s Khamsa, 25n63, 158
ʿĀq Qoyūnlū interest in poetry of, 29, 118–9
arrival in Tabriz, 102
as ʿʿĀq Qoyūnlū’ poet, 116–9
as critical of Yaʿqūb’s immorality, 26, 43
as Naqshbandī influence on Yaʿqūb, 31, 62, 70, 81, 110, 115, 155, 163
as preeminent literary figure, 40–41n28
as proponent of Ibn al-ʿArabī, 2–3, 138
as purveyor of Persian/Perso-Islamic wisdom, 21, 42–43, 161
association with Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā, 40
as spiritual master of Shahīdi Qumī, 40n25, 115, 116
as spiritual “master” of Yaʿqūb, 4, 33, 81, 108, 109–10, 118, 155, 160, 163
as Sufi shaykh, 4, 40n25, 66, 110, 160, 163
as synthesizer of Ibn al-ʿArabī and Rūmī, 138
attachment of Ṣunʿ Allāh Kūzakunānī to, 31, 99
“autographed” Haft aurang MS of, 25–26
blessings of sought by Yaʿqūb, 107, 117
books on Sufism by, 158
claim of that Yaʿqūb possesses farr, 57
collection of letters attributed to, 33n108, 158
commentary on Maṣnāvī-yi maʿnavī, 135n9
connection between Bābā Fighānī and, 116
on own infirmity, 157

Jāmī, Nūr al-Dīn ‘Abd al-Rahmān cont.
definition of “true/perfect kingship,” 2, 55–56, 58
disciples of, 40n25
Dīvān of, 104, 119
(duration of) rapport between Yaʿqūb and, 4, 29, 107, 117, 130, 156, 157
encounter(s) between Ūzūn Ḥasan and, 30, 31
explication of Salāmān(619,621),(963,813)
and, 46, 48, 56
on Iranian ethics and Islamic morality, 51
on man’s/Adam’s status among created things, 75–78
on need for rulers to repent, 71

on proverbs as originators of advice, 39
on Salāmān forsaking his origins, 73
on seminal emission of King, 8–9
on ruler as “shadow of God,” 55, 57, 162
on ruler as shepherd, 51, 52
on ruler’s need for Sufi prayers/
blessings, 58–59, 61, 64, 162
Sage accessing Salāmān’s heart, 38
on Salāmān’s worship of Absāl, 141
on sexual union of Salāmān and Absāl, 148–9
on (true) khilafat Allāh, 2, 62–63, 162, 163
on vazīr/vizierate, 10, 42–43, 52, 53, 54
on Yaʿqūb being drunkard, 156
Ottoman attempts to lure, 41–42
patented Salāmān va Absāl on
Masnāvī-yi maʿnavī, 22, 135, 159, 161
prayer of and baraka, 58–59, 63, 64
qasidas (addressed to Yaʿqūb) by, 26, 108, 155, 158
quotations of Masnāvī-yi maʿnavī by,
3–4, 21, 135–6, 148, 159, 161–2
reason(s) of for composing Salāmān va
Absāl, 2, 3, 17039, 21, 22–23, 46, 49, 61,
64–65, 66, 123, 131, 144, 147–8, 155–6,
157, 158, 159, 164
referred to as saint, 117
regard for Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Lāhījī, 113
revised works of ‘Abd Allāh Anṣārī, 50
Salāmān va Absāl “lesser achievement” of,
7, 65, 161
spiritual relationship between Yaʿqūb and, 107–10
use of hadīth by, 1, 58
use of motif of incest by, 150, 161
use of parable by, 75, 78, 79
use of sexual innuendos by, 150
version of Salāmān and Absāl by, 4, 11,
12, 16, 17, 118, 138, 159, 161
visit to Baghdad, 31
Yaʿqūb object of devotion of, 109, 120
See also Bahāristān, al-Durra al-fākhira,
Haft aurang, Khirad-nūma-i
Iskandari, Lailī va Majnūn, Lavāʿīh,
Nafahāt al-uns, Risāla-i nāʿīya,
Salāmān va Absāl, Sarr-rišta-i tariqa-i
Khvājagān, Sīlṣīlat al-żahab, Subḥat
al-ahrār, Tuhfat al-ahrār, Yusuf va
ZulaiKhā
Jamshid, 171
INDEX

javāb(s), 158
javānmardī, 18, 74
jealousy: God's, 140
King's, 140–1. See also Sultān Abū al-Muzaffar Ya'qūb, Yamin al-Dīn Abū al-ʿIzz Yūsuf
Jesus, 89, 122
Joseph, prophet: Biblical story of, 130–1
Qur'anic story of, 130, 203–4, 214. See also Yamin al-Dīn Abū al-ʿIzz Yūsuf
jūd, 8, 49, 50
justice: as Aristotelian golden mean, 44 as central concept in mirrors for princes, 1, 21, 42, 44 as equipoise of ruler's constitution, 2, 47 as socioeconomic equilibrium, 20, 44–5, 46–47 as virtue of good ruler, 20, 49–50 "circle of," 44–46 in Salāmān va Absāl, 8, 10, 46 of ancient kings of Iran, 48–49 of ruler more important than piety, 46, 48, 49, 126. See also Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī, kingship, Sultān Abū al-Muzaffar Ya'qūb just ruler/king, 56, 126, 162, 163
kalām, 35, 90n34
Kalīla wa dimna (Bidpāi), 45n49
kamāl-i insānī, 88
Kāsānī, Makhdūm Aʿẓam Aḥmad, 74n20
Kāshānī, Afżāl al-Dīn Muḥammad b. Ḥasan, 17. See also Sāz va pīrāya-yi shāhān-i pūrmāya
Kāshifī, Ḥusain b. ʿAlī Vāʿiẓ, 23n59, 44n43, 61–62, 70. See also Akhlāq-i Muḥsinī, Asrār-i Qāsimī
Kashf al-mahjūb (Hujvīrī), 2, 70, 71, 73, 110n40
Kāshghari, Saʿd al-Dīn, 99
Kashmir, 155n92
Kāshgharī, Saʿd al-Dīn, 99
Khān, 18–19, 47n60. See also Qābūs-nāma
Khān, Zain al-Dīn Abū Bakr, 95n58
Khvajagān, 28n81, 37n14, 89, 109n136. See also Naqshbandī(s)
Khvāja Afżāl, 120
Khvāja Muʿīn al-Dīn, 155n92. See also Maqāmāt-i Maḥmūdiyya
Khvāja ʿUmar, 100–1
Kāzarūniyya order (= Isḥāqiyya), 39n19
khalīfat Allāh: Adamic perfection characteristic of, 144, 159
as khalīfa-i khudā in Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 47
Perfect Man as, 17, 20
Salāmān becomes, 159
spiritual station baqāʾ as, 144
Sufi-ruler as, 2, 62, 64, 65
Khalvati(s) (= Khalvatiyya): association with Āq Qoyūnlū, 82
Gulshāni branch of, 31
influence on Āq Qoyūnlū affairs, 4, 82, 90–93, 162
relations between Naqshbandis and, 95, 96, 97. See also Dada ʿUmar Raushānī, Shaikh Ibrāhīm Gulshāni
khvāt va arjamān, 36–37, 38, 96. See also Naqshbandī(s)
Khamsa (Nižāmi Ganjavī), 25, 158
khānaqāh(s), 87
Khatāʾī Tabrīzī, 120n41. See also Yūsuf va Zulaikhā
Khidr (= al-Khaḍir/Khiżr), 88–89, 104n102, 135, 190
khirad, 8, 49, 76
Khīrad-nāma-i Iskandari (Jāmī), 25n63, 40, 43, 158
Khanī-Iṣfahānī, Faẓl Allāh b. Rūzbīhān, 23, 24, 81, 125, 152, 164
allusion to ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī by, 82–83
as biased in favor of Yaʿqūb, 27
as member of Jahān brotherhood, 28
as staunch Sunnī, 28
as student of Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī, 28
criticism of Qāżī ʿĪsā by, 120, 121–2, 126
does not mention Ibrāhīm Gulshāni, 94
does not mention Salāmān va Absāl, 117, 158
Naqshbandī affiliation of, 28n81
notice of on Yaʿqūb and Jāmī, 117
opinion of Ūzūn Ḥasan, 86
silence of on patronage of Sufis, 93. See also Tārīkh-i ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī
Khurasan, 95, 99, 115, 116, 119, 120
Khusrav II Parviz (Sasanian), 73–74, 140, 218–9
Khvānī, Zain al-Dīn Abū Bakr, 95n58
Khwajagān, 28n81, 37n14, 89, 109n136. See also Naqshbandī(s)
Khvāja Afżāl, 120
Khvāja Muʿīn al-Dīn, 155n92. See also Maqāmāt-i Maḥmūdiyya
Khvāja ʿUmar, 100–1
Khwāndamīr, Ghiyās al-Dīn, 24, 29, 100.
See also Habib al-sīyar fi akhkhār-i afrād-i bashar
Khwāvānd Mahmūd, Khvājā, 155n92
King of ancient Greece (= King), 2, 65, 131, 147
absorption of by Salāmān, 134
and Sage summon Salāmān, 9, 39
as corresponding to king (in Ḍaṣnāvī-yi maʿnāvī) 4, 137
as embodiment of divine wish “to be known,” 140, 141
as Salāmān’s conscience, 151
as symbol of ideal of kingship, 3, 22, 146, 151, 160, 164
as symbol of Reason, 134, 151
compares ruler to shepherd, 51, 52
conquers world, 8
counsels Salāmān, 10, 39, 73–74, 79
desire of for worthy heir, 8
final testament to Salāmān by, 10, 46n53, 50, 51
forsaken by Salāmān, 9, 73–74
gazes into world-displaying mirror, 9
in association with Tenth/Active
Intelec, 12, 67, 68, 146, 151
invests Salāmān with crown and throne, 10
makes Sage companion, 8
mercy of, 9
on ruling according to “religious law,” 51
Salāmān returns to, 4, 10, 69
seeks help of Sage, 10
semens of drawn by Sage, 9
sorrow of, 9
use of himmat by, 9–10, 72, 152
vizierate according to, 46n53, 52–54
kingship: according to mystical mirrors for princes, 17
as brother of justice, 60n27
as true destiny of Salāmān (see also mulk), 10, 151
as [twin] brother of religion, 1, 21, 60, 163
concept of perfect, 58, 88
determined by Sufis, 59
endures despite unbelief—not tyranny, 46, 48
in Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 46, 49–50, 86, 88
in Naṣihat al-mulk, 19, 35–45
in Qābūs-nāma, 19, 45
made stable by justice, 46
of Salāmān, 147
Perso-Islamic ideals of, 21, 161
Qu’ranic statement about, 61
renounced by Salāmān, 13
responsibilities of, 107
Sasanian model of, 35, 60
seal of Yaʿqūb’s, 147n54
Sufi ideals illustrated by, 79n24
Sufi-ruler embodiment of true, 2
‘Ubād Allāh Aḥrār on, 38n18
virtues necessary for, 49–50. See also Jāmī, justice, King of ancient Greece
Kirmānī, ‘Aṭā’ Allāh, Khvājā, 42
Kitāb al-asfār al-arbaʿa, 12n15
Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya (Abū Bakr Ṭhrānī-Isfahānī), 24, 28, 81, 83, 98, 163
Kitāb sīrat al-auliyā’ (al-Ḥakīm Tirmiẕī), 70n179
Kubrā, Abū Janāb Ahmad Najm al-Dīn, 96n59, 142n35, 153. See also Fawā’īḥ al-jamāl wa fawātiḥ al-jalāl
Kubravi order (= Kubraviyya), 84–85, 95, 96n59, 114
Kujuji, ‘Ali, Khvājā, 97
Kūzakunānī, Sunn Allāh, Maulānā, 4, 97, 98–100, 163
Lailī, 123–4, 167, 178–9
Lailī va Majnūn (Jāmī), 23n63, 40, 158
Lāla’ī, Badr al-Dīn Ahmad, Amīr, 84–85, 95–96, 97
Laṭāʾif-nāma (Sulṭān Muḥammad Fakhrī Haravī), 32n101, 120. See also Majūlis al-nafā’īs
Laranda, 82
Lārī, Rażī al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Ghafūr, 40n25, 96n59. See also Takmīla-i Nafaḥat al-uns
Lavā’īḥ (Jāmī), 41
Le Gall, Dina, 37–38, 97–98
Letter of Tansar, 35
Letter(s) of correspondence, 3, 33–34, 162
attributed to Giosafat Barbaro, 105
attributed to Qāzī Ḥusain Maibūdī, 96n64
collection of attributed to Jāmī, 33n108, 158
Jāmī addressed to Jahānshāh, 41n29
Jāmī addressed to Muslim rulers 33, 108–913
Jāmī addressed to Ūzūn Ḥasan, 108
Jāmī addressed to Yaʿqūb, 23, 24, 33, 62n134, 81, 108–9, 155, 163, 165
Mehmed II addressed to Ūzūn Ḥasan, 102
Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd Sāvajī addressed to Jāmī, 125n64

INDEX
Shams al-Dīn Muḥammad Lāhījī addressed to Āq Qoyūnlū, 113–4n9
Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā addressed to Qāsim Faiżbakhsh, 114
Sulṭān-Khalīl addressed to Ottomans, 103
Ūzūn Ḥasan addressed to Bāyazīd II, 86
Yaʿqūb addressed to Jāmī, 23, 24, 33–34, 62n134, 81, 107–9, 116–9, 158, 163
Losensky, Paul, 26n73, 116, 120
love (= Love): and theosophy of Ibn al-ʿArabī, 138–41
as mother of soul, 133
counterpoised by Reason, 148
Divine, 139, 140–1
for God, 139
mas̠navī by Ahlī Shīrāzī on, 26–27, 112–3
Natural, 139, 141
of Divine Spirit for Rational Soul, 137
of Salāmān for Absāl, 73, 139, 159
of Salāmān for Venus, 10, 134, 139, 140, 143, 153
purification of soul through, 22
realm of, 133
Spiritual, 139–40, 141
types of, 139, 141, 159
Yaʿqūb’s earthly, 127–8
Yaʿqūb’s true, 127–8
union of Reason and, 133–4. See also
Absāl
lower soul (= lower-self). See nafs
Lubb al-tavārīkh (Mīr Yaḥyā b. ʿAbd al-Laṭīf Qazvīnī), 24, 29, 130–1
lust, 9
as blameworthy act/trait, 72, 79
of Rational Soul for pleasure, 137
of Salāmān for Absāl, 3, 72, 77, 138, 148, 151, 152
of slave-girl for goldsmith, 138
restrained by justice, 47
sea of, 69
wine locus of, 8
women locus of, 8

Madīnat al-fāżila (Abū Naṣr Fārābī), 20150
Mahmūd (Ghaznavīd), 43
mahrīm, 102
Maibudi, Ḥusain, Qāzī, 96
Majālis al-nafāʾis (ʿAlī Shīr Navāʾī), 32, 115, 119, 120
Majālis al-ʿushshāq (Kamāl al-Dīn Ḥusain Gāzurgāhī), 24, 128
Majnūn, 123–4, 167, 178–9
Maktabdār, ‘Alāʾ al-Dīn Ābīzī, Maulānā, 99
malik al-shuʿarā, 114
Malikshāh (Saljuq), 19
Malikshāh, Muḥammad b. (Saljuq), 19
Maʾn, 199
Mansūr Beg Pürnāk, 113n7
Maṭṭiq al-tair (ʿAttār), 76n122
Magāmāt-i Jāmī (ʿAbd al-Vāṣiʿ Niẓāmī Bākharzī), 24, 30, 41–42
Magāmāt-i Mahmūdyāya (Khvāja Muʿīn al-Dīn), 155n92
maqbara, 102
Maqsūd b. Ūzūn Ḥasan Bāyandur, 113
Mardin, 83n7
Marwa, 170
Mashhad, 26
masnāvī(s): addressed to Yaʿqūb, 26–27, 112–3, 120n41
attributed to Idrīs Bidlīsī, 94, 124–5, 126–7
by Niẓāmī Ganjavī, 25, 158
comprising Haft aurang, 40, 157, 158
of Jāmī provoke mystical experience, 155n92
Salāmān va Absāl as, 16, 24, 43, 118, 161, 164
Subḥat al-abrār didactic, 70. See also Masnāvī-yi maʿnavī (Rūmī)
Masnāvī-yi maʿnavī (Rūmī): commentary by Jāmī on, 135
knowledge of Naqshbandis about, 102n91
mentioned in Salāmān va Absāl, 177
metaphor of mirror in, 76n122
quotation of in Salāmān va Absāl, 3–4, 21, 135–6, 148, 159, 161–2
recitation of by Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd Sāvāji, 125
Salāmān va Absāl and, 22, 135–8
Salāmān va Absāl same metre as, 4, 135, 159, 161
tale of Jewish king in, 77n217
tale of king and handmaiden/slave-girl in, 4, 22, 135, 159, 161
wet-nurse in, 134
master-disciple relationship, 23, 33, 81, 110, 134n4, 163. See also murīd, shaikh
maṭlaʾ, 122, 124
Maulānā Fażl Allāh, 120n40
Maulānā [Qāzī] Ḥasan [Ṣadr], 90–91, 101, 102, 123n59
Maulānā Humāʾī, 119n40
Maulānā Mirakī, 119–20n40
Maulānā Yārī, 119n40
INDEX

Mecca, 99, 170
Mehmed II (Ottoman), 42, 102
Meier, Fritz, 110
Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī (Muḥyī Gulshanī), 24, 31–2, 81, 123n59, 125, 163 poem attributed to Idris Biddisi in, 94, 124–5, 126–7 on conduct of Yaʿqūb, 94–95 on influence of Ibrāhīm Gulshanī, 90, 91, 92–93, 94 on Shiʿism of Sirāj al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Vahhāb, 96
Messiah, 197
metre(s), 4, 22, 135, 159, 161. See also ramal
milk: as symbol of spiritual knowledge, 134 milk-relations, 150. See also wet-nurse
mirror(s) for princes (= mirror of advice), 34, 42, 60n127, 94n51 classic/traditional, 21, 46, 49, 146 examples of mystical, 16–17 Salāmān va Absāl esoteric, 1, 16–21, 34, 43, 47, 156 Salāmān va Absāl as, 21, 22, 24, 34, 43, 49, 50, 52, 111, 118, 146, 155, 161, 162 Salāmān va Absāl mystical, 18, 22, 24, 47 to commemorate renunciation of wine-drinking, 23n59, 70. See also Akhlāq-i Jalālī, Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī, Akhlāq-i Muḥsinī, Āsār al-vuzarāʾ, Bahr-i favāʾid, Madīnat al-fāżila, Mirṣad al-ʿibād min al-mabdāʾ ilā al-maʿād, Naṣīḥat al-mulūk, Qābūs-nāma, Qānūn-i shāhanshāhī, Sāz va pīrāya-yi shāhān-i pūrmāya, Siyar al-mulūk, Tahẕīb al-akhlāq, Tuhfat al-mulūk, Zākhīrat al-mulūk, Mirṣad al-ʿibād min al-mabaddilā ilā al-maʿād, 17
Mirzā Yūsuf (Qarā Qoyůnlū), 101
Miskawaih, Abū ʿAlī b., 20, 50. See also Tahẕīb al-akhlāq
Moses, 88
muʿammā, 158
Mughal(s), 86n20, 116, 155n92
Muhājirī, Zahrā, 25, 26
Muḥammād al-Taqī, Īmām, 104n100
Muḥammād Lashkari, Shams al-Dīn (Bahmanī), 109n33
Muḥammād Pārsā, Khvāja, 104n132
Muḥammād, Prophet, 56, 60, 78, 89 and expression "ruler is shadow of God," 55 association of with ethical advice, 36 on ruler as shepherd, 51–52. See also hadith
Muḥammad Yahyā, Khvāja, 96n64 Muʿin Miʿmārī, Maulānā, 120n4 mulk, 10, 19, 46, 60n27 Mulla Ṣadrā, 121n5. See also Kitāb al-ASFAR al-arbaʿa mundus imaginalis. See ālam al-miṣāl muqarrab (pl. muqarrabān), 32, 39n20, 131n5, 120
murāqaba, 153
murid(s), 40, 62, 66, 81, 91, 110
murshid, 81
murshid-i kāmil, 137
Murshidiyya order, 38, 39n19 Müsā al-Kāẓim, Īmām, 104n100 mustaʿfī, 106
mutavalli, 32n100
Muẓaffar Mīr, Khvāja, 119
Muẓaffariyya hospice, 91
Musa al-Kāẓim, Īmām, 104n100
Mūsā-al-Kāẓim, Īmām, 104n100
mustaufi, 106
Muẓaffar Miʿmār, Khvāja, 119
mystical experience, 3, 15–16, 66, 139, 145 provoked by masnavīs of Jāmī, 155n92 of Salāmān, 143, 160
Nafaḥāt al-uns (Jāmī), 50, 158
al-nafas al-Rahmānī. See God's sigh
nafs, 72, 73, 75, 76, 134, 154 advice on subduing, 72–80 broken by court etiquette, 39 Salāmān va Absāl on subjugation of, 2, 20, 65, 162 under command of Active Intellect, 68 nafs al-ammāra bi-al-sūʾ, 2, 72, 75, 142, 162 nafs al-haywānī (= nafs-i haivān), 14, 68 nafs al-lawwāma, 2, 72, 73, 142, 162 nafs al-muṭmaʿānī, 2, 73, 142, 162 nafs-i gūyā, 14, 67, 68 nafs-i nāṭiqa, 12, 14, 162–3
Nakhchivānī, Niʿmat Allāh b. Shaikh Mahmūd, Bābā, 95, 96
naqs, 10, 66, 76, 147. See also sūrat
Naqshband, Bahāʾ al-Dīn, Khvāja, 28, 61–62, 104n102 Naqshbandiyya (= Naqshbandiyya): activities of in Tabriz, 30, 31, 95, 111 adherence of to shariʿa, 37, 70–71 affiliation with Jahrī brotherhood, 28 allusions to techniques of in Salāmān va Absāl, 152–5 as disposed to serving Ottomans, Timurids, 37 as interpreters of Ibn al-ʿArabī, 38, 102n91
as preeminent brotherhood in Khursan, Transoxiana, 95
as purveyors of Persian belles-lettres, 38
association of with rābīṭa, 62, 66, 147, 155
as un-official order of Timurids, 163
at Āq Qoyūnlū court, Tabriz, its environs, 95–100
doctrine(s) of, 23, 115, 147n53, 155, 163
engagement of in politics, 38, 162
influence of at Āq Qoyūnlū court, 4–5, 30, 31, 81, 90
influence of over Timurid rulers, 36
knowledge of about Mas̠navī-yi maʿnavī, 102n91
Khvājagān precursor of, 28n81
origin of name, 62
quietism of, 37n14
relevance of himmat to, 87, 163
relevance of talqīn to, 89
relevance of tauba/repentance to, 70, 71, 156n95
service of to rulers, 36–37, 38, 62
Silsilat al-ẕahab and adepts of, 40
spiritual technique(s)/practice(s) of, 62n134, 115, 147, 153, 155, 160, 163
Sultān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā initiated into, 40
Sunnī identity of, 37
tenet khalvat dar anjuman, 36–37, 38, 96
terminology, 115, 155
treatise on attributed to Jāmī, 154n86
by, 58n120, 89
Üzün Hasan and Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī not, 87–88, 89
writings of, 59, 74n200, 74n202, 154
Yaʿqūb not, 62n34, 155. See also Darvīsh Sirāj al-Dīn Qāsim, Faẓl Allāh b. Rūzbihān Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, Jāmī, Khvāja Bahāʾ al-Dīn Naqshband, Khvāja Khāvānd Maḥmūd, Khvāja ʿUbaid Allāh Aḥrār, Maulānā Shahīdī Qumī, Rashaḥāt-i ʿain al-ḥayāt naṣīḥat (pl. nasāʾīḥ), 33, 36, 39, 42, 74, 118
Naṣīḥat al-mulūk (Muḥammad Ghazālī), 19, 44n43, 47, 51–52, 56n105, 126n68
accordance between Salāmān va Absāl and, 1, 18
Bahrām Gūr, Rāst-ravishn in, 53
"circle of justice" in, 45
homily about David in, 48–49
ruler as "shadow of God" in, 55
Sasanian kingship reflected in, 35–36
statement "religion and kingship brothers" in, 60n27
Našriyya tomb complex, 103, 105, 152
Naubar, 98
Navaṭī, ʿAli Shīr, Mīr, 27n77, 32, 114, 115. See also Majālis al-najāʿīs al-Nawādir (Ibn al-ʿArabī), 12n15
Neo-Platonism, 12, 66–67, 133
Nicholson, Reynold A., 22n56, 135
Nile river, 170, 192
Niʿmat Allāh, Nūr al-Dīn b. ʿAbd Allāh Vālī, Shāh, 85
Niʿmat Allāh al-Thānī, Naʿīm al-Dīn, Shāh, 85
Niʿmat Allāhī order, 85
nīsba, 154, 155
nishānchī, 90n36, 94
Nizām al-Dīn Khvāfī, 52
Nizām al-Mulk, 18, 19, 43, 48
attribution by of maxims to Prophet, 51–2, 55–56n104
on need for ruler to seek advice, 36. See also Siyār al-mulūk (Siyāsat-nāma)
Nizāmī ʿArūżī, 42. See also Chahār maqāla
Nizāmī Ganjavī, 24–25, 26n74, 88n26, 135n11, 158. See also Iskandar-nāma, Khamsa
Noah, 187
Nūr al-Dīn (Zangid), 60n27
Oriental Institute of the Academy of Sciences of Uzbekistan, 25
Österreichische Nationalbibliothek, 121
Ottoman(s), 7, 37n15, 94n51, 98, 105
attempts to lure Jāmī, 41–42
conceptualizations of governance, 86n20
Darvīsh Qāsim envoy to, 102, 103
Naqshbandīs disposed to serving, 37
relations with Āq Qoyūnlū, 91. See also Bāyazīd II, Meḥmed II
Ottoman Turkish, 31
pādshāh-i ʿādil. See just ruler
paimān, 18, 44
Panchatantra, 35
pand, 17, 35–39, 50, 74
pand-nāma, 35
Paradise, 79, 94, 196, 197, 211, 219
Absāl signification of, 11
parvānchī, 32, 102
Parvīz. See Khusrau II Parvīz (Sasanian)
Paul, Jürgen, 30
Perfect Man. See al-insān al-kāmil
Persepolis, 89
pīr (pl. pīrān), 36, 68n68, 137, 154
INDEX

plague, 74, 99, 130
Plato, 50, 51. See also The Republic
Pleiades, 129, 197
prophet(s), 9n6, 19, 39, 88n25, 134–5. See also David, Khidr, Muḥammad Pūrnāk (clan), 113n7
Qābūs-nāma (Kay Kaʿūs b. Iskandar), 1, 18–19, 47n60
advice of Anūshirvān in, 50–51 "circle of justice" in, 45
ruler compared to shepherd in, 52
vāzīr according to, 54
Qalandarīs, 86
Qānūn-i shāhanshāhī (Ḥakīm al-Dīn Idrīs Bidlīsī), 94n51
Qārābāgh, 90, 92n45
qaṣīda (s), 26, 40, 108n131, 112, 113, 158
Qāsim al-Anvār, Shāh, 84n12
Qāsim Beg Pūrnāk, 113
Qāsim, Sirāj al-Dīn, Darvīsh: account of by Giosafat Barbaro, 105–7
accused of inciting riots, 104–5
as confidant of Ūzūn Ḥasan, 101
as envoy to Ottoman court, 102, 103
association with Ūzūn Ḥasan, 101, 105–6
as trustee of Naṣriyya complex, 103, 105
awarded post mihmāndār, 101
blessings sought by Meḥmed II, 102
commitment to Yaʿqūb, 103
confession of Ūzūn Ḥasan to, 102
engagement in Sufism, 100, 104
first ever Naqshbandī in European source, 105
involvement at Āq Qoyūnlū court, 4, 163
Jāmī welcomed to Tabriz by, 102
loyalty to Mīrzā Yūsuf, 101
piety of, 100
pilgrimage of to Shiʿite sites, 103–4
promoted to parvanchī, 102
murder of, 27n78, 100–7, 111
spiritual development of, 103–4
spiritual master not indicated, 104
Qaṭrān, 200
Qāyīt Bāy (Mamluk), 85n15, 129
qāẓi, 101, 120, 121n49, 122, 124, 126
qāẓī al-qużāt (= chief qāẓī) 90, 91, 96, 100–1, 125
Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī as, 121, 122n52
Qazvīnī, Darvīsh Dahākī, 120
Qazvīnī, Shah-Muḥammad b. Mubārak, Ḥakīm, 24, 32–33, 115, 119–20, 123, 127n69, 131n88, 164. See also Hasht biḥiṣṭ Qazvīnī, Yahyā b. ʿAbd al-Laṭīf, Mīr, 24, 29, 130. See also Lubb al-tavārīkh qībla, 81, 154
qīʿa, 41n29, 122
Qizilbash, 98n72, 104n103, 115
Qum, 101
Qurʿān, 11, 88n26, 96, 108n127, 108n128, 142n33, 165n2
Day of Covenant in, 74
in connection with silent zikr, 89, 109n36
investiture of Adam in, 64, 76
on "trust" between God and man, 77
recitation of by Qāzi ʿĪsā, 125
Solomon in, 98n5
statement "consult them in affairs!" in, 36
statement on kingship in, 61
story of Joseph in, 130
three conditions of soul in, 2, 73
use of term "sultān" in, 55n102
verse on obedience in, 56–57, 85
verse on repentance in, 72
Qushairī, Abū al-Qāsim ʿAbd al-Karīm b. Hawāzin, 70, 71. See also al-Risāla al-Qushairīyya quvvā-yi jīsmī, 12
raḥīta, 4, 62, 66, 110, 147, 153–4. See also Naqshbandi(s)
Rakhsh, 74, 172, 209
ramal musaddas maḥzhūf, 135
Rashahāt-i aʿin al-ḥayāt (Fakhr al-Dīn ʿAlī b. Vāʿiẓ Kāshīfī), 24, 31, 81, 163
on ḥajj pilgrimage of Jāmī, 41, 42
on importance of Darvīsh Qāsim, 102
statements attributed to ʿUbaid Allāh Ahrār in, 153–4
Rāst-ravishn, 52–53
Raushānī, ʿUmar, Dada: accused of being “Fuṣūsī”, 91–92
as focus of modern scholarship, 82, 163
as preceptor of Idrīs (brother of Ūzūn Hasan), 91
association with Ūzūn Hasan, 82
as spiritual master of Ibrāhīm Gulshanī, 91
attendance of at Darvīshābād khānaqāh, 97
conflict between Qāzi ʿĪsā and, 93
disciples of in Āq Qoyūnlū household, 91
dispute over estate of, 92n45
Ḥusain Chalabi disciple of, 123n59
journey of to Āq Qoyūnlū court, 91
pious endowment for, 91
relations between Maḥmūd Nahchivānī and, 96

visitations by Yaʿqūb to shrine of, 93

Raużāt al-jinān wa jannāt al-janān (Ḥāfiẓ Husain Karbalāʾī-Tabrīzī), 24, 30–31, 81, 84, 163
description of Darvishābād khānaqāh in, 95, 97
description of Darvīsh Qāsim in, 100, 101, 102, 103–5, 106

on ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī, 82n3

on Ṣunʿ Allāh Kūzakunānī, 98, 99

on Yaʿqūb and ʿUmar Raushānī shrine, 93

Raużāt al-salāṭīn, Taẕkira-i (Sulṭān Muḥammad Fakhrī Haravī), 24, 33, 127, 128–9

Rayy, 180

rāz, 136. See also sirr

Rāżī, Fakhr al-Dīn Muhammad b. ʿUmar, 11, 45. See also Jāmīʾ al-ʿulām

Rāżī, Najm al-Dīn, 17, 96n59. See also Miḥṣad al-ʿibād min al-mabdāʾ ilā al-maʿād

reason (= Reason) 39, 47

as father of soul, 133
counterpoised by Love, 148, 151
realm of, 133
religion-aquiring, 10, 51
symbolized by King, 134
union of with Love, 133, 141. See also Universal Reason

religion: as [twin] brother of kingship. See kingship: as [twin] brother of religion

repentance: according to Ibn al-ʿArabī, 72

as first step in Sufi path, 2, 70, 79

as theme of Salāmān va Absāl, 2, 69, 70, 156, 162

definition in Salāmān va Absāl, 69, 162

depends on determination, 71

in classic Sufi manuals, 2, 70

in Subḥat al-abrār, 70

depended on by God, 71–72

king finds benefits of, 71

need for necessitated by base instincts, 72

occurs when soul becomes nafs al-muṭmaʾānna, 73, 162

of Abū al-Muḥṣin Mīrzā, 70

of Salāmān, 10, 72–73, 151, 152

of ʿUṣūn Allāh Kūzakunānī directed by Jāmī, 99

relevance of to Naqshbandīs, 70, 71, 156n95

role of in mystical enlightenment, 69–72

Sufi literature on, 72. See also Sūltān Abū al-Muẓaffar Yaʿqūb, tauba al-Risāla al-Qushairiyya (Abū al-Qāsim al-Qushairī), 2, 70, 71

Risāla fi al-qadar (Ibn Sinā), 11n10

Risāla-i nāʾya (Jāmī), 135n9

Risālat al-ṭair (Ibn Sinā), 72

rooster, 78, 79

Rūdiqāt, 84

rūḥ (≈ rūḥī), 68, 124, 137

Ruha, 83

Rūm, 128

Rūmi, ‘Ali, Maulānā, 97

Rūmi, Jalāl al-Dīn, 4, 22, 134–6, 137, 159, 161

as “that gnostic” in Salāmān va Absāl, 201
devotion of to Shams-i Tabrīzī, 81

“Divine Light” according to, 135

explanation of murder of goldsmith, 138

inspired by hadīth, 76n210

love mysticism of, 138

quotation of by Jāmī, 3–4, 21, 135–6, 148, 159, 161–2

reference of to Sufi saint as dāya, 134.

See also Maṣnawī-ye maʿnāvī

Rūmī, Yaʿqūb, Darvish, 97

Rustam, 74

Rypka, Jan, 7

sabk-i Hindī, 116

ṣabr, 49

Saʿdī, 26n74, 40. See also Gulistān

ṣadr, 91n42, 125, 127, 151

Ṣafavī order, 123

Ṣafavid(s), 63n39, 85n16, 97, 123n58

chronicle(s) written during era of, 24, 126, 130, 131n88

poetry dedicated by Ahlī Shīrāzī to, 27n74, 113

Rūzbihān Khunjī-Iṣfahānī on Shiʿism of, 27n78

Ṣunʿ Allāh Kūzakunānī (un)affected by, 98n72, 99–100

Sage, 8–10, 65, 131, 147

acts on behalf of Active Intellect, 143

amalgamation of into Salāmān, 134

as corresponding to physician-sage (in Maṣnawī-ye maʿnāvī) 4, 136–7

as instrument of King’s himmat, 152

association with faiż-i bālā/faiż-i ilāhī, 12, 67, 146, 151

INDEX 269
Sage cont.
as symbol of Gabriel, 143
as symbol of Qāzī ‘Īsā, 3, 22, 146, 151–2, 160, 164
condemnation of lust by, 8
counsels Salāmān, 9, 39, 73, 75, 76–7, 79, 152
creates image of Absāl for Salāmān, 10, 143
describes Venus to Salāmān, 10, 69, 143, 152–3
draws semen from King, 8
himmat of, 143, 153
impresses Venus onto Salāmān’s heart, 62n133, 134, 138, 153, 160
initiates mystical experience of Salāmān, 143, 160
instruction of for King, 10
is made companion of King, 8
King seeks help of, 10
obedience of Salāmān to, 10, 134, 152
represents Sufi shaikh, 134, 143
Ṣāḥibābād, 103
Sahl al-Tustarī, 134
saint(s), 29, 59, 64, 70, 84, 137
as true vicegerent of God, 162, 163
divine physician as, 136, 137
hadith about, 108
himmat associated with, 9n6
Jāmī referred to as, 117
Naqshbandi, 31
perfect, 65, 134, 135n7, 137
Perfect Man as, 64
Salāmān becomes, 3
Sufi shaikh as, 135
sainthood, 70, 80
Salāmān, 8–10, 65, 131, 147
abandonment of Absāl by, 2, 143
abandonment of Sage by, 9
Absāl leaps into fire with, 69
Absāl separated by King from, 72
Absal’s strategems, magic on, 148
absorption of King by, 134
achieves gnosis, 3, 159
amalgamation of Sage into, 134
as corresponding to rational soul, 12, 67, 73, 137, 139, 162–3
as custodian of Adam’s treasure, 76
as descendant of Adam, 76
as emblifying plight of humanity, 74–75
as God’s perfect and final creation, 76
as microcosm, 76
as representing (three aspects of) soul, 2, 73
as sibling of Absāl, 13
as signification of Adam, 11
as symbol of perfect saint, 134
as symbol of Ya’qūb, 3, 22, 136, 146, 147–8, 159, 164
attraction of Absāl to, 9
becomes khalīfat Allāh, 159
becomes own sage, 134
becomes own wet-nurse, 134
becomes saint, 3
birth of from tree, 13
characters collapse into, 133–4
correspondence of handmaiden/
slave-girl to, 4
defiance of, 40, 79
distraught at death of Absāl, 10, 69
dream-vision of Venus, 3, 144
enthronement of, 144, 159
etymology of name, 11n10
experiences fanā’, 144
flees into wilderness, 10
forsakes King, 9, 73–74
given to Absāl, 9
gives heart to divine beloved, 10
heart of, 62n133, 77, 134, 138, 143, 153
in al-Nawādir, 12n15
incestuous affair between Absāl and, 65, 150
in Ḥayy ibn Yaqẓān, 14
in Iskārāt wa al-tanbīhāt, 11, 12
in Kitāb al-asfār al-arbaʿa, 12n15
intellect of, 147
invested with crown and throne, 10
is fated to love Absāl, 9, 74, 75
King conscience of, 151
King counsels, 10, 39, 52, 53, 54, 73–74, 79, 151
King gives final testament to, 10, 46n53, 50, 51
kingship true destiny of, 10, 151
kingship of, 147
love of for Absāl, 73, 139, 159
love of for Venus, 10, 134, 139, 140, 143, 153
lust of for Absāl, 3, 9, 72, 77, 138, 141, 148, 151, 152
made Absāl’s eternal companion, 142
memory of Absāl in heart of, 134, 138, 153
moral reformation of, 164
mystical experience of initiated by Sage, 143, 160
name reflects perfection, 9, 68
obedience of to Sage, 10, 134, 152
preoccupation of with Absāl, 74, 140, 141
psychological state of, 143
renunciation of Absāl by, 2, 22, 39, 148, 152, 159, 163, 164
renunciation of kingship by, 13
repentance of, 10, 72–73, 151, 152
return to King by, 4, 10, 69, 73
Sage inner guide of, 134
Sage creates image of Absāl for, 10, 143
Sage counsels, 9, 39, 73, 75, 76–77, 79, 152
Sage describes Venus to, 10, 69, 143, 152–3
Sage impresses Venus onto, 62n133, 134, 138, 153, 160
similarities between Adam and, 77, 140, 144
spiritual transformation of, 2, 134, 143, 151
subjects self to trial, 142
summoned by King, Sage, 9, 39
unharmed by fire, 10
union/carnal union between Absāl and, 69, 141, 149–50
urged to realize noble origin, 9
urged to renounce libertinage, 9
Salāmān and Absāl, tale of: as autobiography of soul, 133
Greek version of, 4, 12, 14, 65n149, 133, 159, 161
Ibn Sīnā’s version of, 13–14, 145, 159
Jāmī’s version of, 4, 11, 12, 16, 17, 118, 138, 159, 161
mystical hermeneutics of, 145
provenance of, 11–13, 161
represents myth of Ḥanīfī Ḥırān, 75
Salāmān and Absāl, tale of: as autobiography of soul, 133
Greek version of, 4, 12, 14, 65n149, 133, 159, 161
Ibn Sīnā’s version of, 13–14, 145, 159
Jāmī’s version of, 4, 11, 12, 16, 17, 118, 138, 159, 161
mystical hermeneutics of, 145
provenance of, 11–13, 161
represents myth of Ḥanīfī Ḥırān, 75
as art imitating life, 131, 164
as commemoration of Yaʿqūb’s repentance, 23, 155, 156, 163, 164
as (complex) allegory, 1, 46, 65, 66, 111, 144–5, 159, 161, 164
as “curious,” “silly,” “crude,” “grotesque,” 7
as esoteric mirror for princes, 1, 16–21, 34, 43, 47, 156
as historical allegory, 3, 22, 24, 65, 112, 131, 144–6, 161, 164
as Jāmī’s final/most complex masnavī, 164
as “lesser achievement,” 7, 65, 161
as manual for Sufi(s), 66, 162
as mirror for princes, 21, 22, 24, 34, 43, 49, 50, 52, 111, 118, 146, 155, 161, 162
as mystical mirror for princes, 18, 22, 24, 47
as not “trite,” 145
as romantic allegory, 17
as “simple and banal,” 133
“circle of justice” not in, 46
concept of justice in, 8, 10, 46
contains historical information, 1, 3, 4
contains no vulgarity, 150
correcting works of advice to, 19
critical editions of, 25
date of completion of, 33, 34, 117, 155–8
definition of repentance in, 69, 162
depicts mystical experience, 3
dissimilarity between Akhlāq-i Naṣīrī and, 61
dissimilarity between Siyar al-mulāk and, 61
dissimilarity between Siyar al-mulak and, 61
effect of according to Jāmī, 2, 5, 21, 34, 79, 111, 123, 146, 155, 162, 163
effect of according to Jāmī, 2, 5, 21, 34, 79, 111, 123, 146, 155, 162, 163
exemplifies Jāmī’s misogyny, 149n62
explicates Sufi path, 136, 137, 161
first level/plane of meaning, 1, 2
goal of according to Jāmī, 66
historical significance of, 22–23
“homoerotic subtext” of, 149n62
implies asceticism subdues carnal nature, 79
al-insān al-kāmil in, 162
Salāmān va Absāl (Jāmī) cont.

Jāmī’s explication of, 65, 66, 67–69, 136, 137, 146, 147
King’s vaṣīyyat in, 51, 53
“man as microcosm” in, 20
Mas̠navī-yi maʿnavī mentioned in, 177
modern scholarship on, 3, 7, 17, 23, 65, 155, 161, 164
Naqshbandi terminology in, 115, 155
narrative context of, 8–11
not mentioned by Daulatshāh Samarqandī, 158
not mentioned by Rūzbihān Khunjī-Iṣfahānī, 117, 158
not only mas̠navī addressed to Yaʿqūb, 113
on ruler’s need for Sufi prayers/blessings, 58–59, 61, 64, 162
on subjugation of nafs, 2, 20, 65, 162
on vażīr/vizierate, 10, 52, 53, 54
on Yaʿqūb’s attainment of sainthood, 65
patterned on Mas̠navī-yi maʿnavī, 22, 135, 159, 161
provenance of allegory, 11–13
quotation of Mas̠navī-yi maʿnavī in, 3–4, 21, 135–6, 148, 159, 161
reason(s) for composing, 2, 3, 171939, 21, 22–23, 46, 49, 61, 64–65, 66, 123, 131, 144, 147–8, 155–6, 157, 158, 159, 164
repentance overriding theme of, 2, 69, 156, 162
representation of Qāżī ʿĪsā in, 4, 146
revised translation of, 25, 167–234
ruler as “shadow of God” in, 55
Rūmī as “that Gnostic” in, 170
same metre as Mas̠navī-yi maʿnavī, 4, 135, 159, 161
second plane of meaning, 2
sections on tauba, 71
similarities with Niẓāmī’s tale of Archimedes with Chinese slave-girl, 135

Salāmān va Absāl (Jāmī) cont.

symbols of Yaʿqūb and his court in, 146–52, 159
tHEME OF GOOD COUNSEL in, 35–40
to familiarize Yaʿqūb with Naqshbandiyya, 115, 155
union of Reason and Love theme of, 133–4
Venus in, 67, 146–7, 152–3
visionary experience in, 141–4
waḥdat al-wujūd reflected in, 2–3
Yūsuf likened to Joseph in, 174–5
Salāmān wa Absāl (Ibn Sinā), 12n15, 15, 118, 161
Saljuq(s), 19, 43, 52n83, 59n124
Saljūqshāh bt. Kūr Muḥammad Begum, 91, 123, 128
Samarqand, 28, 37, 129, 137
Samarqandī, Burhān al-Dīn, 38n17
Samarqandī, Daulatshāh, 24, 33, 158.
See also Taẕkirat al-shuʿarāʾ
Samarra, 104n100
Sāmīrī, religion of, 129
Sām Mirzā Ṣafavī, 24, 32, 129, 130. See also Tuhfa-i Sāmī
Sanāʾī, Ḥakīm, 135n10
Sanjar (Saljuq), 19, 43
Sarāy Khātūn, 101
Sarʾrishta-i ṭarīqa-i Khvājagān (Jāmī), 154n86
Sasanian(s), 1, 43, 52n83, 67n161, 73
model of kingship, 19, 35, 36, 46, 60
recommendation that ruler emulate, 35–6
shariʿa, Zoroastrian norms of, 51
tradition of andarz-nāma, āyīna-nāma, 44
Sāvajī, ʿAlī, 94
Sāvajī, Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd Sāvajī, Shaikh: alienation of from court, 126
appointment of to amīr-i dīvān, 121
as boon-companion/muqarrab of Yaʿqūb, 32, 130, 120
as parvanchi, 32
as poet in Laṭāʾif-nāma, 120
ḥilm of, 124
influence of contrasted with Qāżī ʿĪsā, 124–5
influence of Ibrāhīm Gulshani over, 94
in poem attributed to Idrīs Bidlīsī, 94, 124–5, 126–7
letters to Jāmī from, 125n64
part of power matrix, 32
Persian poetry attributed to, 121n48
recitation of Mas̠navī-yi maʿnavī by, 125
Sketch portrait of, 121n48
Sāvajī, Ṣafī al-Dīn ʿĪsā, Qāżī: as depicted in taẕkira literature, 131
as embattled figure, 122, 124, 126
as mentor of Yaʿqūb, 3, 22, 32–33, 151, 152
as patron of Persian belles-lettres, 111, 131, 164
as poet in *Laṭāʾif-nāma*, 120
as ṣadr, 125, 151
as vazīr, 3, 7n2, 22, 111, 120, 146, 151, 164–5
attachment to Ibrāhīm Gulshanī, 125–6
attempt to abolish *tamghā*, 121
"back to sharīʿa" campaign of, 93, 121–2
banishment from court, 125–7, 164
centralizing measures of, 93
conflict between ʿUmar Raushanī and,
 the control of over administration, 121
Hasht bihisht entry on, 122–3, 126, 164
hostility of Rūzbihān Khunjī-Iṣfahānī toward, 126
ʿilm of, 124
influence contrasted with Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd Sāvajī, 124–5
influence of Ibrāhīm Gulshanī over, 92, 94, 125–6
influence of on administration, 29
in *Habib al-siyar fi akhbār-i afrād-i bashar*, 29
in *Menākib-i Ibrāhīm-i Gülşenī*, 94, 124, 126
in poem attributed to Idrīs Bidlīsī, 94, 124–5, 126–7
intervention of for ʿUmar Raushanī and Ibrāhīm Gulshanī, 92n45
likened to Jesus, 122, 124
melancholic nature of, 120, 152
mocking tribute to, 122
multiple roles and titles of, 151n73
neglect of affairs of state by, 120, 126
part of power matrix, 32
Persian poetry attributed to, 120–1, 121n48, 122, 127n69
plot to depose, 92
preoccupation of with poetry, 120, 121
reception of Timurid delegation by, 29, 118–9
recitation of Qurʾān by, 125
reforms of to *suyūrghāl* system, 93n50, 121
relationship between Yaʿqūb and, 32–33
representation of in *Salāmān va Absāl*, 4, 146
role of in Yaʿqūb’s repentance, 152, 164
romance/marriage between Yaʿqūb’s sister and, 111–2, 123, 126, 127n69, 150, 164
Sage symbol of, 22, 146, 151–2, 164
shaikh-like role of, 160
similarities of to Khvāja Majd al-Dīn Muḥammad, 121n50
sketch portrait of, 121n48
*Tuḥfa-i Sāmī* entry on, 126, 164
ʿUmar Raushani brought before, 91–92.
See also ʿAlī Sāvajī, Sage
*Saʿād va pirāya-yi shāhān-i purmāya* (Afzāl al-Dīn Kāshānī), 16–17
Secretum Secretorum, 35
Selim “the Grim” (Ottoman), 33
Shabistari, Maḥmūd, 94n51, 96.
See also Gulshan-i rāz
shadow of God on earth: God as shadow master, 56, 57
*[just] ruler as*, 20, 39, 55–57, 157n98, 162, 163
khilafat Allāh as, 20, 56n108, 79n224, 162, 163
Perfect Man as, 56n108, 79n224, 162
perfect Sufi as, 66
Sufi saint as, 162, 163
Shāh-Beg Khātūn, 41n30
Shahīdī Qumī, Maulānā: affiliation of with Āq Qoyūnlū, 4, 26, 112, 164
as disciple of Jāmī, 40n25, 115, 116
as poet laureate of Yaʿqūb, 114, 115n21
Shāh-nāma (Firdausi), 74, 150n71
Shāh Quli Beg, 112
shaikh: image of, 4, 62, 66, 107, 147, 154
Jāmī as, 4, 66, 110, 160, 163
Khalvatī, 82, 90, 91, 94n53, 123n59, 125, 163
Khīḍr as, 88, 134
Kubravī, 95
Naqshbandī, 4, 27n78, 62, 87, 99n75, 102, 103, 104n102, 106, 107, 110, 153, 154, 155, 163
Niʿmat Allāhī, 85n16
Nūrbakhshī, 114
Qāzī ʿĪsā as, 160
Sage as, 134, 143
Solomon as, 134
Sufi, 28, 38, 39, 60, 61, 66, 97, 110n140, 134, 135, 143, 146–7, 153n81
Venus symbol of, 146–7
Zoroastrian sage symbol of, 134
shāikh al-Īslām, 84, 95, 96, 123n58
Shams al-Tabrīzī, 81
Shām’ va parvāna (Ahli Shirāzī), 26–27, 112–3
Shāmī, ʿAbd al-Rahmān, Bābā, 28, 82–83
Sharbatī, Ḥāfiẓ (“Shams al-Dīn”)
Muḥammad, 117
INDEX

sharʿiʿa, 37, 107n122
adherence of Naqshbandīs to, 37, 70–71
campaign of Qāẓī ʿĪsā to reassert, 93, 121–2, 124
norms of Zoroastrianism and, 51
role of in "circle of justice," 45–46
ruler's implementation of, 59
Ūzūn Ḥasan defender of, 86. See also
Islamic law

sharm, 49

shepherd, ruler as, 51, 52
Shīʿite(s), Twelver, 37, 64, 96, 104, 114, 142n33
Shīʿism, Twelver/ithnā ʿasharī, 96, 98n72

Shiraz, 26, 28, 85n16, 90n37, 112n2, 119n40

Shīrīn, 73, 140, 167, 218, 219

Shīrūya, 73–74, 79, 209, 218

Shīrvān, 41

Shīrvānī, Yaḥyā, Sayyid, 82
Shīrvān-shāh(s), 123

shajāʿat, 49

silsila, 37
Silsilat al-ẕahab (Jāmī), 25–26, 40, 42–43, 76n209
Sirius star, 173

sīr, 58, 66, 136. See also rāz
Siyar al-mulūk (Siyāsat-nāma) (Niẓām al-Mulk), 44n43, 56n104
accordance between Salāmān va Absāl and, 1, 18
Bahrām Gūr, Rāst-ravishn in, 52
dissimilarity of with Salāmān va Absāl, 61
on consulting wise men, 36
statement on just infidel in, 48
statement "religion and kingship brothers" in, 60n127

sīyāsat, 19, 45–46, 109
Solomon, prophet, 91n15, 14, 89, 113, 134, 191
soul(s): alchemy of, 149
allegory about body and, 145
answered God on Day of Covenant, 74
as born of Father without mate, 68
as child of Reason and Love, 133
as fallen, 78
as Fravarti, 13n19
as ruler of kingdom of man, 69
becomes noble, 69
body lives by way of, 68
derives pleasure through senses, 68
desire of for Intelligence above it, 153n81
divine physician heals, 135
each should recreate drama of Adam, 79
exile from Paradise, 11
inclination toward pleasure, 69
infatuation of, 12
in state of blame in Salāmān va Absāl, 73
of Salāmān, 69, 143, 149
of Yaʾqūb, 109, 149
powerlessness of, 75
pre-existence of, 12n15
purification of, 22, 65, 69, 75, 135, 138, 145, 159, 162
renunciation of pleasures by, 163
return of to origins, 12, 16, 69, 75, 79, 133
Salāmān symbol of, 73, 139
tale of Salāmān and Absāl
autobiography of, 133
three aspects of, 2, 73, 142
transformation of, 2, 15, 16. See also
nafs, nafs al-ammāra bi-al-sūʾ, al-nafs al-ḥayawānī, nafs al-lawwāma, nafs al-muṭmaʾinna, nafs-i gūyā, nafs-i nāṭiqa

Subḥat al-abrār (Jāmī), 25n63, 40, 70, 158

Sufi(s): 'Abd Allāh Anṣārī as, 50
achieves perfection through tauba, 70
advice of, 29, 39, 58, 64
Āq Qoyūnlū court populated by, 39
asceticism of, 164
as elite/elect of society, 136
as frenzied lover, 83
as influencing dynastic fortunes, 59, 84n9
as nourished by "milk" of knowledge, 134
aspirant relinquishes attachments, 134
as “those without heads and feet,” 82, 87
attached to Āq Qoyūnlū household, 163
Bāyandur females married to, 123
beliefs of about love, 138
biographical dictionaries of, 32, 127
blessings of (see also baraka), 2, 61, 62, 107
brotherhoods/organizations, 80, 82
classic manuals written by, 2, 70
conception of ʿālam al-misāl, 142n33
devotional practices of, 153
ethics, 21
fiscal immunities for, 93
gatherings at Darvīshābād khānaqāh, 97
groups attached to Yaʾqūb, 82
hagiographies, 29, 30
heart of, 58, 59
influence of at Āq Qoyūnlū court, 30, 62, 162
influence of over Timurid rulers, 36
in pre-Safavid Tabriz, 97
interest of Āq Qoyūnlū in, 81, 87n24, 111
knowledge according to, 42
leaders of, 36, 86
literature on repentance by, 72
Mahmūd Nakhchivānī on writings by, 96
mirrors for princes written by, 16–17
mystical concepts, 17, 20, 21, 71, 76, 79n224, 109n134, 135n9
mystical doctrine, 79, 128
mystical experience of, 155n92
[mystical] tradition, 3, 9n6, 65n150, 76, 144
mystical transformation of, 128
on Mongol invasion, 88n26
patronage of by Yaʿqūb, 28, 31, 80, 82, 86, 93, 107–8, 117, 160, 162, 163
patronage of by Üzūn Hasan, 82–86
perfect, 66, 144
poets, 134, 150n70
political activities of, 81
political importance of, 21, 86, 162
prayer(s) of, 58–65, 162
purification of, 136
recognition of how God “returns” to Himself, 141, 142
reference of to eighth clime, 63–64
represented by lily, 110n137
royal patronage of, 1, 2, 21, 38
ruler as, 2
ruler’s devotion to, 59
Salāmān va Absāl as manual for, 66, 162
spiritual advancement of, 15, 39
spiritual advice for, 65–66
spiritual state of, 46
spiritual teachings, 110
spiritual techniques, 160
ṭarīqa-affiliated, 28, 163
tensions between traditionalists and, 92
transcends self-hood, 134
types of love according to, 141–2
use of rābiṭa by, 147
use of term ribāṭ by, 127
“Uvaisī,” 104
writings about sūrat and maʿnā by, 65n66
writings by, 162. See also hospice(s), Khalvatī(s), master-disciple, relationship, Naqshbandī(s), saint(s), shaykh, Sufi path
Sufi path (= mystical path): as gnostic self-realization, 22
final stages of, 144
in conjunction with serving rulers, 38–39
Khîdr initiated aspirants into, 88
Naqshbandī, 155
purification of soul equated with, 65
repentance first step on, 70, 156, 162
Salāmān and Absāl tales allegories of, 15
Salāmān va Absāl explicates, 136, 137, 161
secret of, 66
Sufi-prince, 162
Sufism: ascetic tradition in, 72
books on by Jāmī, 158
emphasis on in Akhlāq-i Jalālī, 86
engagement in by Darvish Qāsim, 100
interest of Āq Qoyūnlū in, 80
interest of Jalâl Dîn Davâni in, 38
lexicon of, 84n9, 88–89, 107, 136n15, 143, 156
moderate form of, 82
tract by Mahmūd Nakhchivānī on, 96n61
visionary experience in, 143
ṣuhbat, 107–8
See also Naqshbandī(s)
Suhrawardi, Ābū al-Najīb ‘Abd al-Qāhir, 39n19
Suhrawardi order, 28, 39n19
Suhrawardi, Shihâb al-Dîn Abû Hafs ‘Umar, 153. See also ‘Awârif al-maʿârif
Suhrawardi, Shihâb al-Dîn Yahyâ, 12–13, 63–64, 66n157, 67, 142. See also ‘Aql-i surkh
Sulamî, Abû ‘Abd al-Raḥmân, 50n75, 158n106. See also Ṭabaqāt al-ṣūfiyya
Sultân-Abû Saʿîd (Timurid), 37, 85n16
sultanate, 10, 50n74, 52, 84, 88, 126
Sultân-Husain Bâyqarâ (Timurid), 32, 33, 158, 164
as initiated into Naqshbandi order, 40
dedication of Akhlāq-i Muhsinî to, 23n59, 70
letters from Jâmi to, 108n33
letter to Qâsim Faizbakhsh from, 114
treaty between Üzûn Hasan and, 90
Sultân-Khalîl (Āq Qoyûnlû): ‘Alî Baihaqi sent to Istanbul by, 91
Akhlāq-i Jalâlî dedicated to, 20–21
‘Arz-i sipâh-i Üzûn Hasan dedicated to, 87n24
as governor of Fars, 90n37
chronogram by Ahlî Shirâzî for, 113
description of by Jalâl Dîn Davânî, 89
letter to Ottomans from, 103
succession struggle between Yaʿqūb and, 103, 147
Sunni(s), 28, 37, 114
supernal emanation. See faʿız, faʿız-i bālā, faʿız-i ilāhī
ṣūrat: as constituent part of humans, 47n60
as form of divine being, 139
as image of Absāl, 45, 143
as image of Sufi shaykh, 62, 66, 147, 154
as outer form of story, 65
as representation of spiritual state, 46
juxtaposition of with maʿnā, 65–66. See also naqsh
Surūsh, angel, 78
suyūrghāl(s), 41n28, 83–84, 93, 94n53, 121, 128
Ṭabaqāt al-ṣūfiyya (ʿAbd Allāh Anṣārī), 50n75
Ṭabaqāt al-ṣūfiyya (Abū ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Sulamī), 50n75, 158n106
Ṭabāṭabāʾī, ʿAbd al-Ghaffār (= Rafīʿ al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Ghaffār), 84
Tabriz, 4, 22, 26, 30, 31, 33, 42, 81, 82, 84, 91, 92n45, 95, 97, 98, 99–100, 102, 103, 104, 106–7, 111, 112, 113, 114, 116, 118–9, 123, 152, 155, 163, 164
Tabrizī, Dīvāna Naqqāsh, 120
tadbīr, 8, 20, 61, 152
Taft, 83n6
Taḥzīb al-akhlāq (Miskawaih), 20n50, 50
tajallī, 76, 141
Tajik(s), 111, 150
Takmīla-i Nafaḥat al-uns (ʿAbd al-Ghafūr Lārī), 40n25
Tale of the Two Brothers, 13n21
talismans(s), 61–62, 68
talqīn, 8, 88–89
tamghā, 37, 121
Ṭārīkh-i ʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī (Fāzīl Allāh b. Rūzbihān Ḵunjī-Ḵᵛāhānī), 23, 81, 91, 152, 158, 163
indication of Jāmī’s influence in, 166–7
on deaths of Yūsuf and Yaʿqūb, 130
on Islam embodied by Sāvajīs, 125
on Ūzūn Ḥasan, ‘Abd al-Raḥmān Shāmī, 82–83
negative account of Qāzī ʿĪsā in, 121–2
no mention of Naqshbandi edifices in, 98
reliance on by historians, 3
ṭarīqa(s) (= ṭarīqaṭ): 39n19, 82, 90, 97, 107, 114
affiliation and Darvishābād khānaqāh, 97
Naqshbandis, 23, 28, 40, 62, 95, 107n125
tārīkh, 30, 113
tarkhān (= tarkhānī), 41n28, 90n36
tasavvur-i shaykh. See rābiṭa
tauba, 71n88, 99n77
determined by God, 79
initial step in mystical quest, 70n179
interpretation of by Ibn al-ʿArabī, 72
overriding theme of Salāmān va Absāl, 69, 156
relevance of to Naqshbandis, 70, 71, 156n95
sections of Salāmān va Absāl on, 71
Sufi perfection achieved through, 70.
See also repentance
tauḥīd, 66, 134
tavajjuh, 154
taẓkira(s), 33, 116, 120n44, 131. See also anthology(ies)
Taẓkirat al-shuʿarāʾ (Daualtshāh Samarqandī), 24, 33, 158
Temūr, 40
Tenth Intellect. See Active Intellect, ‘aql-i faʿʿāl
Theodora Komnene, 101n86, 123
The Republic (Plato), 50
Ṭihrānī-Iṣfahānī, Abū Bakr, 24, 28, 83, 102.
See also Kitāb-i Diyār-Bakriyya
Timurid(s), 7, 37n15, 122n51, 126, 127
cultural achievements of, 34
delegation to Aq Qoyūnlū court, 118–9
gender relations at court, 27n77
indifference to Aq Qoyūnlū poets, 120
influence of ‘Ubaid Allāh Ahrār over, 36, 37n13, 37n13, 95
initiated by Jāmī into Naqshbandī order, 4
Naqshbandis disposed to serving, 37
relations with Aq Qoyūnlū, 119. See also Ās̠ār al-vuzarāʾ, Herat, Jāmī, Sultān-Abū Saʿīd, Sultān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā
Tirmiẕī, Abū ʿAbd Allāh Muḥammad al-Ḥakīm, 70n179. See also Kitāb sīrat al-auliyāʾ
Trabzon, 101n86, 123
Transoxiana, 36, 95, 98
Tuhfa-i Sāmī (Sām Mīrzā Ṣafavī), 24, 114, 115
Aq Qoyūnlū poets mentioned in, 120
notice on Yaʿqūb in, 32–33, 127, 129, 164
on connection between Bābā Fighānī and Jāmī, 116
poetry attributed to Qāżī Ḥasan, 126, 127
poetry attributed to Yaʿqūb, 126

Tuḫfat al-ahrār (Jāmī), 25, 158
Tuḫfat al-mulūk (ʿAbd Allāh Anṣārī), 50
Tūrkmen, 7, 16, 100, 104, 112
clan(s), 112, 113n7
customs, 124
ʻulamāʾ, 92

Ṭūsī, Naṣīr al-Dīn, 67
commentary on Ishārāt wa al-tanbīhāt, 11, 12, 13, 14n26, 161, 162
ideal city according to, 45
interpretation of Salāmān and Absāl by, 12, 14, 162
on role of ruler, 20
on being vazīr, 55n101
virtues of good ruler according to, 49–50. See also Akhlāq-i Nāṣirī

ʿUmar Khayyām, 127
Universal Reason, 137
ʻUqailī, Saif al-Dīn, 52. See also Ās̠ār al-vuzurāʾ
Ursa Major. See Bear, constellation of
Utrārī, Maulānāzāda ʿAbd Allāh, 42n32
Ūzūn Ḥasan, Abū al-Naṣr (Āq Qoyūnlū):
abolishment of wine-drinking by, 86
Akhlāq-i Jalālī dedicated to, 20–21, 59
Akhlāq-i Jalālī legitimizes, 85n15
and marriages to Greek princesses, 123
and Pūrnāk clan, 113n7
as defender of sharīʿa, 86
as father of Yaʿqūb, 4, 29, 31, 57, 81, 82, 99n103, 147, 163
association with ʿAbd al-Raḥmān Shāmī, 82–83
association with Darvīsh Qāsim, 101–3, 105–6
association with dervishes, 28, 80, 86, 163
association with ʿUmar Raushānī, 82
confession to Darvīsh Qāsim, 102
death of, 103
encounter(s) between Jāmī and, 30, 31
envoy of to Sulṭān-Khalil, 90n37
equated with Khidr, 88
eradication of heretics by, 84
influence of Naqshbandis over, 5, 81, 163
letter from Jāmī to, 33, 108
letter from Meḥmed II to, 102
letter to Bāyazīd II from, 86
not a Naqshbandi, 87–88, 89
patronage of Sufis by, 28n83, 82–86
power of attributed to Sufis/dervishes, 84, 87
Rūzbihān Khunji-Iṣfahānī on, 86
support of sought by Venice, 105
treaty between Sulṭān-Ḥusain Bāyqarā and, 90. See also Idrīs, Kitāb-i Dīyār-Bakriyya, Qāżī Ḥasan, Naṣriyya

tomb complex, Saljūqshāh bt. Kūr Muḥammad

ʻulamāʾ, 46n53, 122, 134
as transmitters of advice, 36
state support for, 1, 60
Tūrkmen, 92

"Uvaisī" Sufi, 104

valī (pl. auliyyāʾ) 64, 108n127, 117, 162, 163
Vāmiq, 167, 216
vaqf (pl. auqāf), 60, 91, 121
vaṣāyās, 51
vaṣīyyat, 108, 51
vazīr(s) (= vizierate), 106, 119, 121n50
according to Qābūs-nāma, 54
as transmitters of advice, 36, 42, 54
indispensability of, 21, 52, 55
Jāmī on, 10, 42–43, 52, 53, 54
Naṣīr al-Dīn ʻUṣūn Ḥasan on being, 55n101
Salāmān advised to appoint wise, 10, 46n5, 53. See also Maulānā [Qāżī] Ḥasan [Ṣadr], Niẓām al-Mulk, Qāżī Ṣafi al-Dīn Ḥasan Sāvajī, Rāst-ravishn
Venice, 105
Venus, 131, 147, 152
amalgamation of into Salāmān, 134
as representation of celestial body, 67
as representation of perfections, 67
association with Anāhitā, 67, 153
as symbol of shaikh, 146–7
depicted positively in Salāmān va Absāl, 67
image of impressed onto Salāmān’s heart, 62n33, 134, 138, 153, 160
in relation to rābita, 153
love of Salāmān for, 10, 134, 139, 140, 143, 153
negative view of, 67, 153
Sage’s description of to Salāmān, 10, 69, 143, 152–3
Salāmān’s dream-vision of, 3, 144
transformation of Absāl into, 139n19, 134
vicegerent of God. See khalīfat Allāh vilāyat (= valāyat), 70, 107
visionary experience, 3, 141–4, 145, 159. See also heart
wahdat al-wujūd, 2, 57, 99n77, 140
wet-nurse, 1, 7, 12, 146, 150, 161
in Masnūvī ma'navī, 134
Salāmān becomes own, 134. See also Absāl, ḍāya
White, Hayden, 145
wine (= wine-drinking): abolishment of by Īzūn Ḥasān, 86
Absāl symbol of, 4, 22, 146, 148, 149–50, 151, 152, 159, 164
as locus of lust, 8
of good fortune, 143
prohibition of in Tabriz, 22n58, 107, 152
Yaʿqūb's addiction to, 1, 3, 69, 105, 128, 131, 156, 157
Yaʿqūb's renunciation of, 23n59, 146, 152, 156, 164
Yaʿqūb's repentance from, 70, 107, 152, 155–6, 159, 160, 162, 163, 164. See also alcohol
world-displaying mirror, 9, 14
woman (= women), 8, 49, 77, 149n62, 153
Woods, John E., 7n2, 34n110, 83n8, 84n9, 107n121, 156n94
Āq Qoyūnlū polity according to, 86
on deaths of Yūsuf and Yaʿqūb, 130
on influence of Khalvatī order, 82
on sources for Āq Qoyūnlū, 23
Yaʿqūb, Abū al-Muẓaffar, Sulṭān (Āq Qoyūnlū): abstinence of, 71, 148
accession of, 23, 147, 155
addiction to wine, 1, 3, 69, 105, 128, 131, 149, 156, 157
advice of Jāmī to, 2, 28, 31, 40, 64–65, 71, 107, 109–110, 117, 118, 156, 162
alcoholism of, 16n34, 105, 106, 129, 149–50, 160
allusion to by Jāmī, 147
allusion to Salāmān va Absāl by, 33–34, 117–8
and Shāh Qāsim Faʿizbaksh, 114
and siege of Akhisqa, 94n53
as beloved, 81, 112
as brother of Sulṭān-Khalīl, 21, 59n25, 147
as depicted in taḏkīra literature, 131
as familiar with himmat, 107, 117
as forgiving Qāżī ʿĪsā and Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd Sāvajī, 126–7
as governor of Diyar-Bakr, 129
as not belonging to Sufi order, 93
as object of Jāmī's devotion, 81, 109
association with Ṣun’ Allāh Kūzakunānī, 31, 98
as solicitor of advice of Sufi mystics, 29
as son of Īzūn Ḥasan, 4, 29, 31, 57, 81, 82, 99n103, 147, 163
Bābā Fīgānī in service to, 115, 116, 164
Bahrām va Bihārī dedicated to, 27, 113
blessings of Jāmī sought by, 107, 117, 156
brother-in-law of (see also Ghāzī Khān), 41n30
campaign of against Shaikh Ḥaidar Ṣafāvī, 125
commitment of Darvīsh Qāsim to, 103
confrontation between Darvīsh Qāsim and, 27n78, 100, 104, 111
court receptive to Sufi works, 21
dead of, 27n76, 43n140, 99, 113n18, 115n21, 116, 122n52, 130
dedication of Naṣrīyya tomb complex by 103n99
discord between Yūsuf and, 129–31, 164
drunkard according to Jāmī, 156
duration of rapport between Jāmī and, 4, 29, 107, 117, 130, 156, 157
d杂志社 of, 127–8
eulogy of in Lubb al-tavārīkh, 13n88
eulogy of in Sīsīlat al-zahāb, 26, 40
Farrukh Yaṣār Shīrvān-shāh and, 41
gḥazal attributed to, 129
gḥazals dedicated to, 112
Hashīṭ biḥisht entry on, 33, 164
ḥimmat of Jāmī sought by, 28, 117
Ībrāhīm Gulshāni at court of, 31–32, 92–95, 124
Idrīs Bīldīsī secretary of, 94
influence of Sāvajī family on, 29, 126
in relation to Adam, 108
intermeprance of, 100, 107, 109, 111
intervention of Kamāl al-Dīn Gāzurgāhī with, 128
Jāmī and conscience of, 117, 151
Jāmī critical of immorality of, 26, 43
Jāmī Naqshbandī influence on, 31, 62, 70, 81, 110, 115, 155, 163
Jāmī's focus heart of, 57, 109
justice/just rule of, 43, 57, 69
Kamāl al-Dīn Banāʾī in service to, 27n76, 114, 115n21, 164
kingdom of, 124
Kulliyāt/Dīvān of Jāmī presented to, 29, 119
letter from Jāmī to, 23, 24, 33, 62n134, 81, 108–9, 155, 163, 165
letter(s) to Jāmī from, 23, 24, 33–34, 62n134, 81, 107–9, 116–9, 158, 163
INDEX

libertinism of, 148
Majālis al-ʿushshāq entry on, 32, 127–8, 164
Maqṣūd b. ʿUzūn Hasan Bāyandur half-brother of, 113 melancholy of, 29, 32, 128 Menākīb-i Ibrāhīm-i Gūlshenī on conduct of, 94–95
modern scholarship on, 34
monetary offering to Jāmī by, 117, 158
mother of (see also Saljūqshāh bt. Kūr Muhammad Begum), 91n39, 123n59, 130n86
Najm al-Dīn Masʿūd Sāvajī booncompanion/muqarrab of, 32, 113n5, 120
notice in Tuḥfa-i Sāmī on, 127, 129, 130
not mentioned in Maqāmāt-i Jāmī, 30 not Naqshbandī, 62n134, 155
obedience of to Ibrāhīm Gulshanī, 94
on transformation of heart, 108
order of to ransack Tabriz, 106
patronage of Ahlī Shīrāzī, 164
patronage of Kamāl al-Dīn Banāʾī, 164
patronage of Persian belles-lettres, 81, 111, 119, 163–4
patronage of Sufis/dervishes, 28, 31, 80, 82, 86, 93, 107–8, 117, 160, 162, 163
Persian poetry addressed to, 26–27, 112
Persian poetry attributed to, 33, 127, 129 poets associated with, 33, 112–6, 119–20, 164
possesses farr, 57
qaṣīdas by Jāmī addressed to, 26, 108, 155, 158
qaṣīdas by Kamāl al-Dīn Banāʾī addressed to, 113
Qāżī ʿĪsā mentor of, 3, 22, 32–33, 151, 152
Qāżī ʿĪsā vazīr/chief qāżī/sadr of, 92, 121, 124, 146, 151
recognition of significance of Salāmān va Absāl by, 111, 117, 159, 162, 164
reign of, 1, 7–8n2, 27, 29, 82n3, 90, 91, 112, 116, 128, 129
relationship between Qāżī ʿĪsā and, 32–33, 124
renunciation of wine-drinking by, 23n59, 146, 152, 156, 164
repentance of from wine-drinking, 1, 3, 22, 23, 25, 107, 152, 155, 156, 160, 162, 163, 164
role of Qāżī ʿĪsā in repentance of, 152, 164
Rūzbihān Khunjī-Iṣfahānī historian of, 27, 120
Salāmān symbol of, 3, 22, 136, 146–52, 159, 164
Salāmān va Absāl addressed to, 7, 16, 23, 116, 161
Salāmān va Absāl commemoration of repentance of, 23, 155, 156, 163, 164
Salāmān va Absāl, attainment of sainthood by, 65, 80
Salāmān va Absāl not only maṣnawī addressed to, 26–27, 112, 113, 120n41
Salāmān va Absāl to familiarize with Naqshbandiyya, 115, 155
seal of kingship of, 147n54
section(s) of Salāmān va Absāl in praise of, 55n103, 57, 58, 71, 146, 147–8, 157
Shahidi Qumi poet-laureate of, 114, 115n21, 116
Sham’ va parvānā dedicated to, 26–27, 112
shunned kingship, 128
signet ring of, 147n54
Sirāj al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Vahhāb shaikh al-Islām of, 95
sister(s) of (see also Ḥalīma Begī Āghā), 112, 123–4, 126, 150, 164
sought blessings of Jāmī, 57, 117
soul of, 109, 149, 162
spiritual relationship between Jāmī and, 107–10
succession struggle between Sultān-Khalīl and, 103, 147
Tārīkh-iʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī on Jāmī and, 117
Taẕkira-i Raużāt al-salāṭīn entry on, 127, 128
troubles of, 127–9, 146, 148
true love of, 127–8 Tuḥfa-i Sāmī entry on, 32–33, 127, 129, 164
visitations to ʿUmar Raushani shrine by, 93
wife of (see also Gauhar-Sulṭān Khānum), 41n30
works by Jalāl al-Dīn Davānī dedicated to, 90n34. See also Salāmān, Tārīkh-iʿĀlam-ārā-yi amīnī
Yaʿqūb-i Charkhī, 153n84
Yazd, 96, 190
Yūnān the Minister (Dastūr), 49
Yūsuf va Zulaikhā (Jāmī), 25n63, 155n92, 158
Yūsuf va Zulaikhā (Khatāʾī Tabrīzī), 120n41
Yūsuf, Yamin al-Dīn Abū al-ʿIzz (Aq Qoyūnlū), 29, 128
daughter of betrothed to Sirāj al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Vahhāb, 123n58
Yaʿqūb-i Charkhī, 153n84
Yazd, 96, 190
Yūnān the Minister (Dastūr), 49
Yūsuf va Zulaikhā (Jāmī), 25n63, 155n92, 158
Yūsuf va Zulaikhā (Khatāʾī Tabrīzī), 120n41
Yūsuf, Yamin al-Dīn Abū al-ʿIzz (Aq Qoyūnlū), 29, 128
daughter of betrothed to Sirāj al-Dīn ʿAbd al-Vahhāb, 123n58
Yūsuf, Yamīn al-Dīn Abū al-ʿIzz (Āq Qoyūnlū) cont.
discord between Yaʿqūb and, 129–31
likened to Joseph in *Salāmān va Absāl*, 174–5
*Salāmān va Absāl* addressed to, 174–5

*Ẓakhīrat al-mulūk* (Alī b. Shihāb al-Dīn Hamadānī), 17
Zamzam well, 169, 194
*ẓauq*, 66, 143
*ẓāviya*, 91, 102
*ẓikr*, 58n120, 89, 109n36, 110n37, 143, 153.
*See also* *ẓikr-i khafī*

*Ẓikr-i khafī*, 89, 136n109. *See also* Naqshbandi(s)
Āq Qoyūnlū, 175, 203–4, 214
Zulaikhā, 175, 203–4, 214
Zoroastrian(ism), 48, 78n219, 100n81, 138n17
and planet Venus, 67, 153
priests, 44
principle of moderation, 18, 44n45
sage symbol of shaikh, 134
shariʿa and norms of, 51
story of Gayumarth, 9n4
tradition of consanguineous marriage, 13